



CrowPanel Advanced

7inch/9inch/10.1inch ESP32-P4 HMI

V1.1



Preface	1
Lesson01---Print "Hello World"	11
Lesson02---Turn on the LED	21
Lesson03---UART3-IN interface (external power supply).	31
Lesson04---Serial port usage	35
Lesson05---Touchscreen	50
Lesson06---USB2.0	67
Lesson07---Turn on the screen	78
Lesson08---SD Card File Reading.	93
Lesson09---LVGL Lighting Control	109
Lesson10---Temperature and Humidity	121
Lesson11---Playback After Recording	140
Lesson12---Playing Local Music from SD Card	152
Lesson13---SX1262 Wireless Module	175
Lesson14---nRF2401 Wireless RF Module.	216

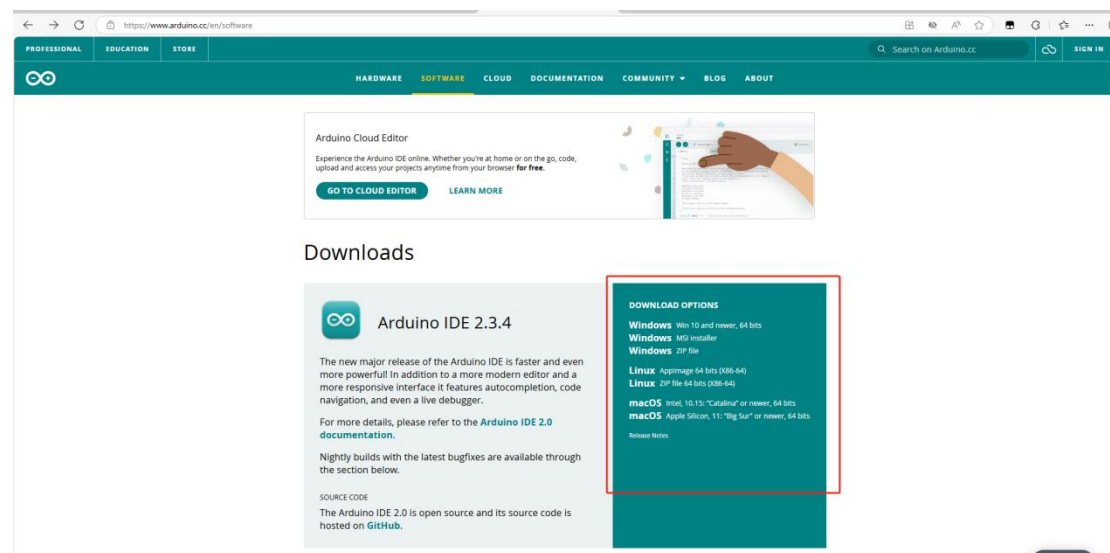
Preface

Installing Arduino IDE

1. Open the official Arduino website

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/software>

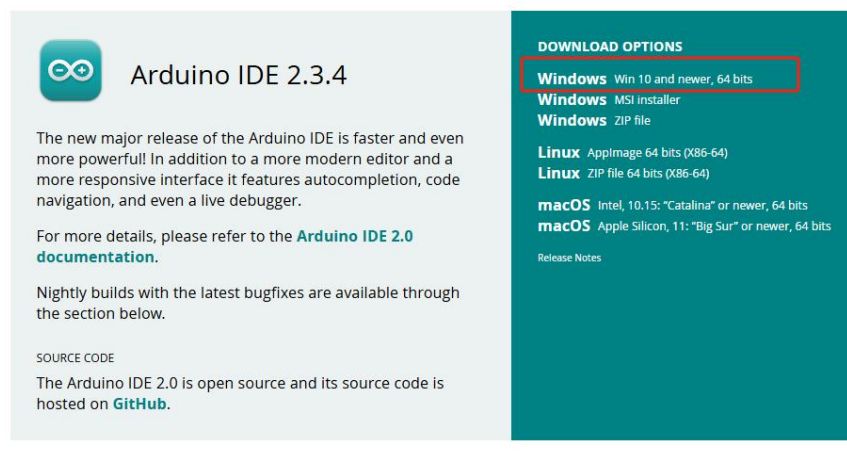
2. Select and install the appropriate version according to your operating system.



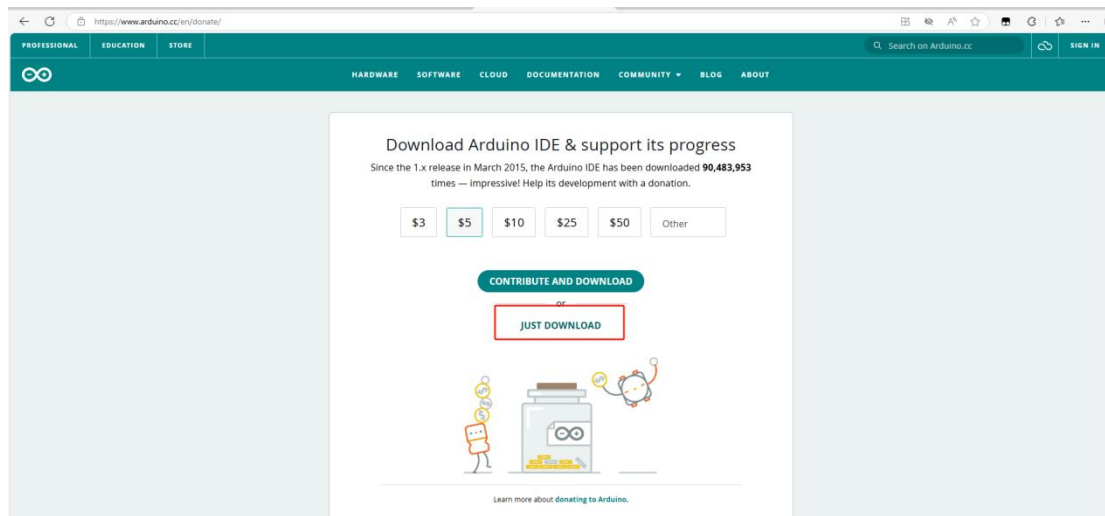
2.1 Here I choose the first one.



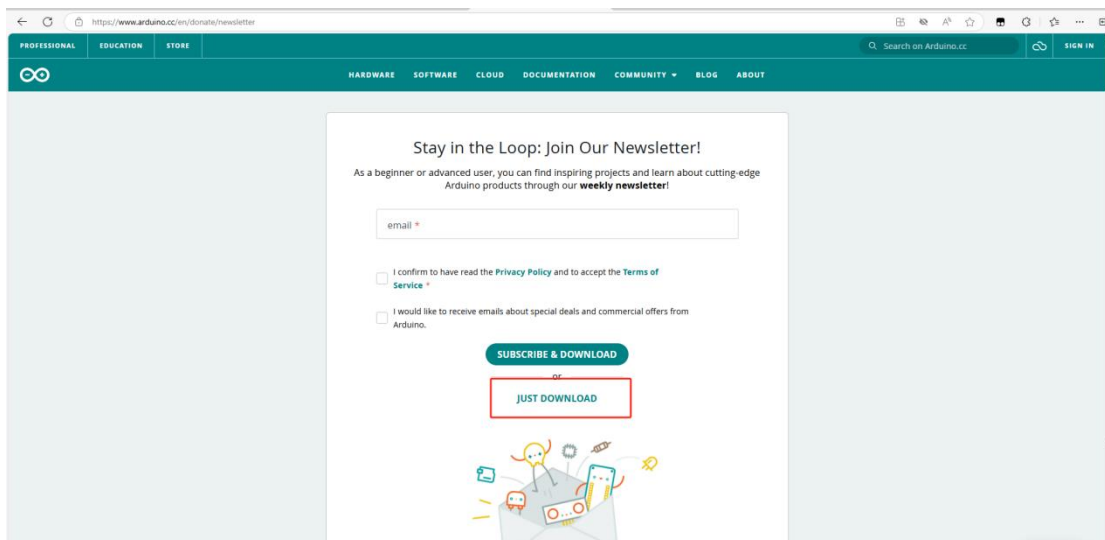
Downloads



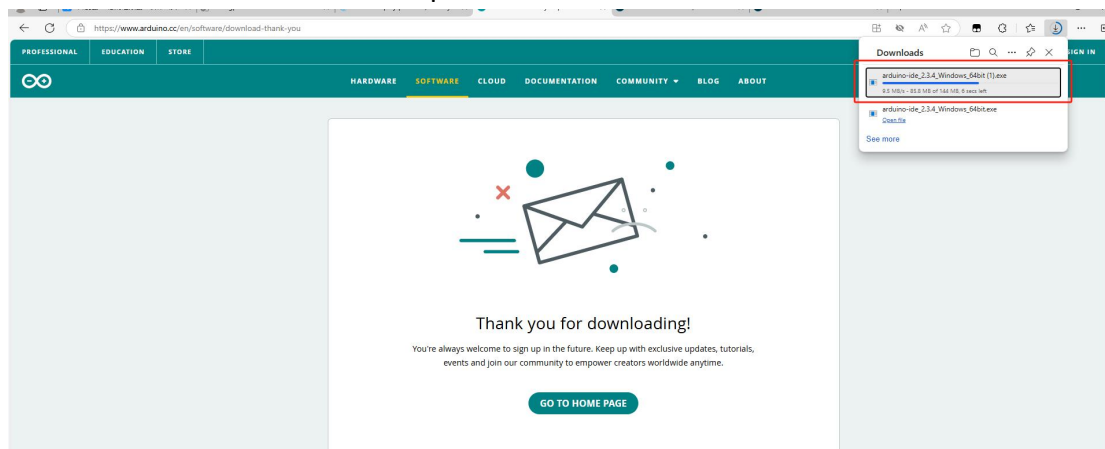
3. Select "Download Only" if you wish.



3.3 The same as above.

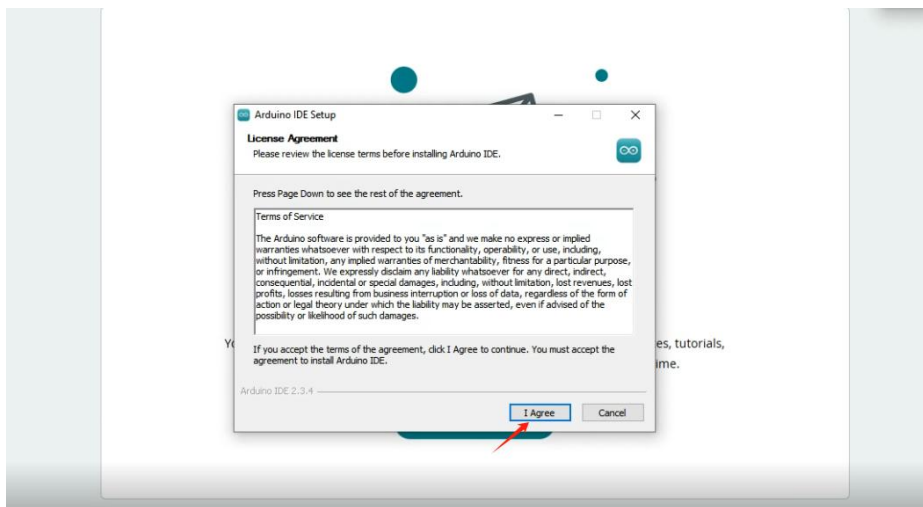


4. Wait for the download to complete

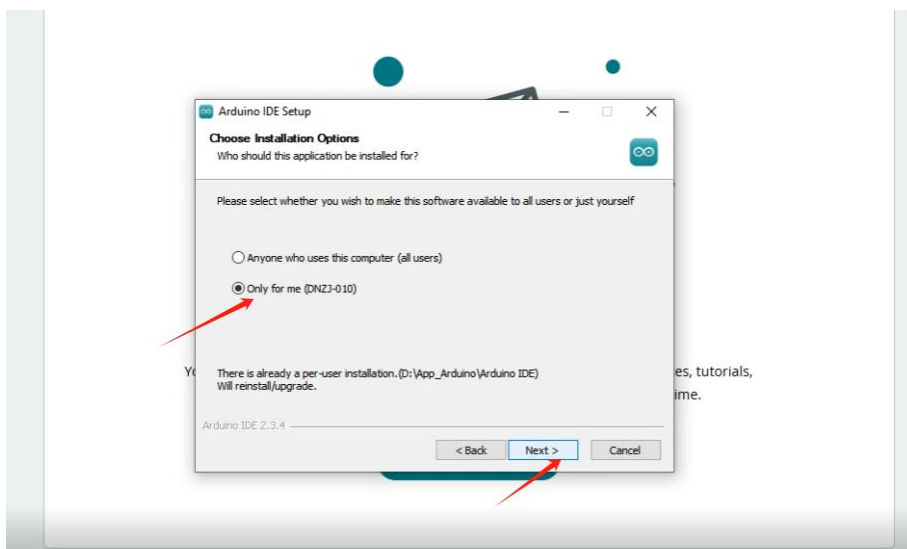


5. Confirm the download process

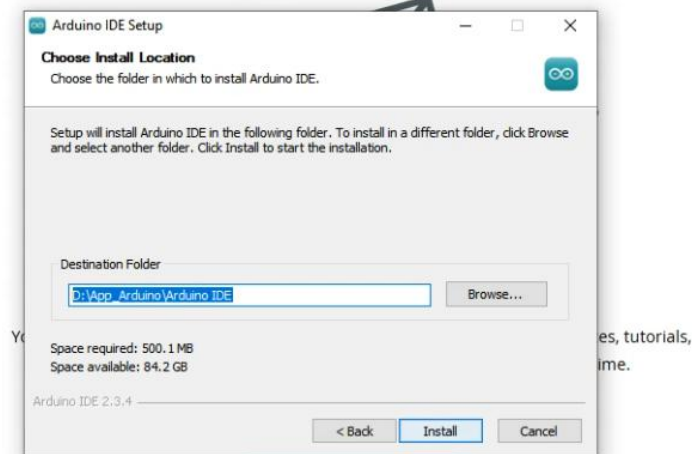
5.1 Accept the options



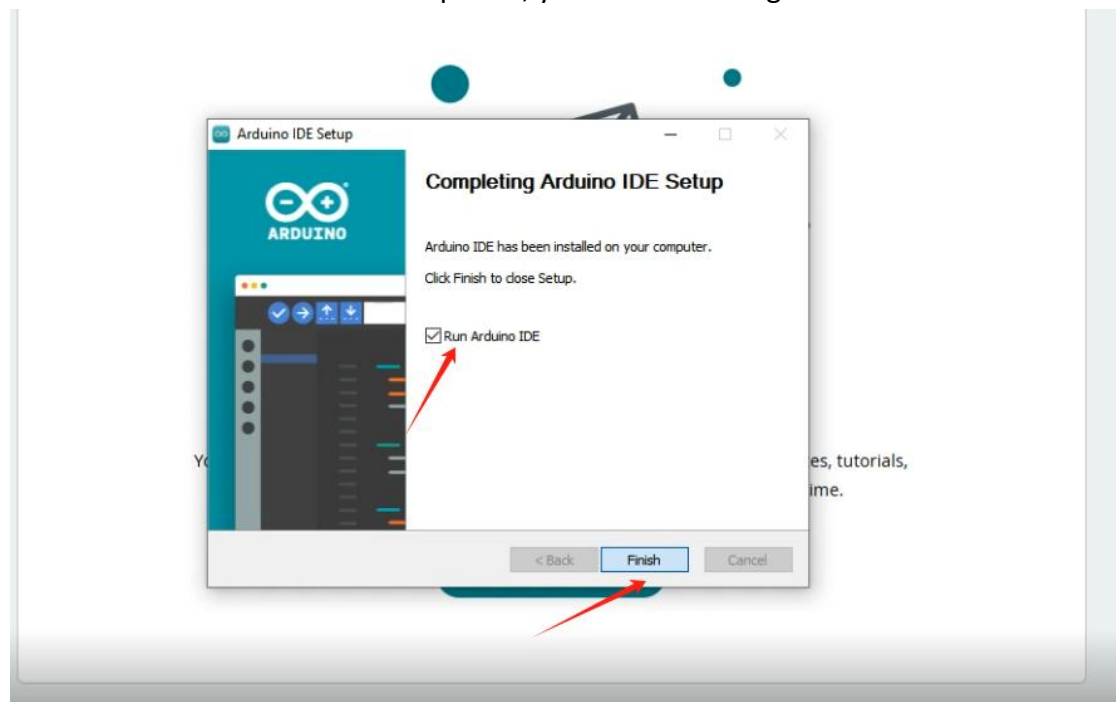
5.2 As shown in the figure, determine



5.3 Customize your path and click "Install"

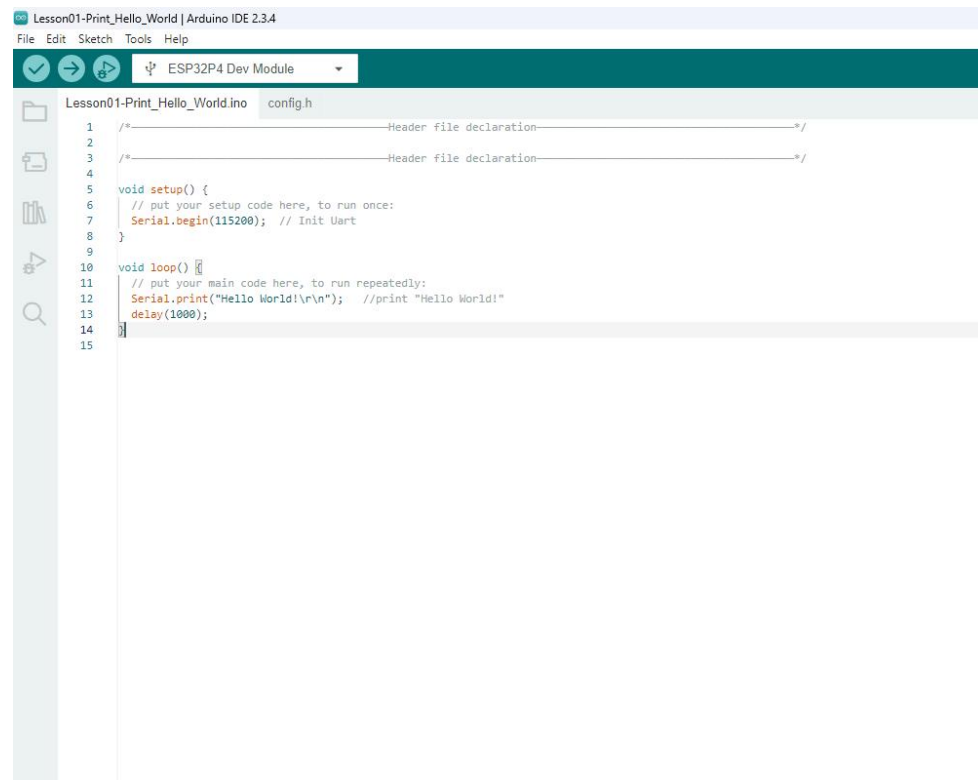


5.4 After the installation is completed, you can start using the Arduino IDE.

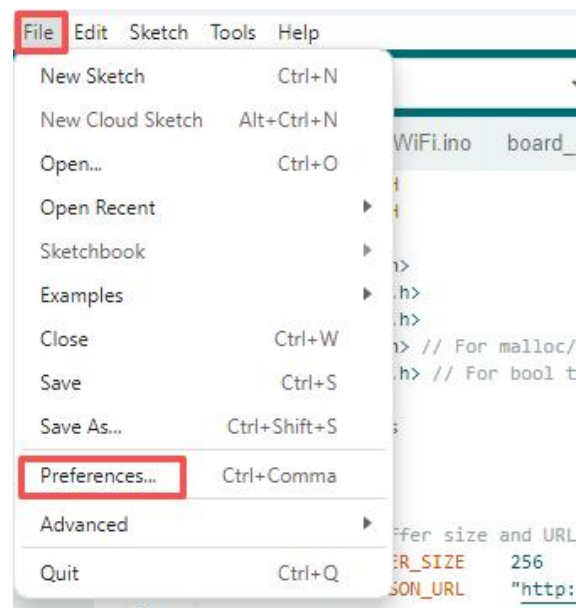


Installing the ESP32-P4 Development Board

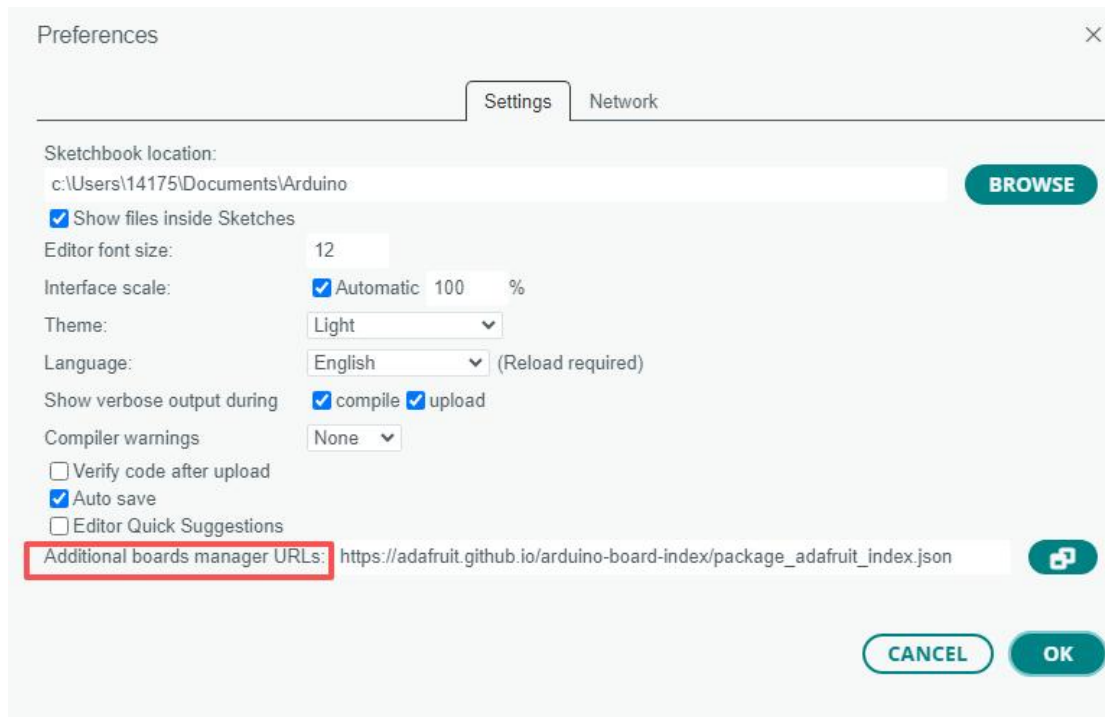
After the installation is completed, open the Arduino IDE.
First, randomly open a project.



Go to "Preferences".

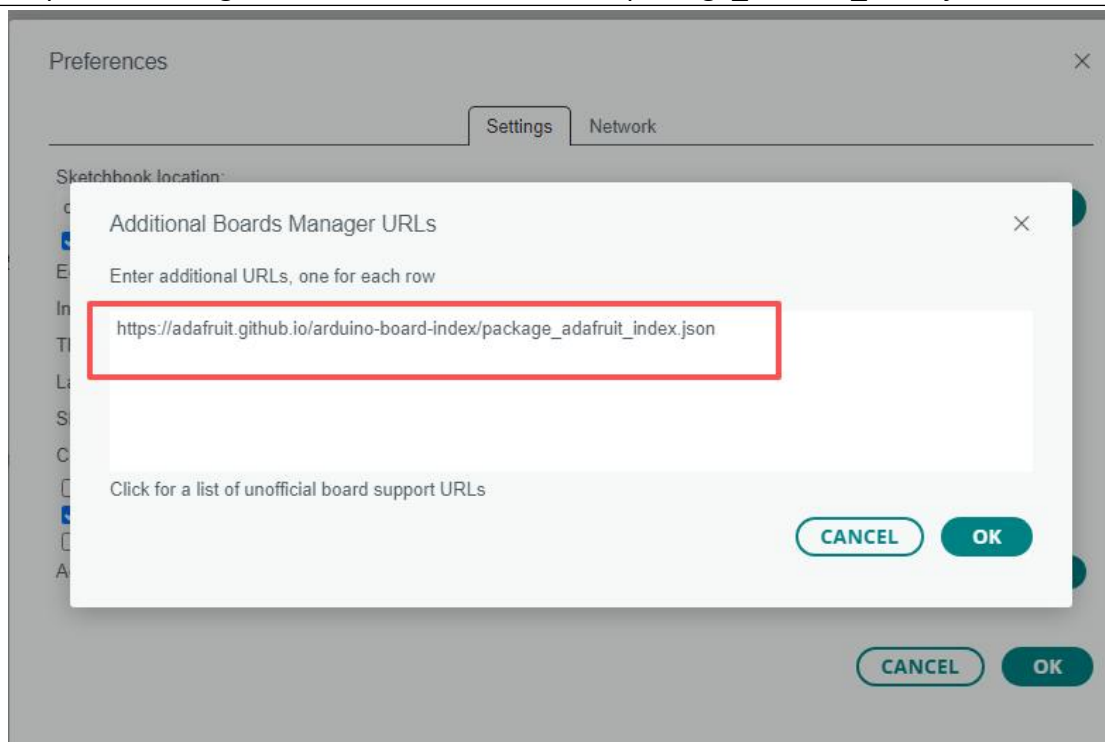


Configure "Additional Boards Manager URLs"

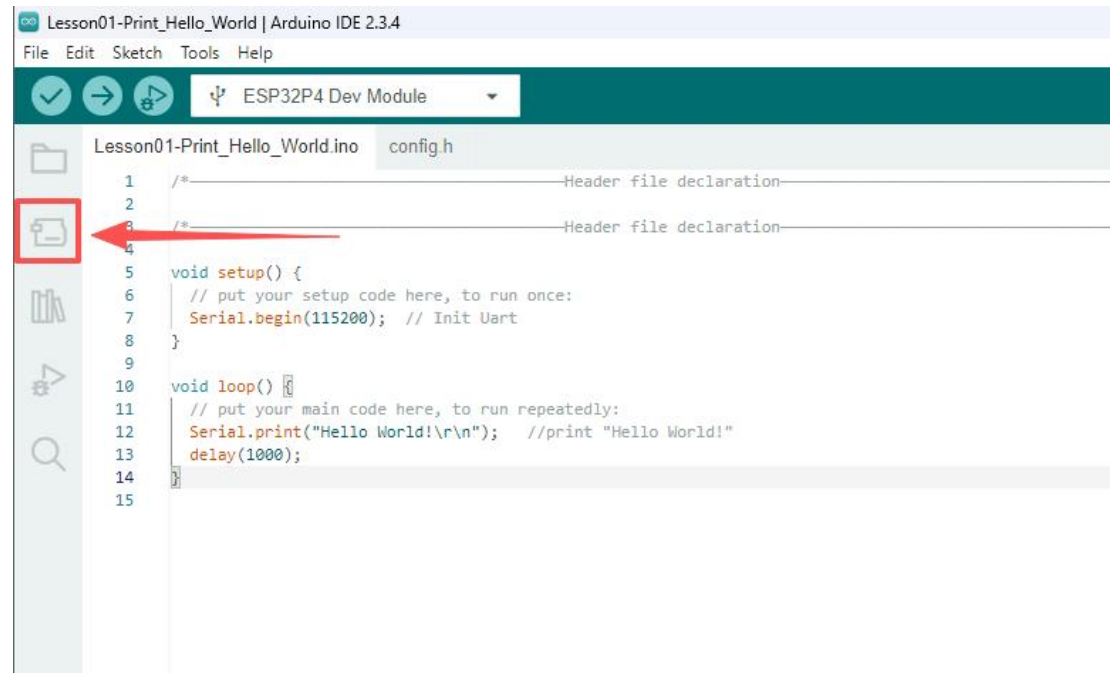


Add this in.

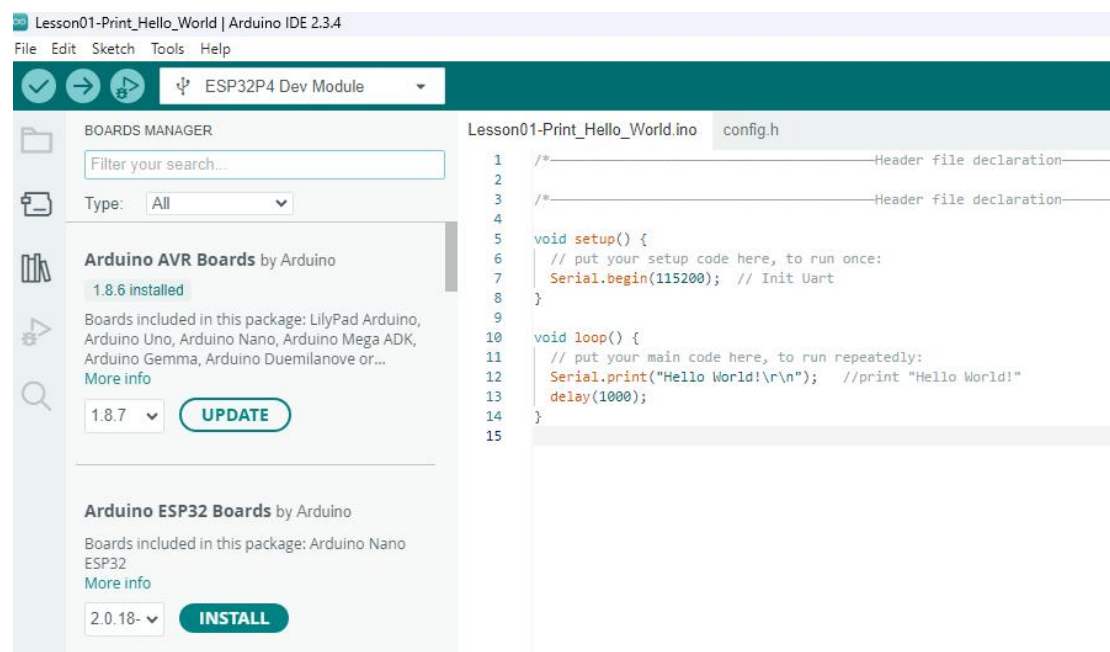
https://adafruit.github.io/arduino-board-index/package_adafruit_index.json



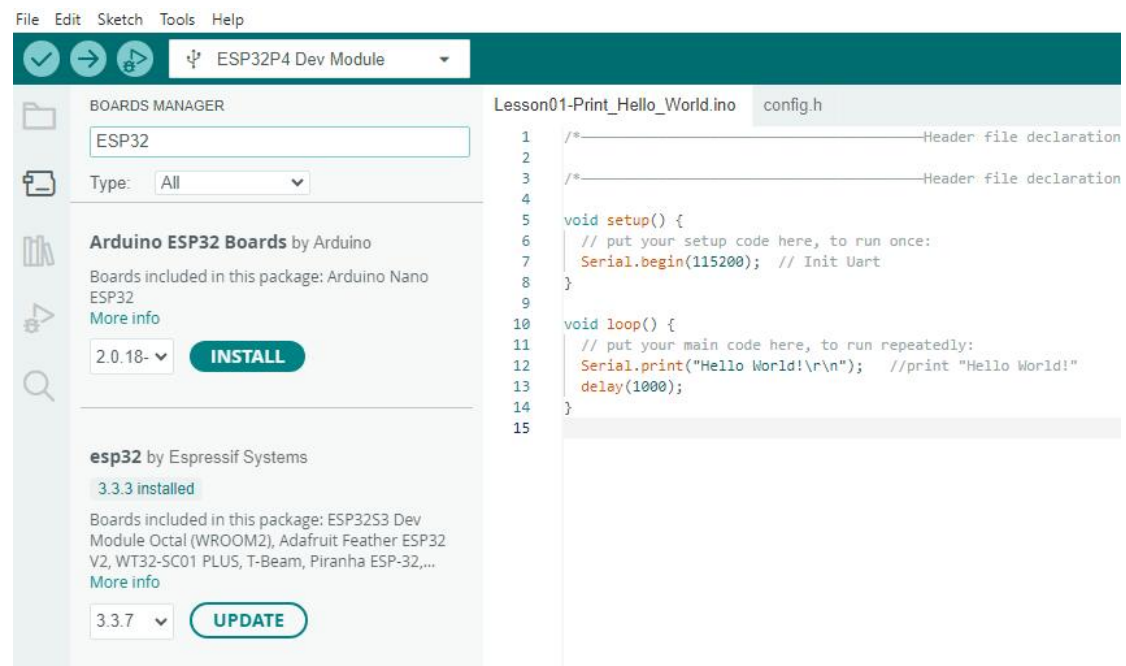
First, click on "board manage" on the left side.



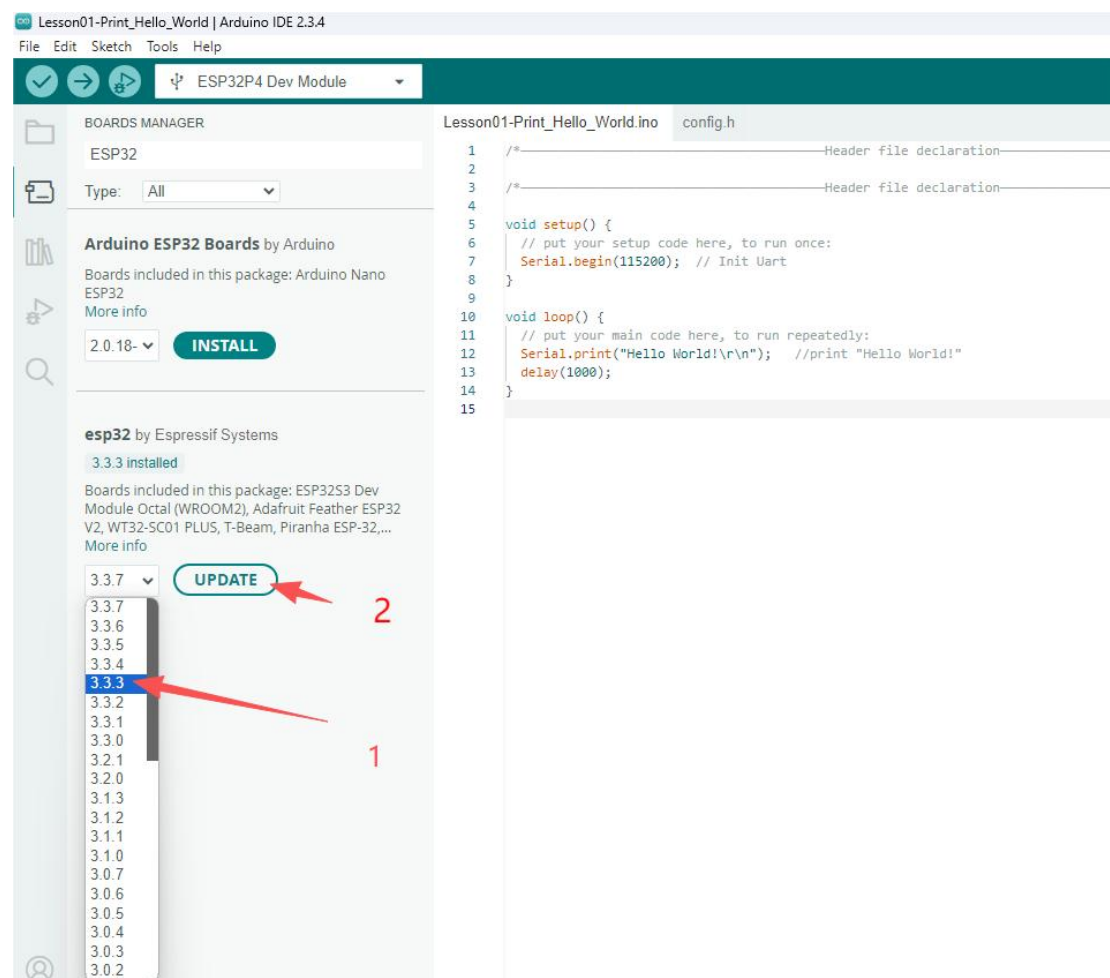
After opening



Search for ESP32 here

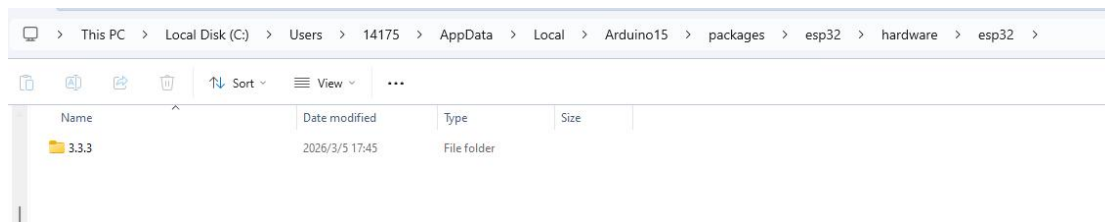


Select version 3.3.3 here and proceed with the installation.



Note that all subsequent codes are developed based on the ESP32 V3.3.3 version. Make sure to keep the version number consistent with ours. After the download is completed, you will be able to see the downloaded ESP32

version in this path of the file system.



In this way, you have completed the necessary preparations for compiling the code in the Arduino IDE. Next, all you need to do is write your appropriate code and use the corresponding library files to run it.

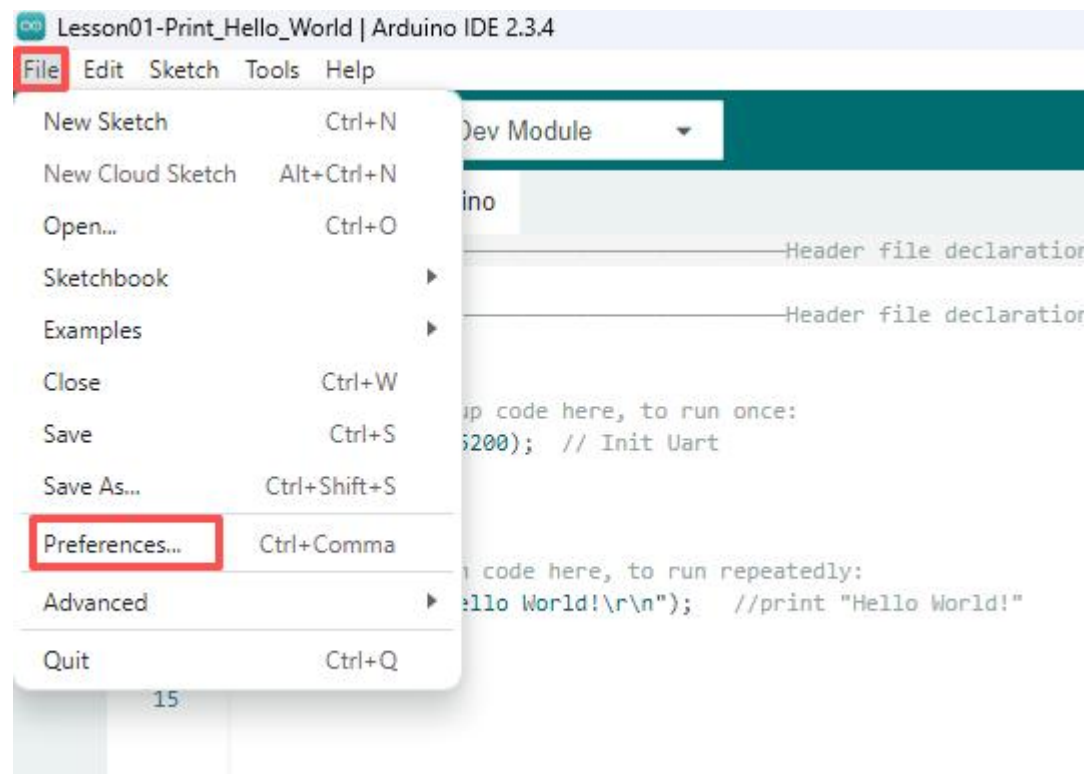
Importing Library Files (Important)

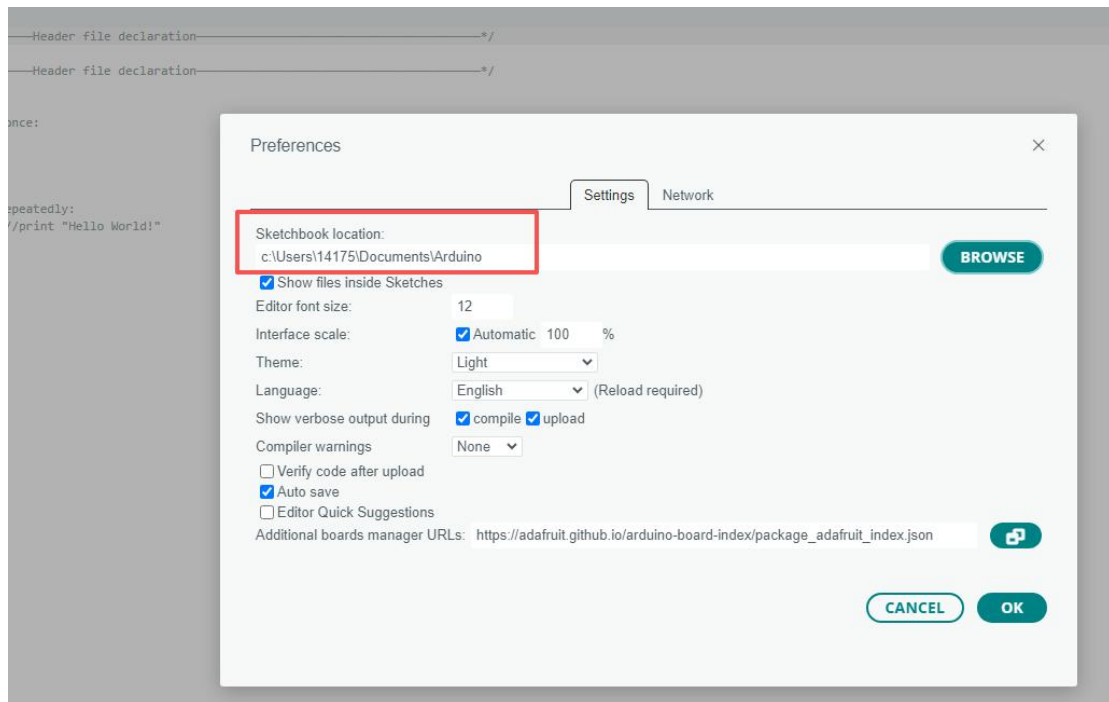
Before starting to use it, we need to first download the library files required for the subsequent functions of the development board to the local machine and place them in the corresponding `"/Arduino/libraries"` directory on your computer.

Download link:

https://github.com/Electrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/libraries

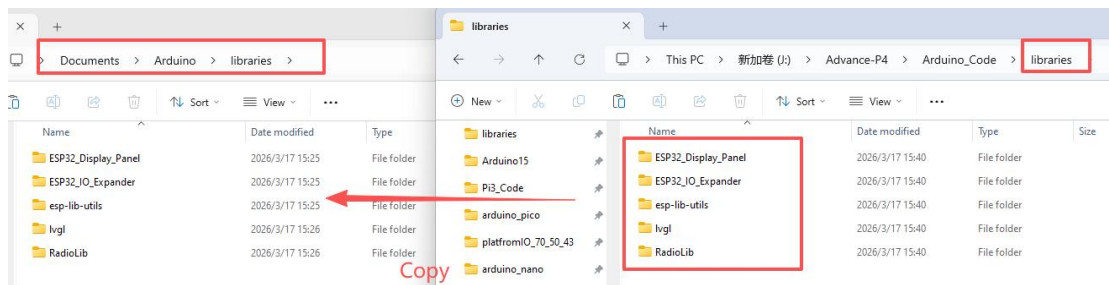
Enter this path and check the location where the library files are stored.





After determining the location where the library files are stored

Copy all the library files contained in the downloaded "libraries" file to the "C:\Users\Username\Documents\Arduino\libraries" folder on your local computer.



Note: If there is no "libraries" folder in your path, please create one yourself.

Lesson01--- Print "Hello World"

Introduction

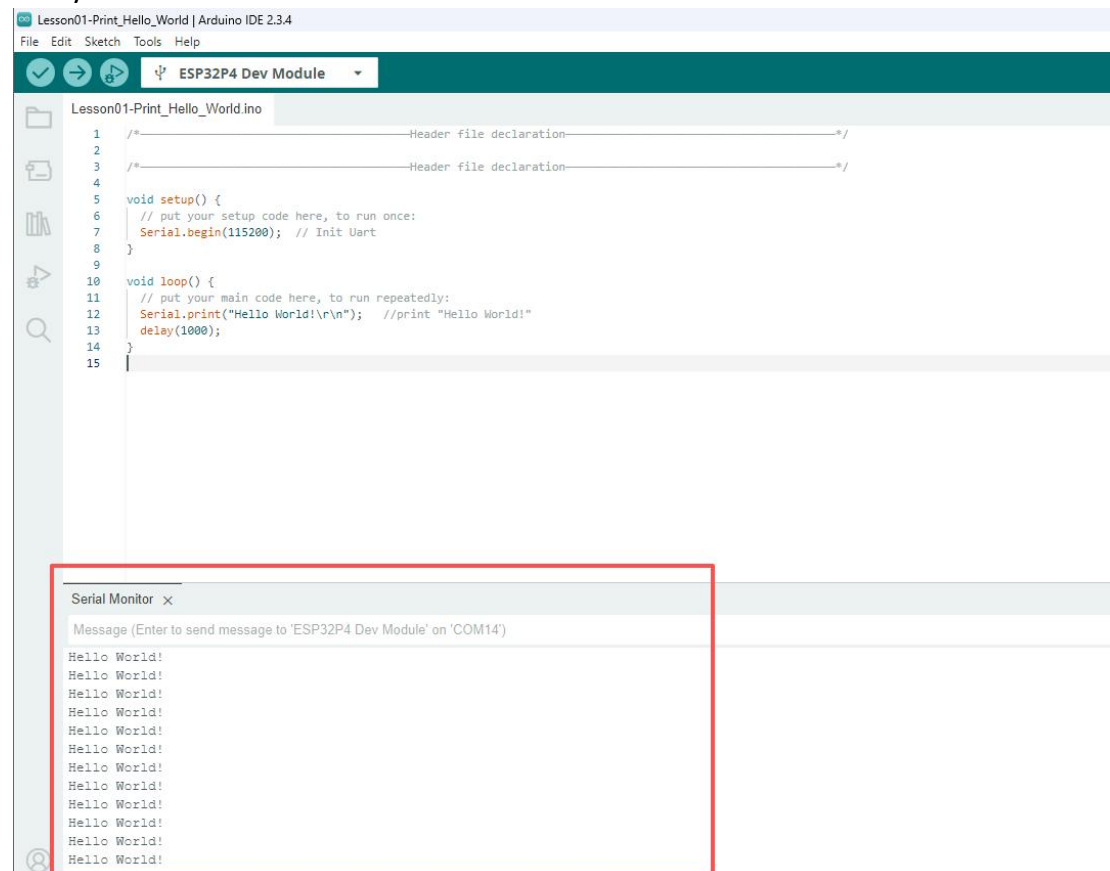
In this lesson, we will officially begin writing code in the Arduino-IDE environment to drive the Advance-P4 development board. Subsequent lessons will follow a gradual "from simple to complex" design, helping you progressively master the Arduino-IDE development framework and the usage logic of the ESP32-P4 chip, while building a clear technical understanding.

Learning Goals

1. Get familiar with the Arduino IDE and complete your first program upload to the ESP32-P4
2. Implement a "Hello World" serial print example on the ESP32-P4 development board

Preview of the Result

When running on the ESP32-P4, the serial terminal will output "Hello world" once every second.



Hardware Used in This Lesson

This lesson involves no hardware usage; it solely teaches you how to create a new project and how to upload code to the ESP32-P4 chip using the Arduino-IDE.

Complete Code

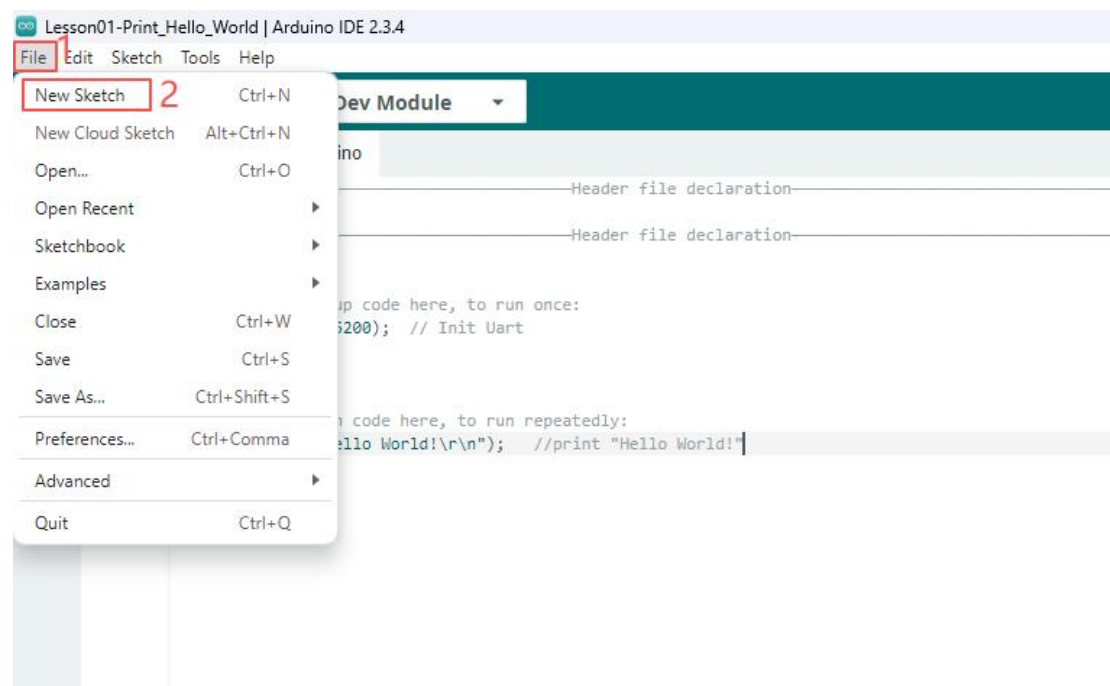
Kindly click the link below to view the full code implementation.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

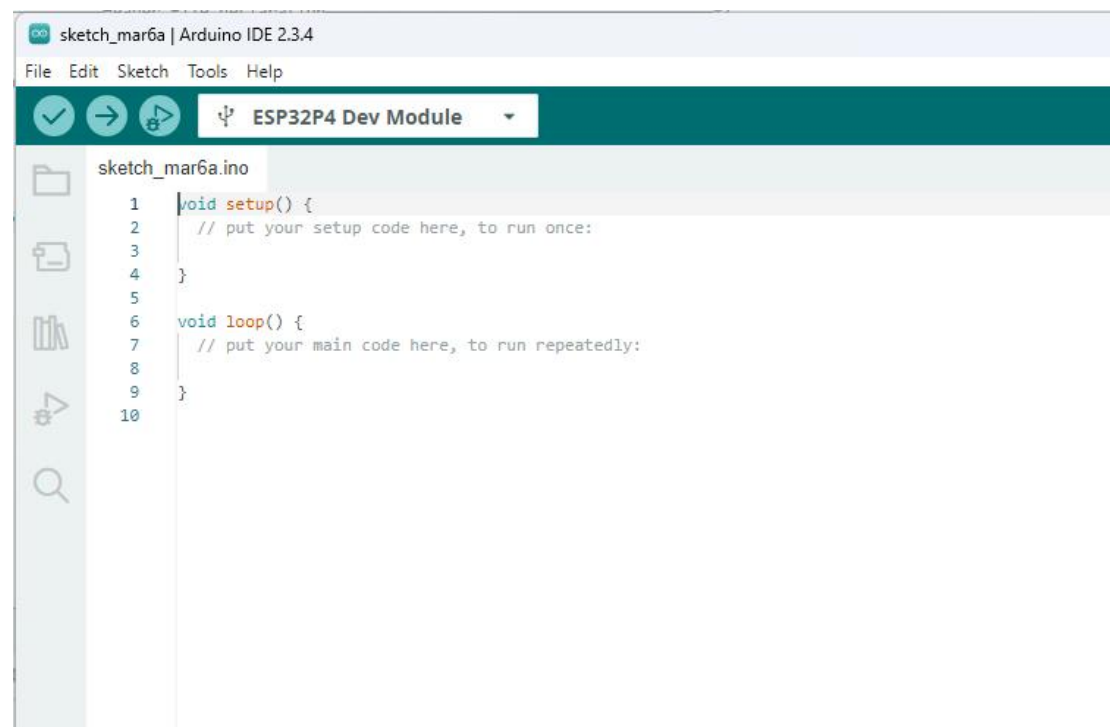
https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson01-Print_Hello_World

Key Explanations

First, let's walk through how to create a new project in the already-installed Arduino-IDE.

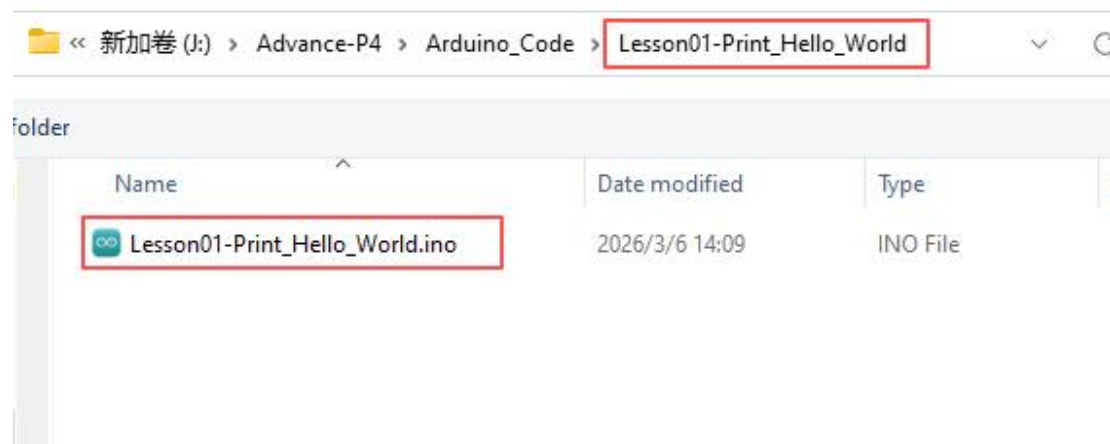


And just like that, a new project has been created.



Press and hold Ctrl + S on your keyboard to save the project first.

Name the folder and file identically—this ensures the project opens correctly.



Once saved, you can start writing your code right here.

```
1 void setup() {  
2   // put your setup code here, to run once:  
3  
4 }  
5  
6 void loop() {  
7   // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:  
8  
9 }  
10
```

The setup() function runs only once when the Arduino powers on (boots up) or

resets, specifically handling "preparation work"—just like putting on your shoes and grabbing your keys before leaving the house.

What belongs in setup():

- Pin mode configuration: Use `pinMode()` to define pins as INPUT or OUTPUT. For example, set pins to OUTPUT for controlling LEDs, and INPUT for reading buttons.
- Serial initialization: Use `Serial.begin(9600)` to enable serial communication (essential for debugging).
- Sensor/module initialization: Initial setup commands for LCD screens, servos, Bluetooth modules, etc., required before first use.
- Variable initial assignments: One-time variable assignments (such as setting initial brightness or threshold values).

The `loop()` function, after `setup()` completes, executes its code infinitely in a loop. It's the core logic zone of your program, responsible for processing sensor data, controlling actuators, and responding to external events.

What belongs in loop():

- Sensor data reading: Use `digitalRead()/analogRead()` to read buttons, temperature/humidity, photoresistors, etc.
- Actuator control: Use `digitalWrite()/analogWrite()` to control LED on/off states, motor speeds, buzzer sounds, etc.
- Logic judgments: `if/else`, `for/while` loops and conditional checks (e.g., "if button press detected, turn on LED").
- Delays/waits: Use `delay()` to set wait times (e.g., intervals for LED blinking).
- Data printing/transmission: Serial printing of sensor data, sending commands to Bluetooth modules, etc. (operations that need to run repeatedly).

In summary:

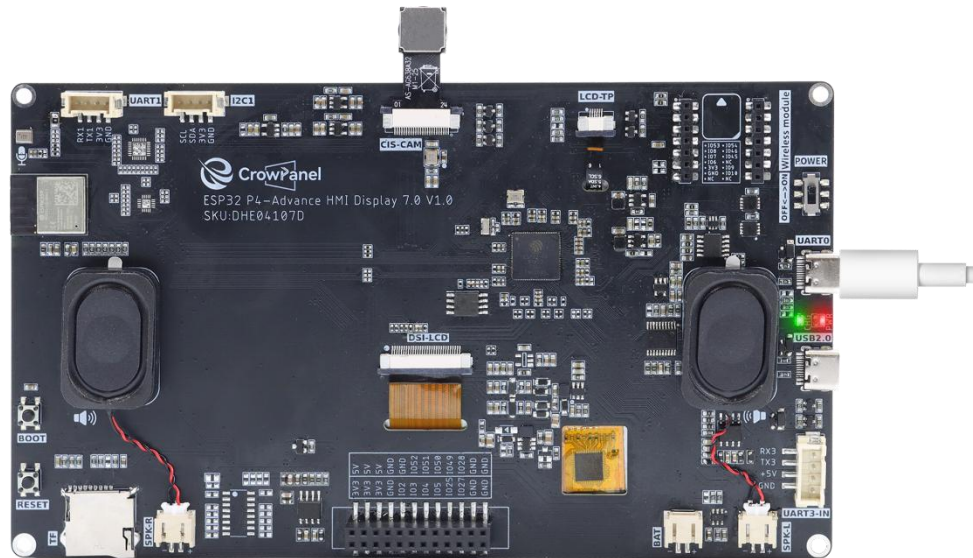
- `setup()` runs once—focus on initialization configurations (pins, serial, module setup, etc.). This is the "preparation phase" of your program.
- `loop()` runs infinitely—focus on business logic (reading data, controlling hardware, making judgments, etc.). This is the "runtime phase" of your program.

Remember the core principle: "Things that only need to happen once go in `setup()`; things that need to happen repeatedly go in `loop()`."

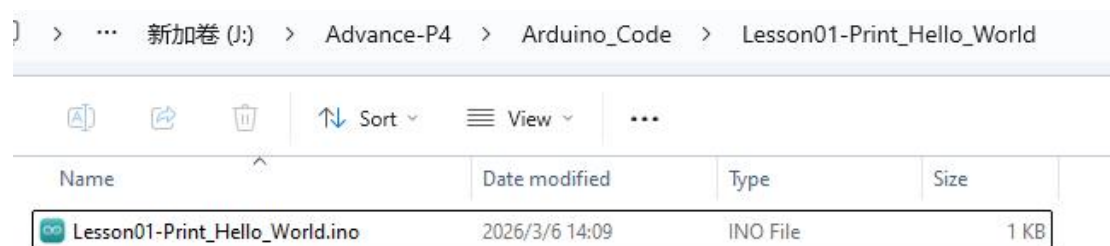
Programming Steps

Now that the code is ready, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 to see the results in action.

First, connect the Advance-P4 device to your computer host via a USB cable.
(Connect to UART0)

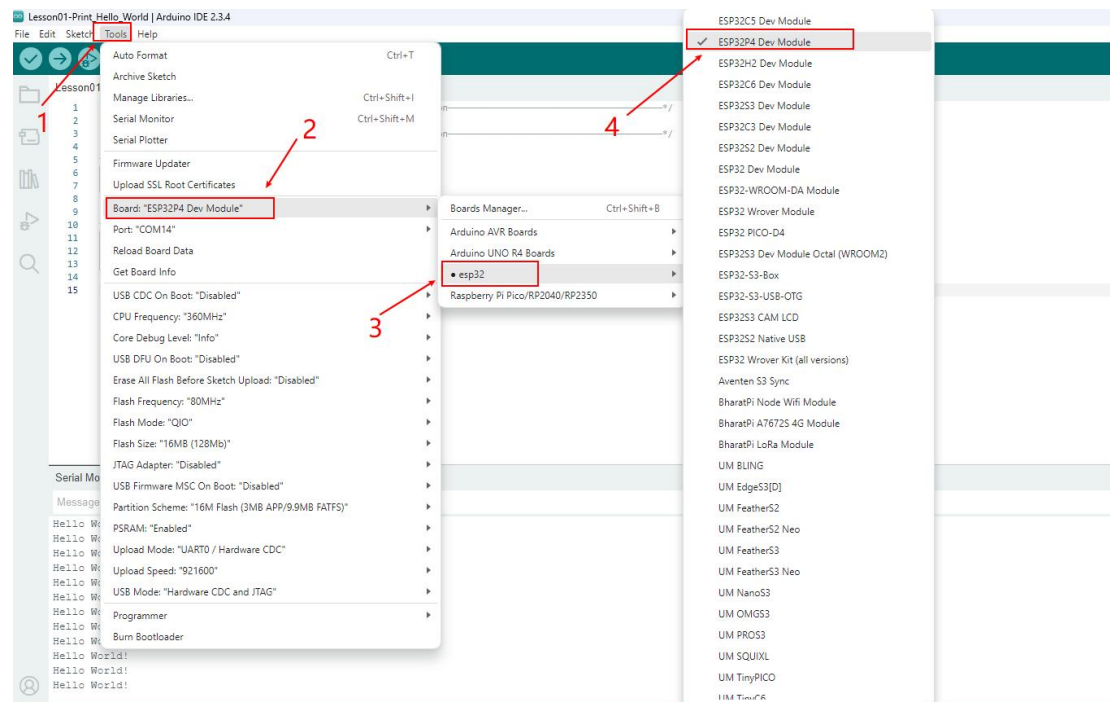


Open the code for this lesson from the GitHub repository link provided above.

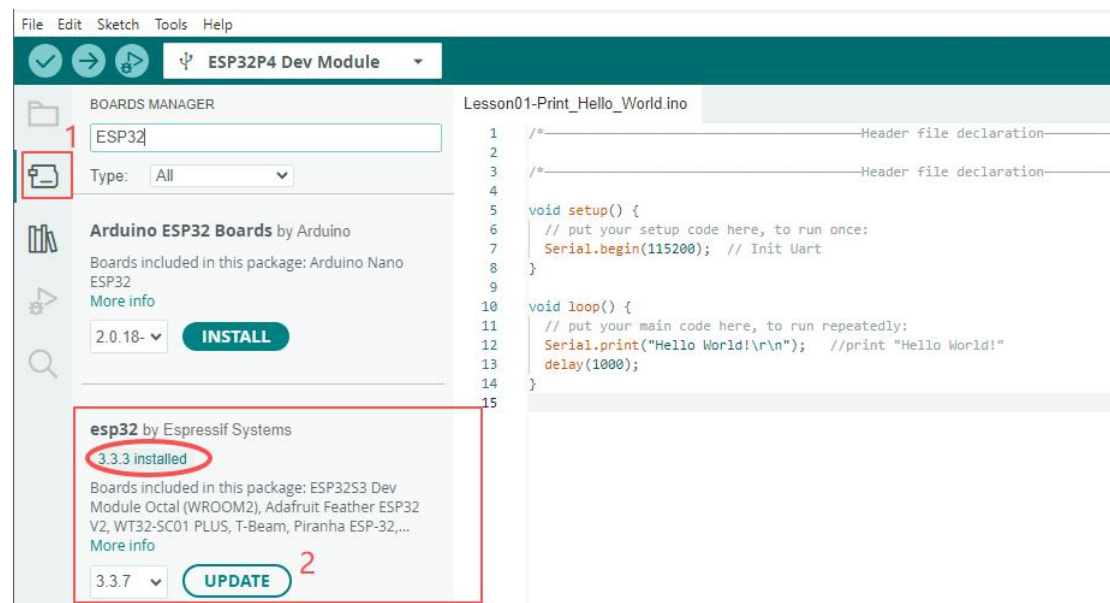


```
Lesson01-Print_Hello_World.ino
1  /*-----Header file declaration-----
2
3  /*-----Header file declaration-----
4
5  void setup() {
6      // put your setup code here, to run once:
7      Serial.begin(115200); // Init Uart
8  }
9
10 void loop() {
11     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
12     Serial.print("Hello World!\r\n"); //print "Hello World!"
13     delay(1000);
14 }
15
```

Now let's configure the settings for uploading the code. Click Tools, select Board, and choose "ESP32P4 Dev Module" from the list.

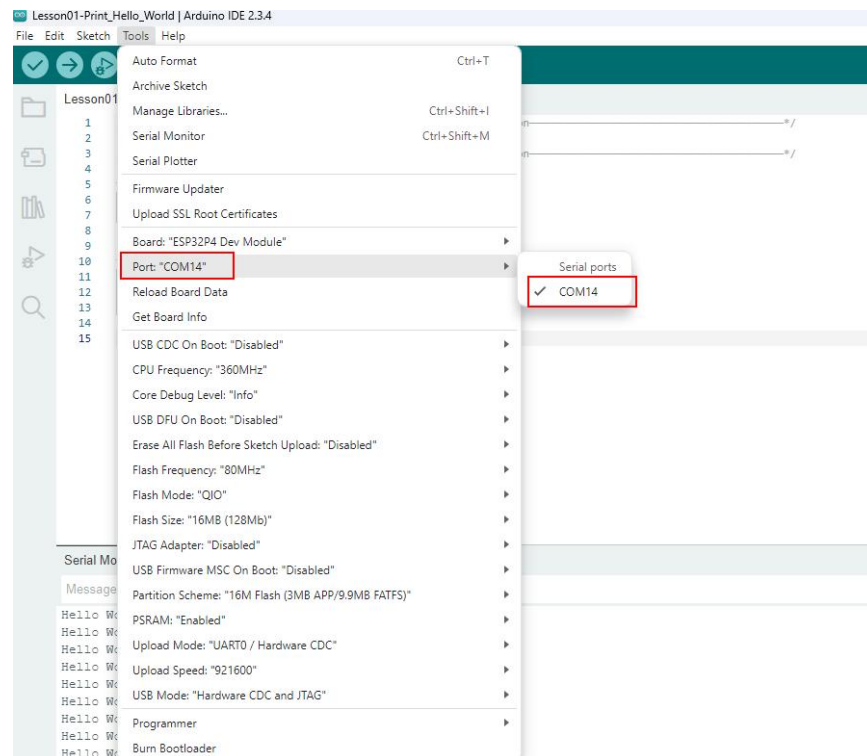


(If you don't see ESP32 in the list here, please follow the instructions from [the preface](#) to install ESP32 version 3.3.3.)

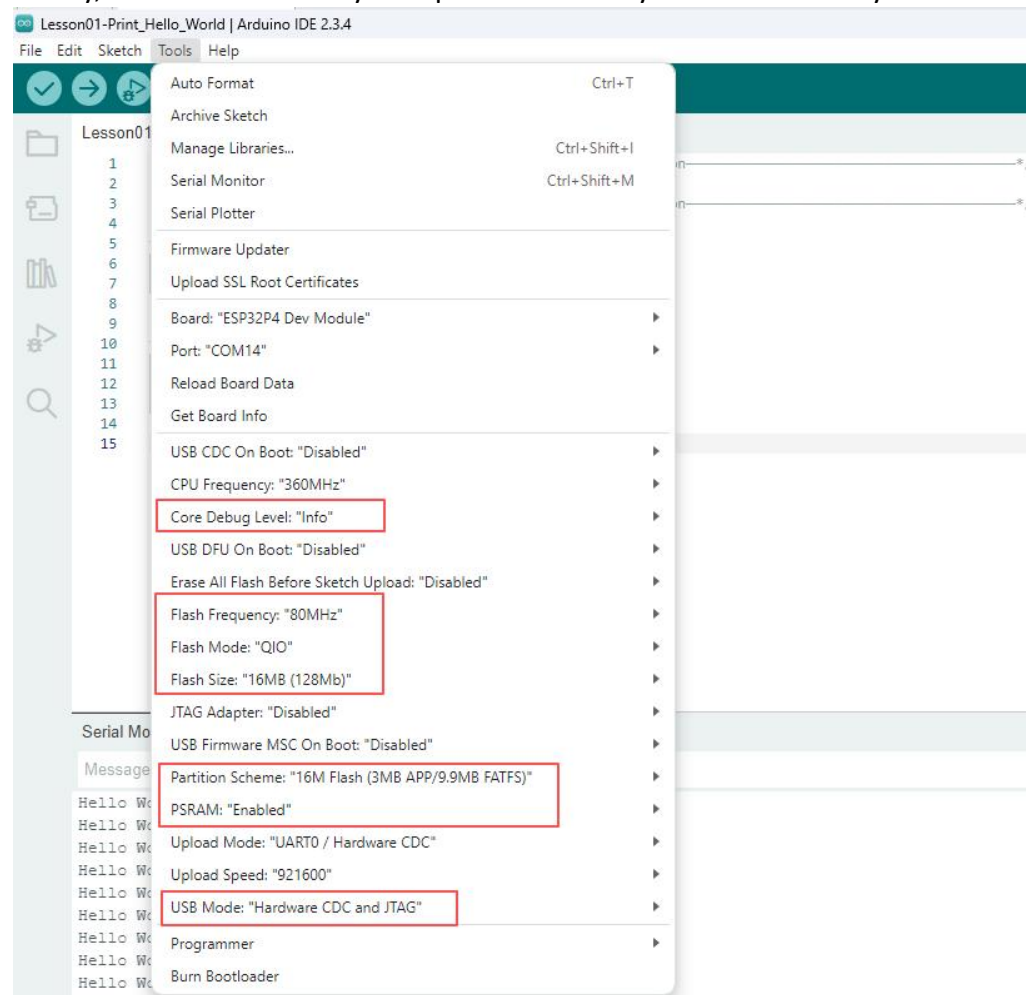


Then select Tools again and verify your COM port number.

(This assumes you have already connected your CrowPanel Advanced ESP32-P4 HMI AI Display [7-inch/9-inch/10.1-inch] to your computer.)



Finally, double-check that your options match my selections exactly.



1. Core Debug Level: "Info"

Purpose: Controls the verbosity of system log output. "Info" is the default level, outputting boot messages and key status logs.

Why set this: During development, you need to see system runtime status (e.g., boot flow, WiFi/Bluetooth initialization logs) for troubleshooting. Higher levels (like "Debug") output excessive logs affecting performance; lower levels (like "Error") lose critical information hindering debugging. For production environments, set to "None" to disable logs and save resources.

2. Flash Configuration Summary (Flash Frequency / Flash Mode / Flash Size)

These three parameters collectively determine external Flash read/write performance and capacity recognition:

Flash Frequency: "80MHz":

The ESP32-P4 supports up to 80MHz Flash clock—a balanced choice for performance and stability. Higher frequencies improve program loading and data read/write speeds; lower frequencies slow system response.

Flash Mode: "QIO":

QIO (Quad I/O) is a four-wire parallel read/write mode, faster than traditional DIO (dual-line), fully utilizing high-speed Flash bandwidth. The high-speed Flash paired with ESP32-P4 generally supports QIO—this is the performance-prioritized standard configuration.

Flash Size: "16MB (128Mb)":

Must match your hardware's actual Flash capacity. Common ESP32-P4 development boards feature 16MB Flash. Incorrect settings cause: capacity recognition errors preventing complete program flashing; partition table mismatches leading to system crashes or data loss.

3. Partition Scheme: "16M Flash (3MB APP/9.9MB FATFS)"

Purpose: Divides 16MB Flash into functional zones: 3MB APP for your application code; 9.9MB FATFS for file system partition (storing configurations, logs, web files, etc.); remaining space for system boot, OTA upgrades, etc.

Why set this: The ESP32-P4 lacks built-in large-capacity storage, requiring Flash partitioning to manage code and data. This scheme offers a general balance: ensuring sufficient program space while reserving ample storage for files (e.g., web servers, data logging). If your application is small, consider a smaller APP partition; if more file storage is needed, adjust the ratio accordingly.

4. PSRAM: "Enabled"

Purpose: Enables external PSRAM (Pseudo-Static Random Access Memory), providing the ESP32-P4 with additional large-capacity memory (typically 8MB/16MB).

Why set this: The ESP32-P4 has limited built-in RAM; complex applications (AI

models, multimedia, large buffers) may run out of memory. Enabling PRAM allows the system to place heap memory, large variables, and caches in PSRAM, significantly enhancing multitasking and complex program execution capabilities. If your development board lacks PSRAM, you must disable this—otherwise the system will crash attempting to access non-existent memory.

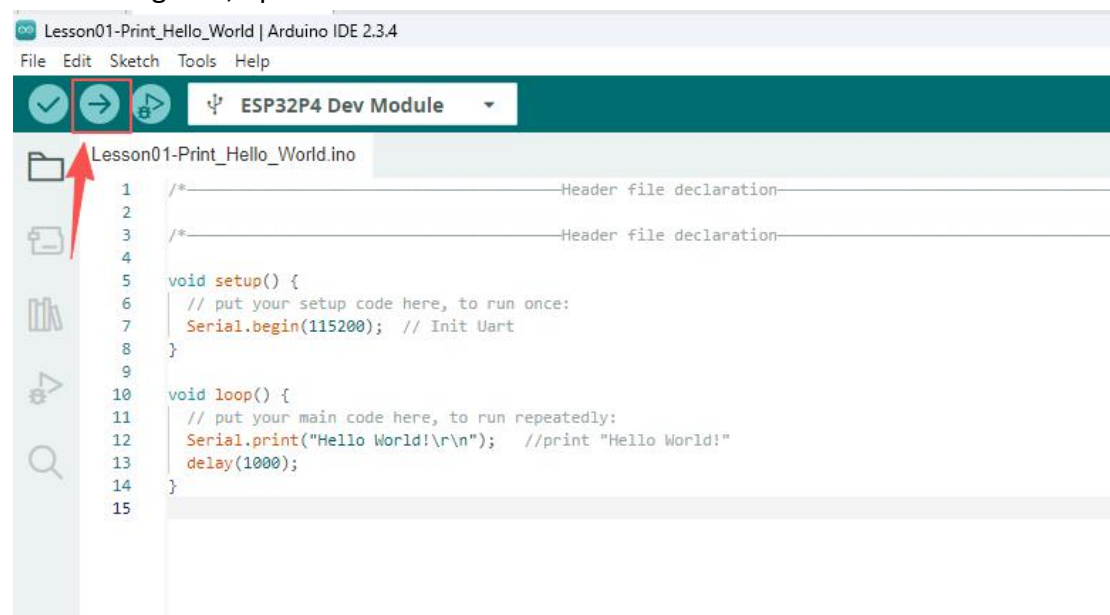
5. USB Mode: "Hardware CDC and JTAG"

Purpose: Configures USB port functionality: Hardware CDC—hardware-level USB virtual serial port for serial communication (log printing, debugging), more stable and faster than software CDC; JTAG—hardware debugging interface for online debugging, breakpoints, and register inspection.

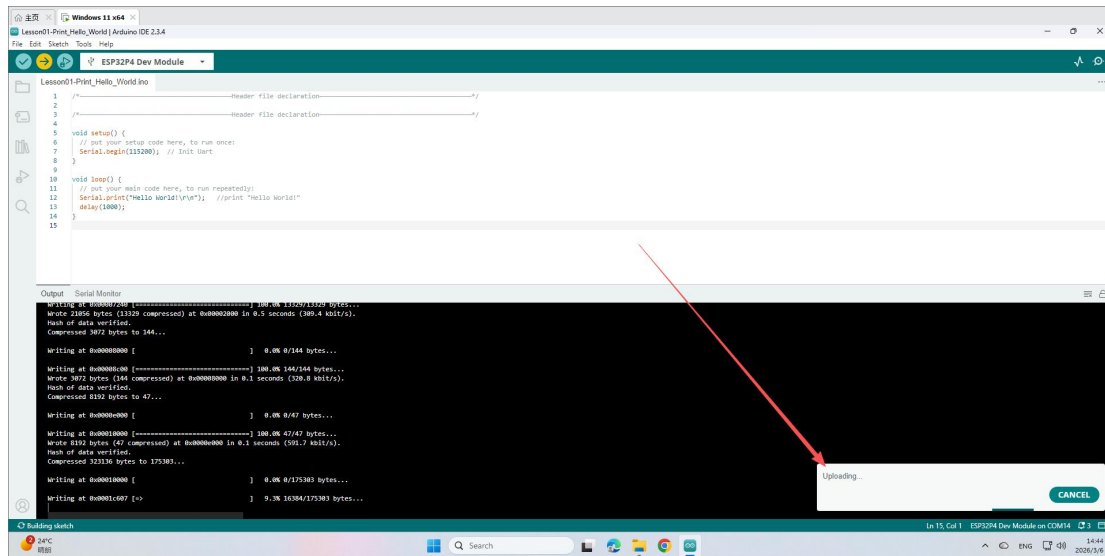
Why set this: The ESP32-P4 supports USB Hardware CDC, providing high-speed, stable serial connections (ideal for extensive log output). Simultaneously enabling JTAG facilitates low-level debugging (e.g., troubleshooting crashes, performance bottlenecks). If only serial is needed, select "Hardware CDC" only; if debugging isn't required, disable JTAG to save resources.

These configurations remain identical for all subsequent project code uploads.

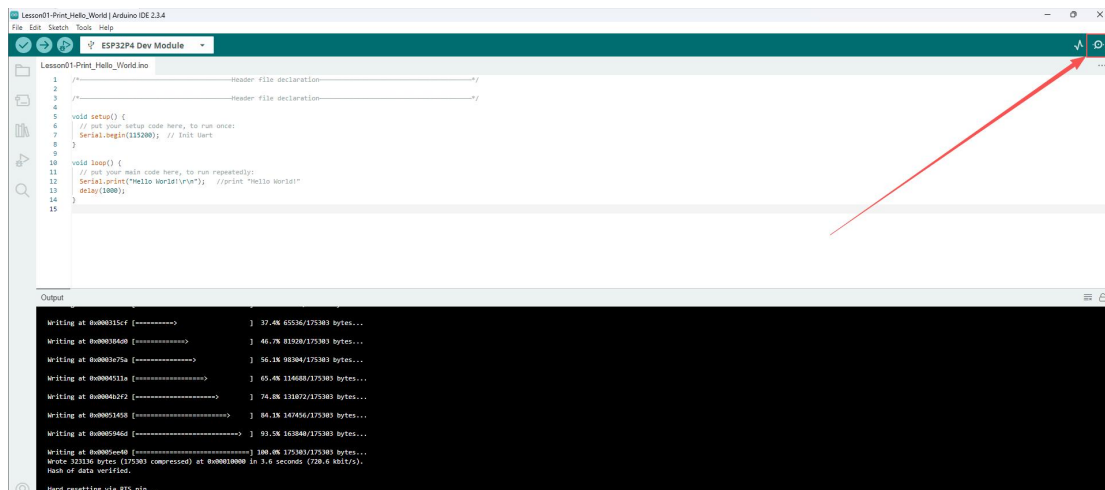
Once configured, upload the code.



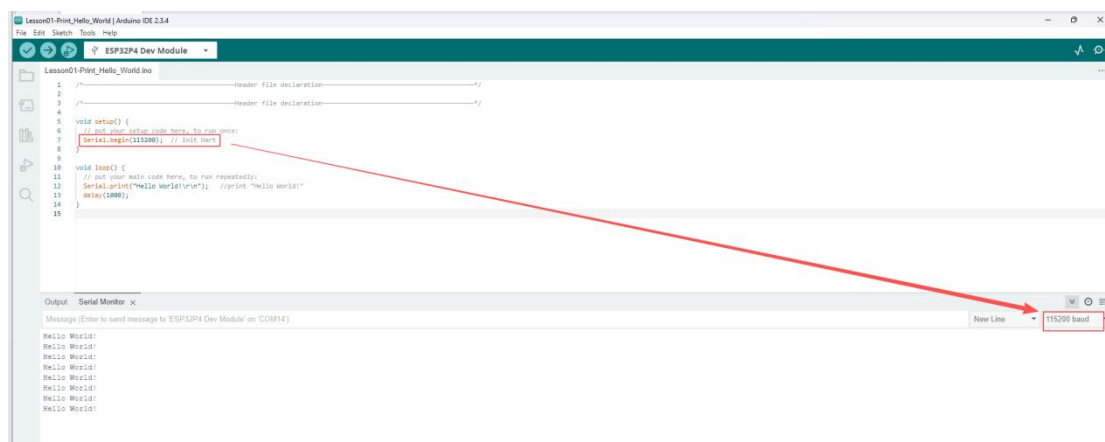
After waiting a moment, you will see the message indicating successful code upload in the output console.



Next, simply open the Serial Monitor and you'll see "Hello World" being printed. Click the Serial Monitor icon in the top-right corner of the interface to open it.



Then select the baud rate matching your code settings here—this ensures proper output display; otherwise, you'll see garbled text or no output at all.



And that concludes all the content for this lesson. In the next lesson, we will gradually increase the difficulty and show you how to add library files and how to control more hardware and peripherals.

Lesson02---Turn on the LED

Introduction

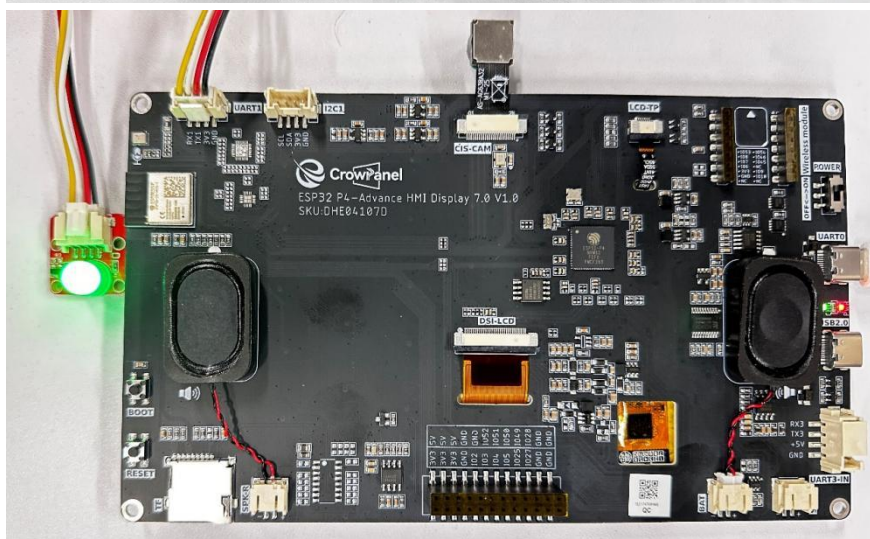
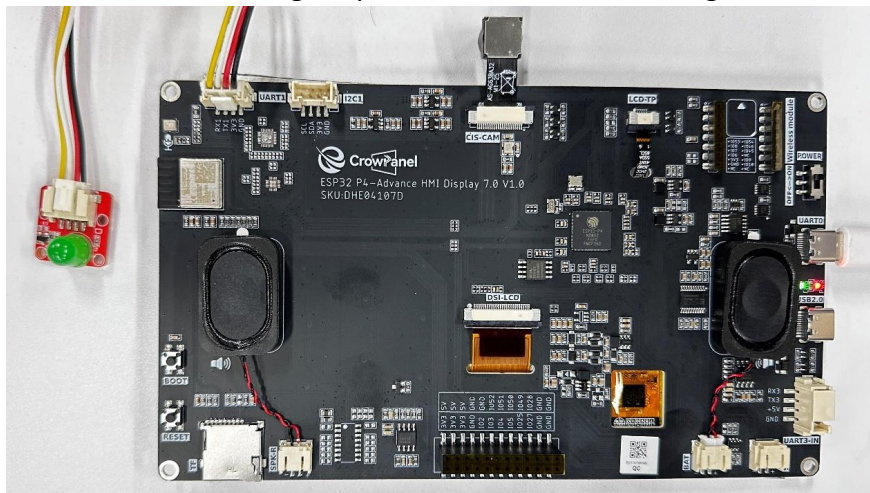
In this lesson, we will begin exploring the simplest control logic in the Arduino-IDE to perform level control on the UART1 interface of the Advance-P4. This will make the LED connected to the UART1 interface turn on for one second and off for one second in a continuous cycle.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the principles of GPIO and LEDs
2. Learn the syntax of "pinMode" and "digitalWrite"
3. Light up the LED connected to the UART1 interface

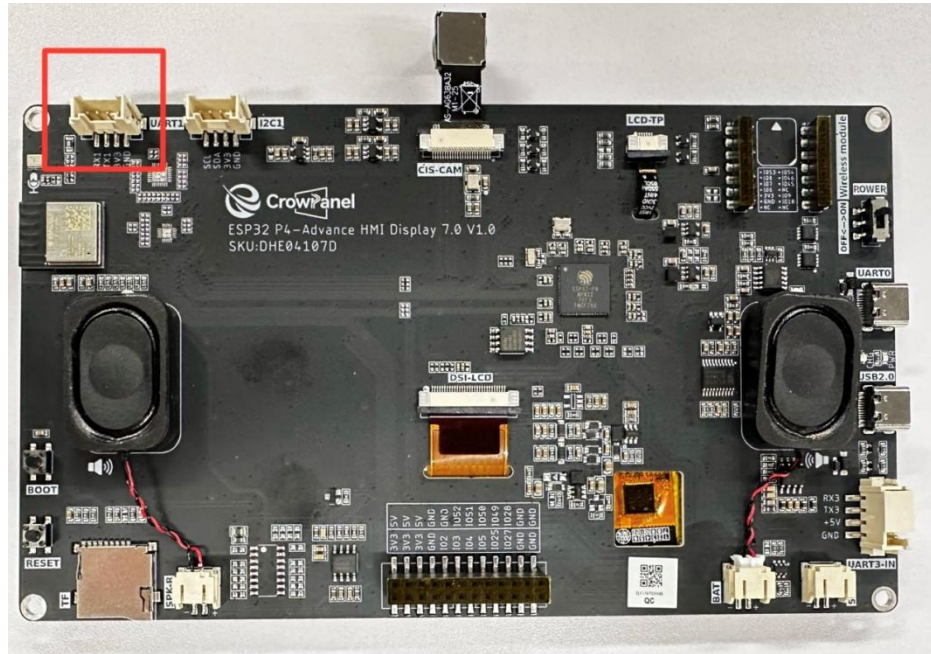
Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to observe that the LED connected to the UART1 interface will light up for one second and then go off for one second.



Hardware Used in This Lesson

Introduction to the UART1 Interface on the Advance-P4



On our Advance-P4 board, the UART1 interface is identified by the name "UART". We should look for an interface that can be used for serial communication. Moreover, during the initial design phase, this [UART1](#) interface can also be used as a regular GPIO port. That is, we can treat the RX and TX pins on this interface as [two regular GPIO ports](#).

Introduction to GPIO

The ESP32-P4 chip offers 55 general-purpose input/output (GPIO) functions, providing flexibility and adaptability for a wide range of applications.

The key features of these GPIOs include:

- ① [Multi-functionality](#): Each GPIO pin can not only be used as an input or output, but can also be configured as various roles through IO MUX (refer to Chapter 2 for details), such as PWM, ADC, I2C, SPI, etc. This enables the ESP32-P4 to adapt to various peripheral connections.
- ② [High current output](#): The GPIO pins of ESP32-P4 support up to 40mA of current output, allowing direct driving of low-power loads such as LEDs. This reduces the complexity of external driver circuits.
- ③ [Programmability](#): Through the ESP-IDF (SDK) development framework, users can flexibly configure the input/output mode, pull-up/pull-down parameters, and other settings of each GPIO to meet specific application requirements.

- ④ **Interrupt support:** GPIO pins support interrupt functionality, which can trigger interrupts when the signal changes. This is suitable for real-time response applications such as button detection and sensor triggering.
- ⑤ **Status indication:** GPIO pins can be used as LED indicators, achieving status visualization through simple high/low level switching. This helps users debug and monitor system operation.

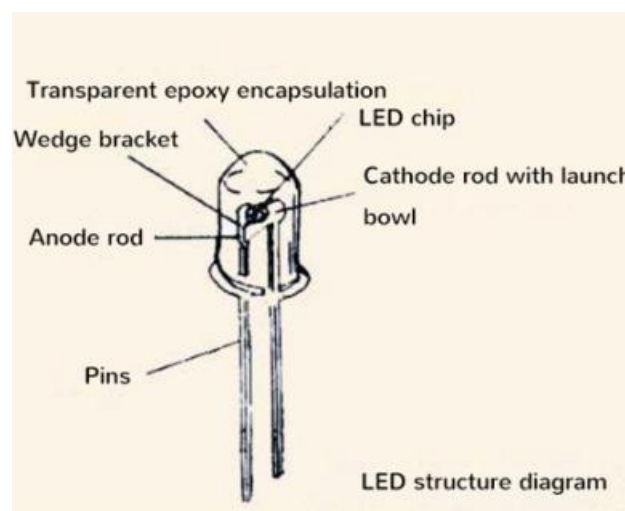
The GPIO functions of ESP32-P4 provide powerful hardware support for developers. In this chapter, we will delve into the application and configuration of GPIO through an example of lighting an LED.

Introduction to LED

LED is a highly efficient and durable miniature semiconductor device that emits light when an electric current passes through it. It has the advantages of high energy conversion efficiency, low heat generation, and environmental friendliness. They are commonly used in indicator lights, display screens, and lighting equipment. LEDs have fast response times and a wide range of color options, making them widely used in electronic products. In the ESP32-P4 lighting demonstration, GPIO control simplifies and makes it intuitive to switch the LEDs, helping users better understand their practical applications.

① The principle of LED light emission

LED devices are light-emitting components based on solid-state semiconductor technology. When a forward current is applied to a semiconductor material with a PN junction, the recombination of charge carriers within the semiconductor releases energy in the form of photons, thereby generating light. Therefore, LEDs are cold light sources, unlike lighting based on filament, which generates heat and thus avoids problems such as burning out. The following chart illustrates the operating principle of LED devices.



In the above chart, the PN junction of the semiconductor exhibits the characteristics of forward conduction, reverse blocking, and breakdown. When there is no external bias and the junction is in a thermal equilibrium state, no carrier recombination occurs within the PN junction, and thus no light emission is produced. However, when a forward bias is applied, the light emission process of the PN junction can be divided into three stages:

Firstly, carriers are injected under forward bias;

Secondly, electrons and holes recombine within the P region, releasing energy;

Finally, the energy released during the recombination process is radiated outward in the form of light. In summary, when current passes through the PN junction, electrons are driven to the P region by the electric field. There, they combine with holes, releasing excess energy and generating photons, thereby achieving the light-emitting function of the PN junction.

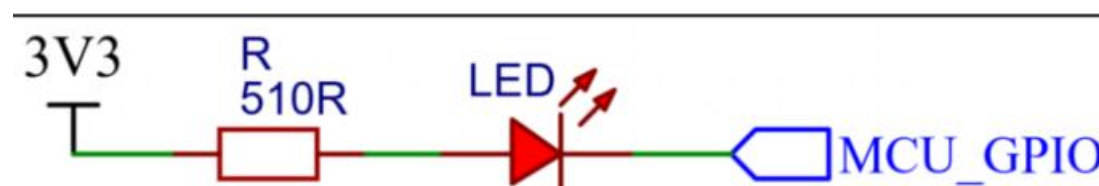
Note: The color of the light emitted by an LED is determined by the band gap width of the semiconductor material used. Different materials will produce light of different wavelengths, thus being able to generate light output of various colors. This efficient light-emitting mechanism has made light-emitting diodes widely adopted in lighting and indication applications.

② Principle of LED Lighting Driver

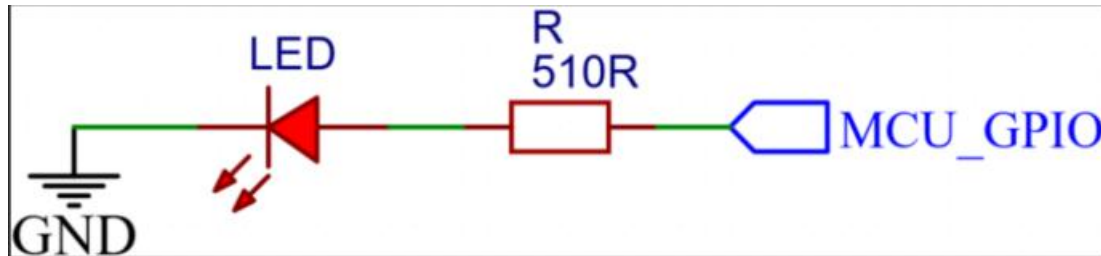
LED driving refers to providing appropriate current and voltage to LEDs through a stable power supply to ensure their normal lighting. The main driving methods for LEDs are constant current driving and constant voltage driving, among which constant current driving is more favored as it can limit the current. Due to the fact that LED lights are very sensitive to current fluctuations, exceeding their rated current may cause damage. Therefore, constant current driving ensures the operation of LEDs by maintaining a stable current flow. Next, we will study these two LED driving methods.

1) **Current injection connection.** This refers to the working current of the LED being provided externally, and the current is injected into our microcontroller.

The risk here is that the fluctuations of the external power supply can easily cause the microcontroller pins to burn out.



2) **Power current configuration.** This refers to the voltage and current provided by the microcontroller, and the current output will be applied to the LED. If the LED is driven directly by the GPIO of the microcontroller, its driving capability is relatively weak and may not be able to provide sufficient current for driving the LED.



The LED circuit on the ESP32-P4 development board adopts the "current receiving" configuration. This approach avoids the microcontroller directly powering and supplying current to the LED, thereby effectively reducing the load on the microcontroller. This enables the microcontroller to focus more on performing other core tasks, thereby enhancing the performance and stability of the entire system.

Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson02-Turn_on_the_LED

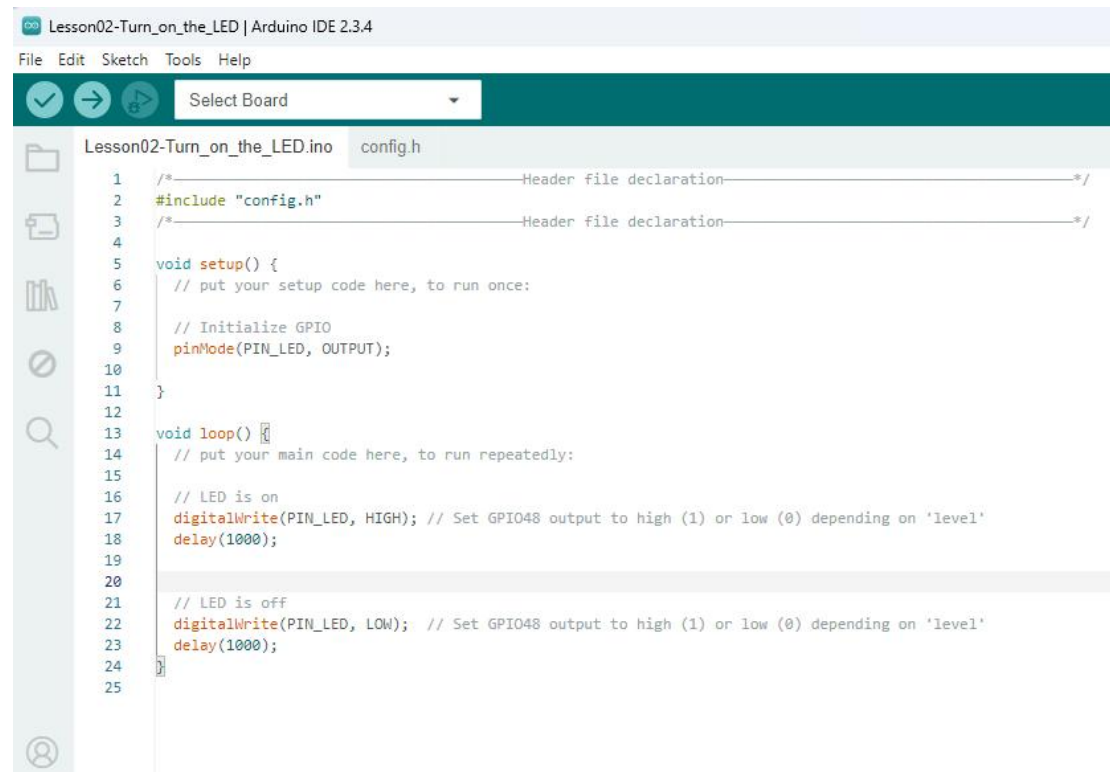
Key Explanations

Next, let's explore how the control logic works in this lesson's code. We'll investigate this question together.

Double-click to open this lesson's code (the .ino file).

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
config.h	2026/2/25 14:12	C Header 源文件	1 KB
Lesson02-Turn_on_the_LED.ino	2026/2/25 14:13	INO File	1 KB

After opening, you can see the project's code and the configuration file "config.h".



```

Lesson02-Turn_on_the_LED.ino  config.h
1  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
2  #include "config.h"
3  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
4
5  void setup() {
6      // put your setup code here, to run once:
7
8      // Initialize GPIO
9      pinMode(PIN_LED, OUTPUT);
10
11  }
12
13  void loop() {
14      // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
15
16      // LED is on
17      digitalWrite(PIN_LED, HIGH); // Set GPIO48 output to high (1) or low (0) depending on 'level'
18      delay(1000);
19
20
21      // LED is off
22      digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LOW); // Set GPIO48 output to high (1) or low (0) depending on 'level'
23      delay(1000);
24  }
25

```

In subsequent code, the ".ino" file will primarily implement our functionality.

The "config.h" file, meanwhile, houses required pin definitions and other related configurations, enabling code separation and decoupling for easier management.

Why this approach: Centralizing pin numbers, parameters, and other constants in a header file allows you to modify only the header file later without touching the main program. This adheres to the programming principle of "high cohesion, low coupling."

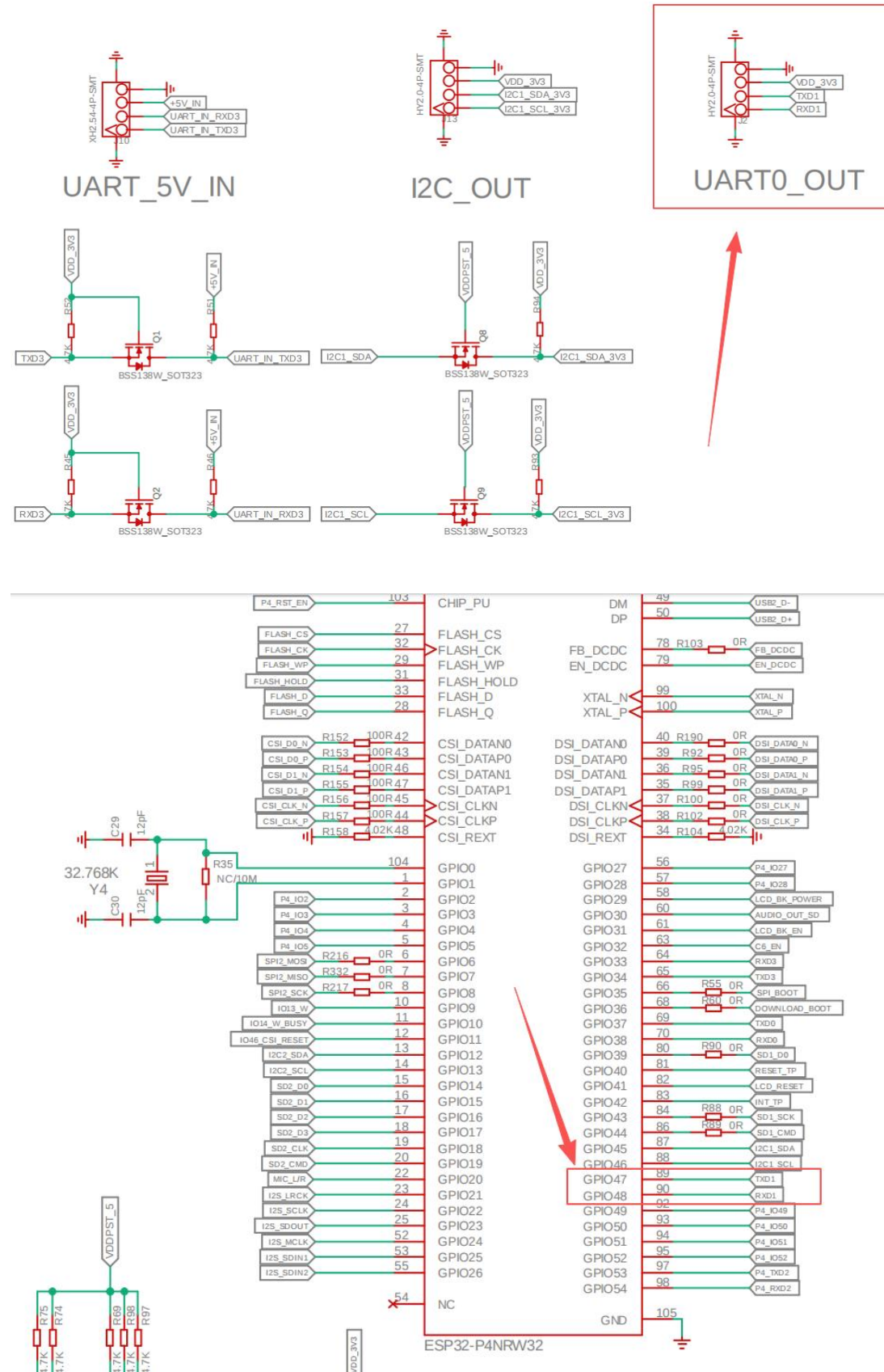


```

Lesson02-Turn_on_the_LED.ino  config.h
1  #pragma once
2
3  /***** Pin define *****/
4  #define PIN_LED    (48)
5
6  /***** Pin define *****/
7

```

In this lesson, we are primarily controlling the LED on the UART1 interface, specifically pin 48 at the UART1 interface.



Now let's look back at the code and walk through it line by line.

```

Lesson02-Turn_on_the_LED.ino  config.h
1  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
2  #include "config.h"
3  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
4
5  void setup() {
6      // put your setup code here, to run once:
7
8      // Initialize GPIO
9      pinMode(PIN_LED, OUTPUT);
10
11  }
12
13  void loop() {
14      // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
15
16      // LED is on
17      digitalWrite(PIN_LED, HIGH); // Set GPIO48 output to high (1) or low (0) depending on 'level'
18      delay(1000);
19
20      // LED is off
21      digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LOW); // Set GPIO48 output to high (1) or low (0) depending on 'level'
22      delay(1000);
23  }
24
25

```

pinMode(PIN_LED, OUTPUT); : Core Arduino function that sets the GPIO pin's operating mode.

Parameter 1 (PIN_LED) : The pin number to configure (defined in config.h, e.g., 48).

Parameter 2 (OUTPUT) : Pin mode; OUTPUT means "output mode" (ESP32-P4 GPIO supports INPUT/OUTPUT/INPUT_PULLUP, etc.).

Underlying logic : This function configures the ESP32-P4 registers, setting the corresponding GPIO pin's hardware circuit to a state "capable of outputting high/low levels externally."

digitalWrite(PIN_LED, HIGH); : Core Arduino function that outputs high or low levels to a specified GPIO pin.

Parameter 1 (PIN_LED) : The pin number to control.

Parameter 2 (HIGH) : Output level; HIGH represents high level (typically 3.3V on ESP32-P4), LOW represents low level (0V).

delay(1000); : Core Arduino function that pauses program execution for a specified number of milliseconds.

Parameter 1000: Pauses for 1000 milliseconds (i.e., 1 second).

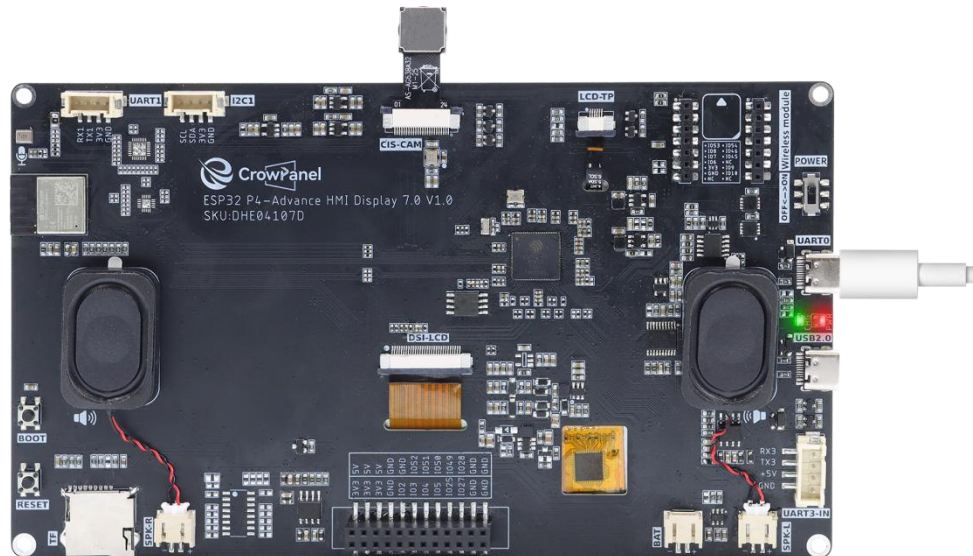
Note: delay() is "blocking delay"—during the delay period, the ESP32-P4 suspends other operations until the delay completes.

digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LOW); : Sets the PIN_LED pin to output low level, turning the LED off (assuming the LED hardware wiring is "high-level activated"; if it's low-level activated, the logic reverses).

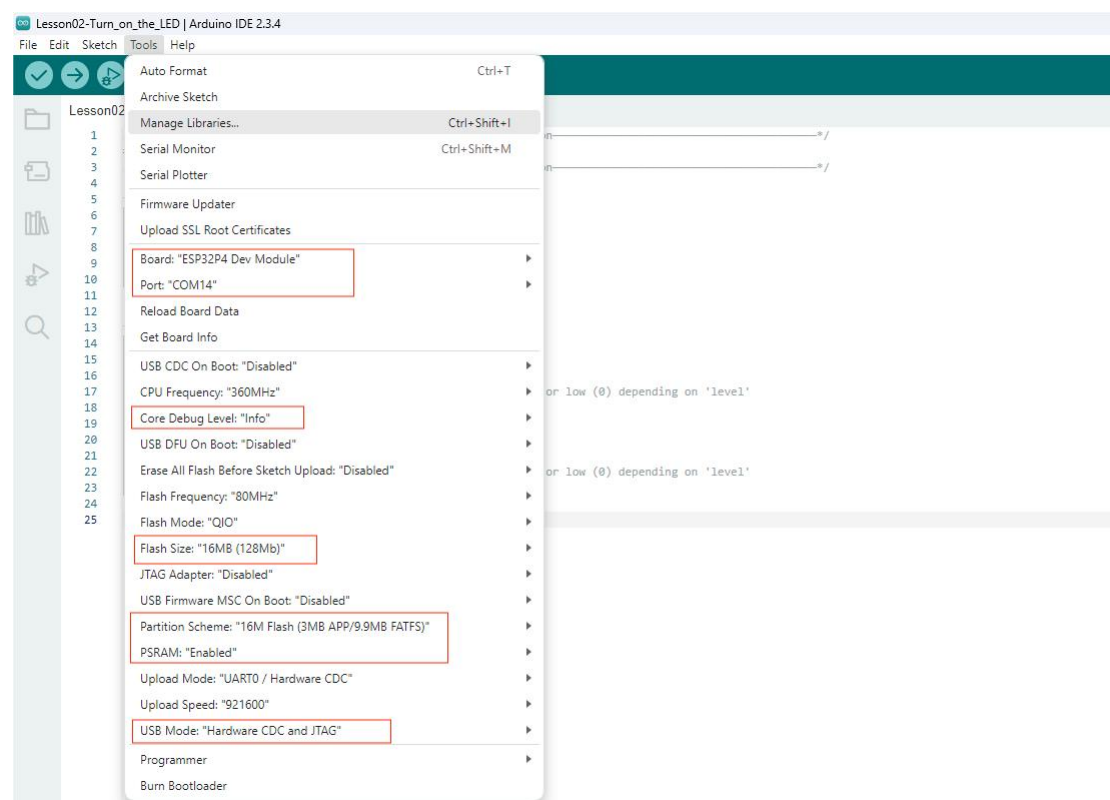
delay(1000); : Pauses for another 1 second, maintaining the LED off state for 1 second.

Programming Steps

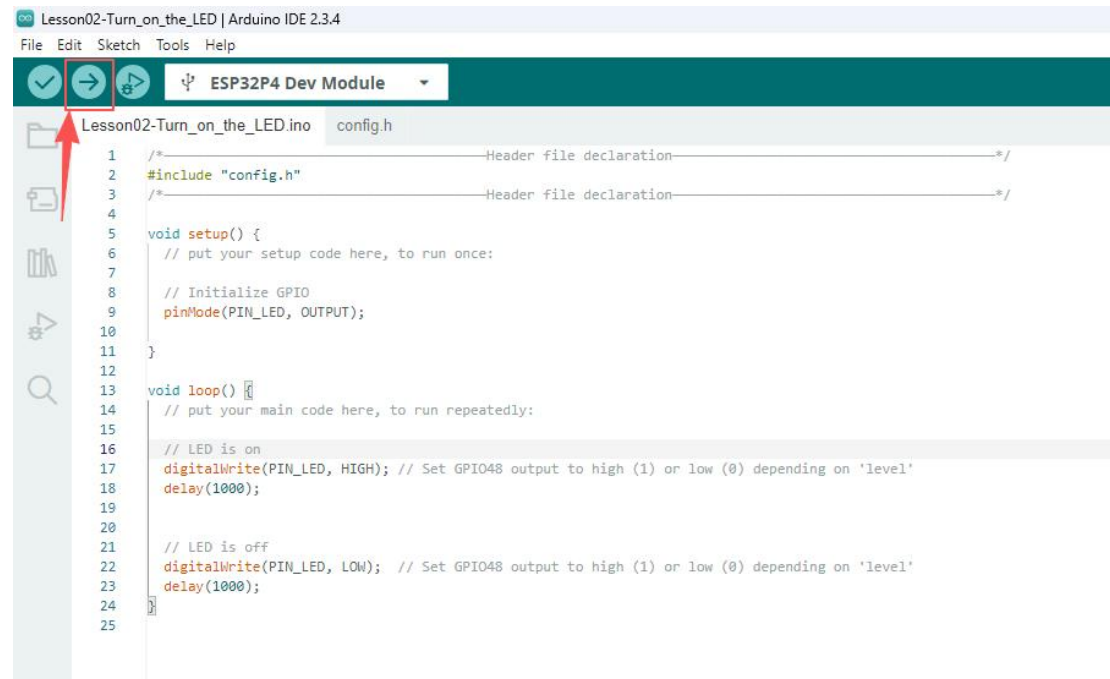
Now that the code is ready, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 to see the results in action. First, connect the Advance-P4 device to your computer host via a USB cable.



Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.

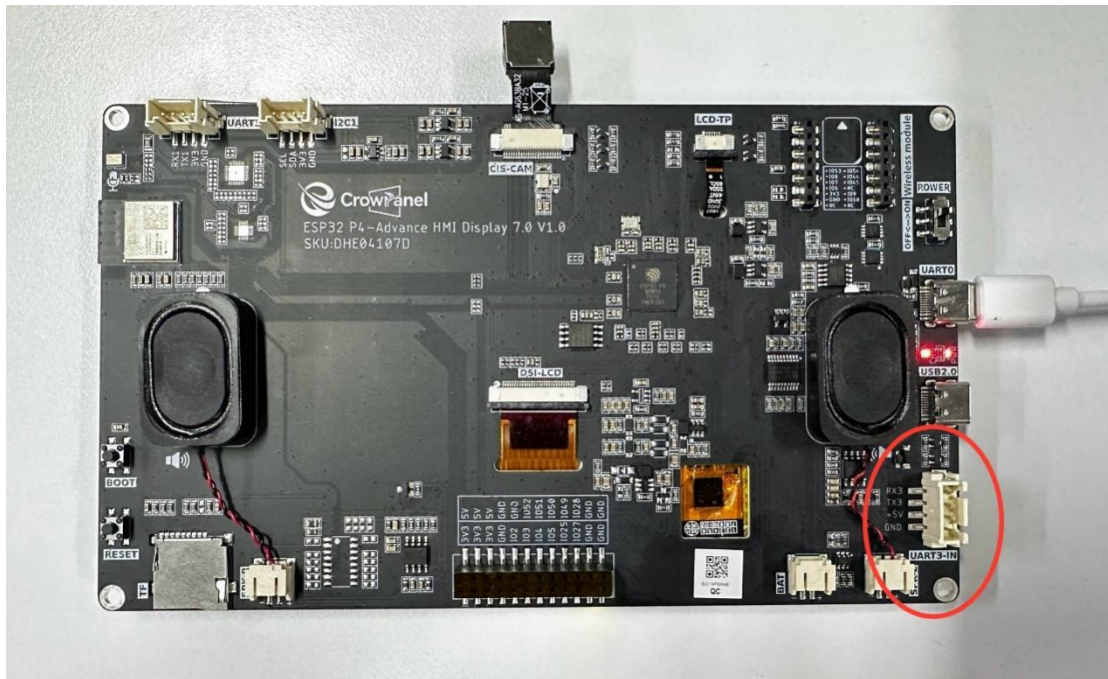


After waiting a moment, you will see the LED connected to UART1 on your Advance-P4 blinking on for one second and off for one second, repeating this cycle continuously.

Lesson03---UART3-IN interface (external power supply)

Introduction

In this class, we will introduce the UART3-IN interface. There will be no code in this class. Based on the code from the previous class (which turned on the LED), we will explain to you what uses this UART3-IN interface has.

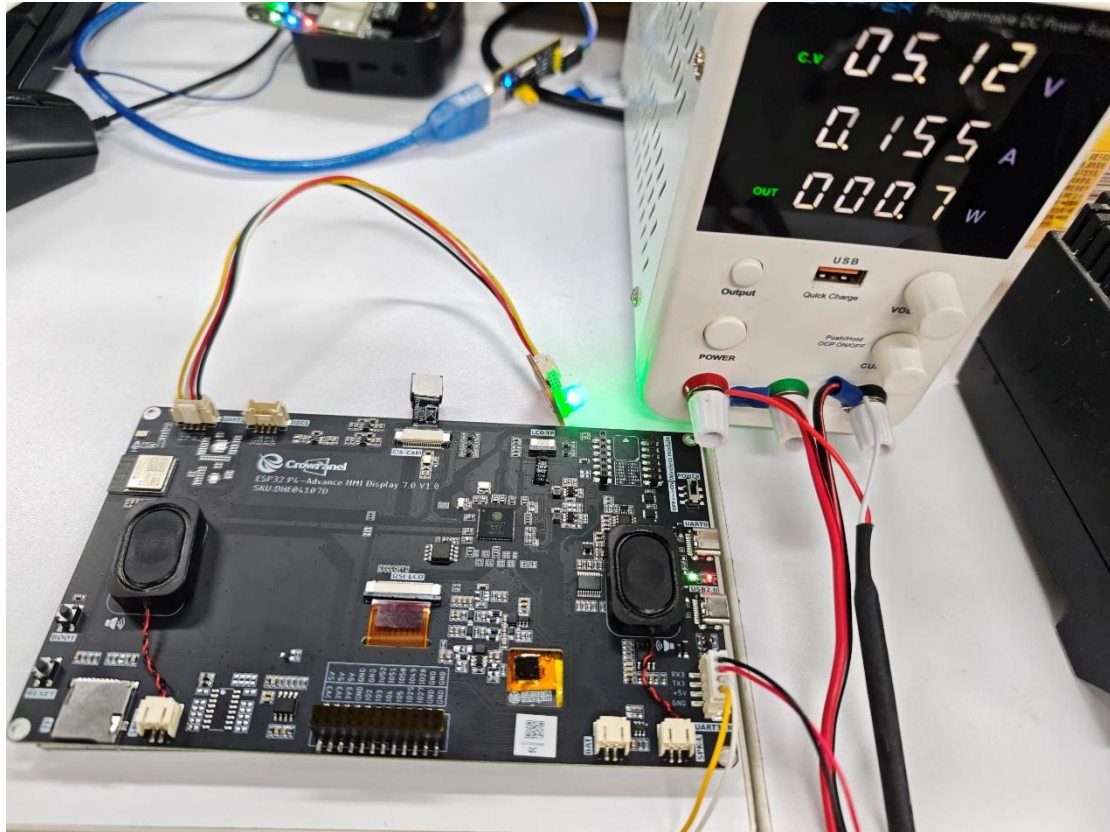


Learning Goals

1. Understand the function of the UART3-IN interface

Preview of the Result

Instead of powering the Advance-P4 through the UART0 and USB 2.0 interfaces, power it solely through the UART3-IN interface, and you will see the LED connected to the UART1 interface light up.



Hardware Used in This Lesson

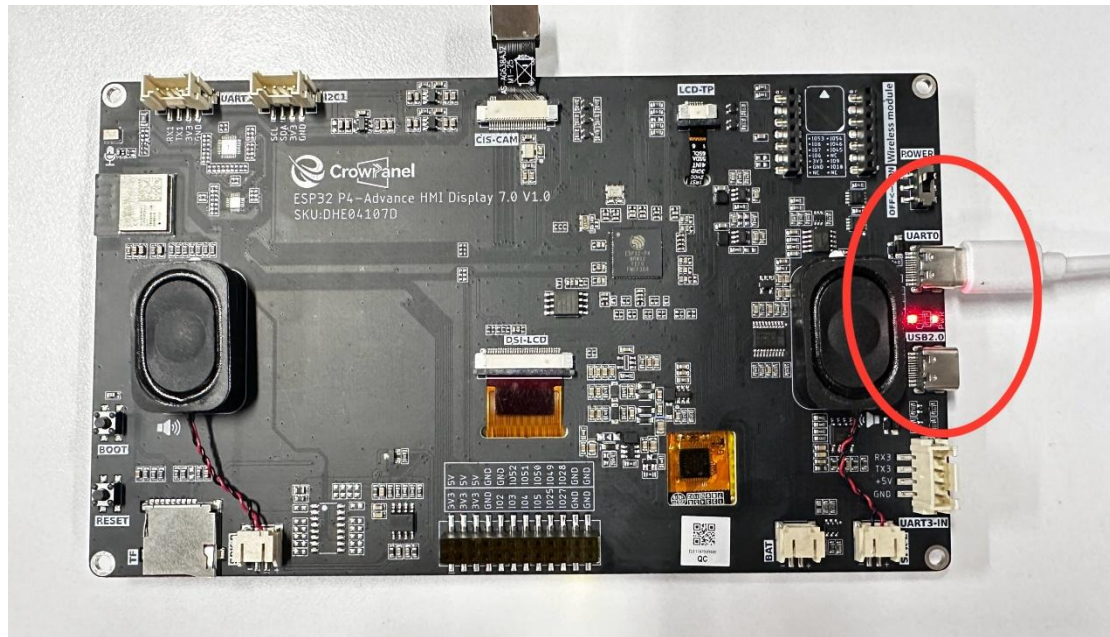
This lesson involves no hardware usage; it solely explains the function of the UART3-IN interface on the Advance-P4 development board.

Complete Code

This lesson has no code.

Key Explanations

At this moment, everyone can see that the UART3-IN and UART0 interfaces. In the previous lesson, when we were burning the code, we learned that the UART0 pin is used for uploading the code. At the same time, you can also see that after connecting the UART0 interface, the power indicator next to it lights up, indicating that power supply is still available.



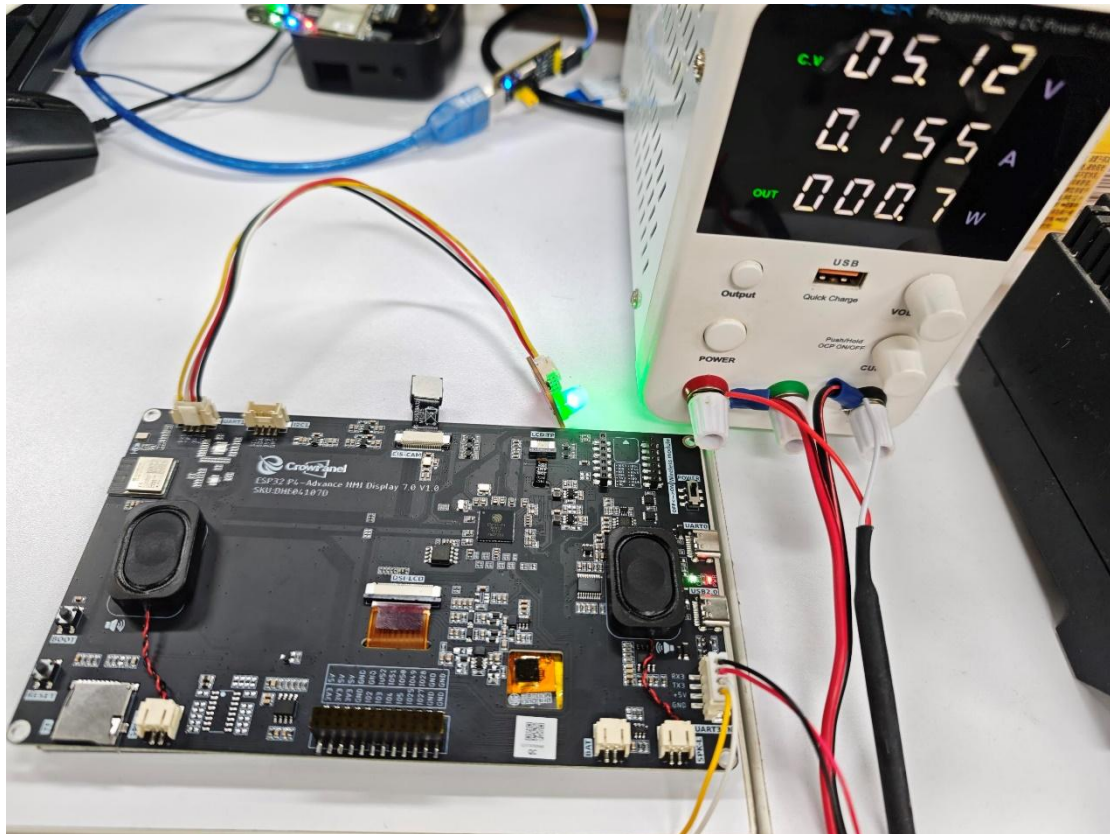
Then we come back to the UART3-IN interface. This interface is similar in function to the UART0 interface we just discussed. It can supply power, but it cannot upload code.

The UART0 interface is connected to the serial port burning chip, making code burning relatively convenient.

However, the UART3-IN interface does not have a serial port burning chip. It can only be used for power supply and serial port operations.

So, here we will explain how the UART3-IN interface can be used as a power supply function.

You need to prepare a power supply, along with two Dupont wires. One wire connects the VCC pin of UART3-IN to the positive terminal of the power supply, and the other wire connects the GND pin of UART3-IN to the negative terminal of the power supply.



Note: The voltage and current used here are provided by a programmable power supply. You only need to ensure that the externally supplied voltage is 5V and the current is 2A, then connect them to the corresponding VCC pin and GND pin on UART3-IN (connect the positive terminal to VCC and the negative terminal to GND).

Make sure your wires are connected correctly, then turn on the power switch to supply power.

At this point, you will be able to see the LED light we turned on in the last lesson. It is also blinking now, indicating that the power supply has been successful.

Of course, in addition to serving as an input power interface, USRT3-IN can also be used as a normal serial port. However, it should be noted that when connecting UART3-IN, since UART3-IN cannot provide power externally, the side connected to UART3-IN needs to be able to supply power itself.

Lesson04---Serial port usage

Introduction

In this class, we will start teaching you how to use the serial port component. We will communicate with the Wi-Fi serial module through the UART1 interface on the Advance-P4.

The Advance-P4 connects to the Wi-Fi module via the serial port. After sending the AT command to the Wi-Fi module, it enables the Wi-Fi module to connect to the Wi-Fi network.

Learning Goals

1. Use the UART1 interface as a normal serial port for communication by connecting a serial communication module.
2. Understand the essence of serial communication.
3. Learn how to implement serial communication through code.

Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to see the AT commands you sent on the monitor of Arduino-IDE, as well as the responses returned to you by the Wi-Fi module via the serial port.

```
Output  Serial Monitor x
Message (Enter to send message to 'ESP32P4 Dev Module' on 'COM14')

INFO: Connecting to WiFi: elecrow888
INFO: AT Response: AT+CWJAP="elecrow888","elecrow2014"
WIFI DISCONNECT
WIFI CONNECTED
WIFI GOT IP

OK

INFO: WiFi Connected
INFO: AT Response: AT+CIFSR
+CIFSR:APIP,"192.168.4.1"
+CIFSR:APMAC,"3e:71:bf:2d:fd:79"
+CIFSR:STAIP,"192.168.50.133"
+CIFSR:STAMAC,"3c:71:bf:2d:fd:79"

OK

INFO: AT Response: AT+CIPMUX=1

OK

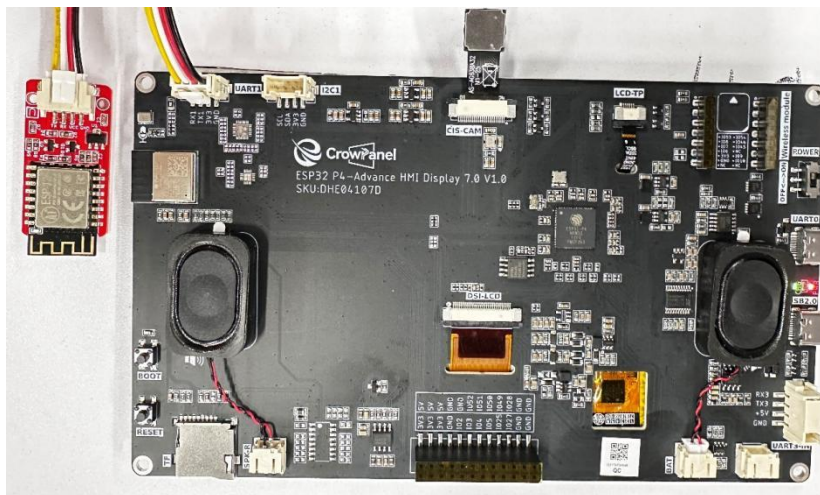
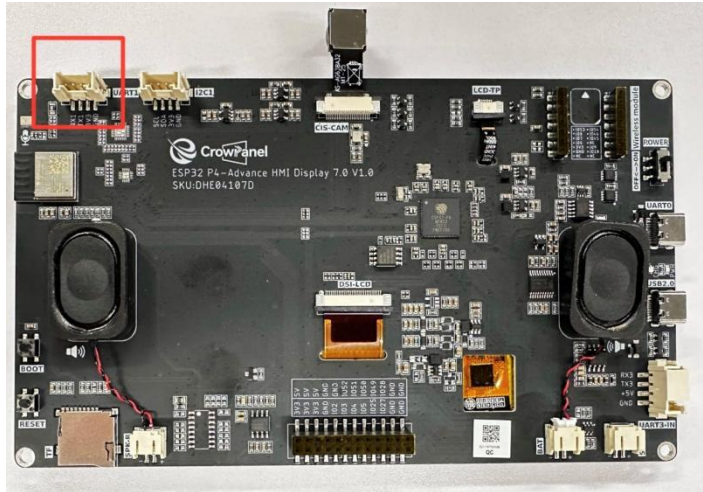
INFO: AT Response: AT+CIPSERVER=1,80

OK

INFO: Complete the Wi-Fi connection task.
```

Hardware Used in This Lesson

The UART1 interface on the Advance-P4



Crowtail- Serial Wifi Description

The serial wifi module is based on ESP-12, which is an ultra-low power UART-WiFi module. It has excellent dimensions and ULP technology compared to other similar modules. The module is specially designed for mobile devices and the Internet of Things. Once the firmware is upgraded to the appropriate version, a compatible Android device can run the IOT.APK to do the following: control the PWM, I/O pin, or Serial communication. For example, you can use this module to transmit data with its serial port. It is easy to communicate with other device.

If you want to purchase, you can click the link below to learn more about this module.

Purchase link: <https://www.elecrow.com/crowtail-serial-wifi-p-1265.html>

Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

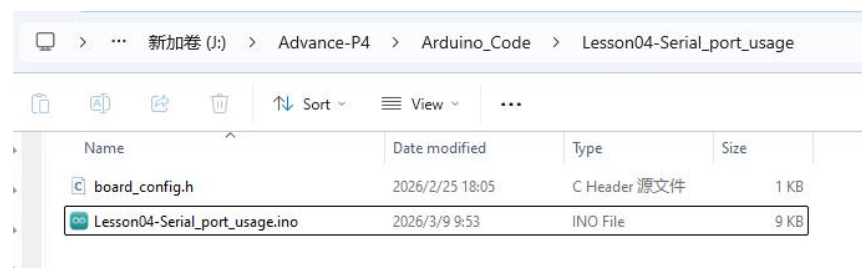
https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson04-Serial_port_usage

Key Explanations

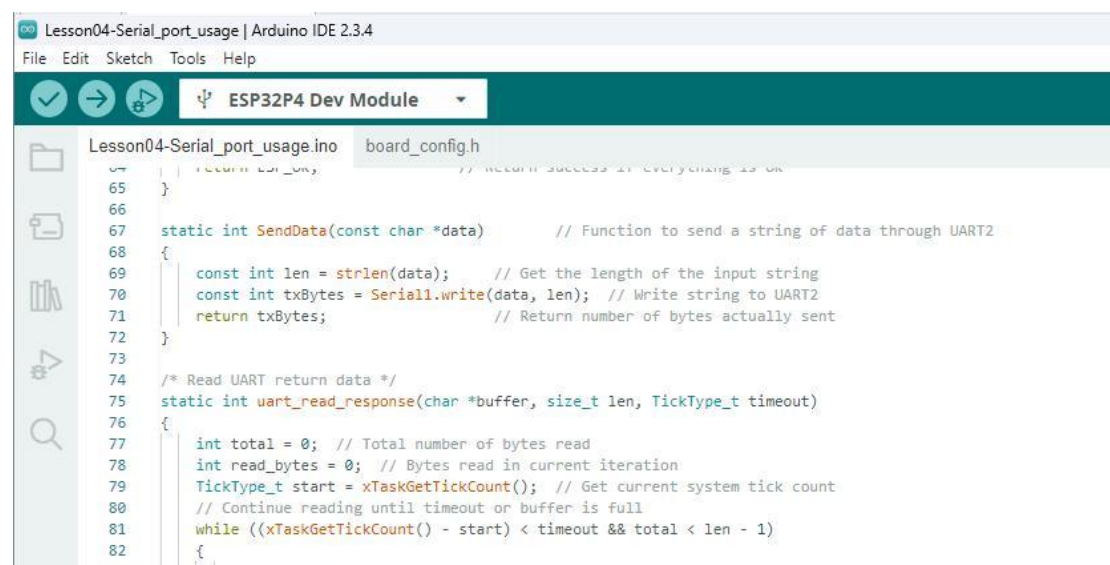
The focus of this lesson is on how to use the serial port. Send commands to the ESP32-P4 chip via the serial port, and after the ESP32-P4 receives the commands, it controls the WiFi module connected to UART1 to establish a WiFi connection. Once the connection is successful, it sends relevant status messages back to the PC via the serial port, enabling normal serial communication.

Next, let's understand how serial communication actually works and what conditions must be met to perform serial communication.

Double-click to open this lesson's code (the .ino file).



After opening, you can see the project's code and the configuration file board_config.h.



Let's first take a look at the board_config.h file.

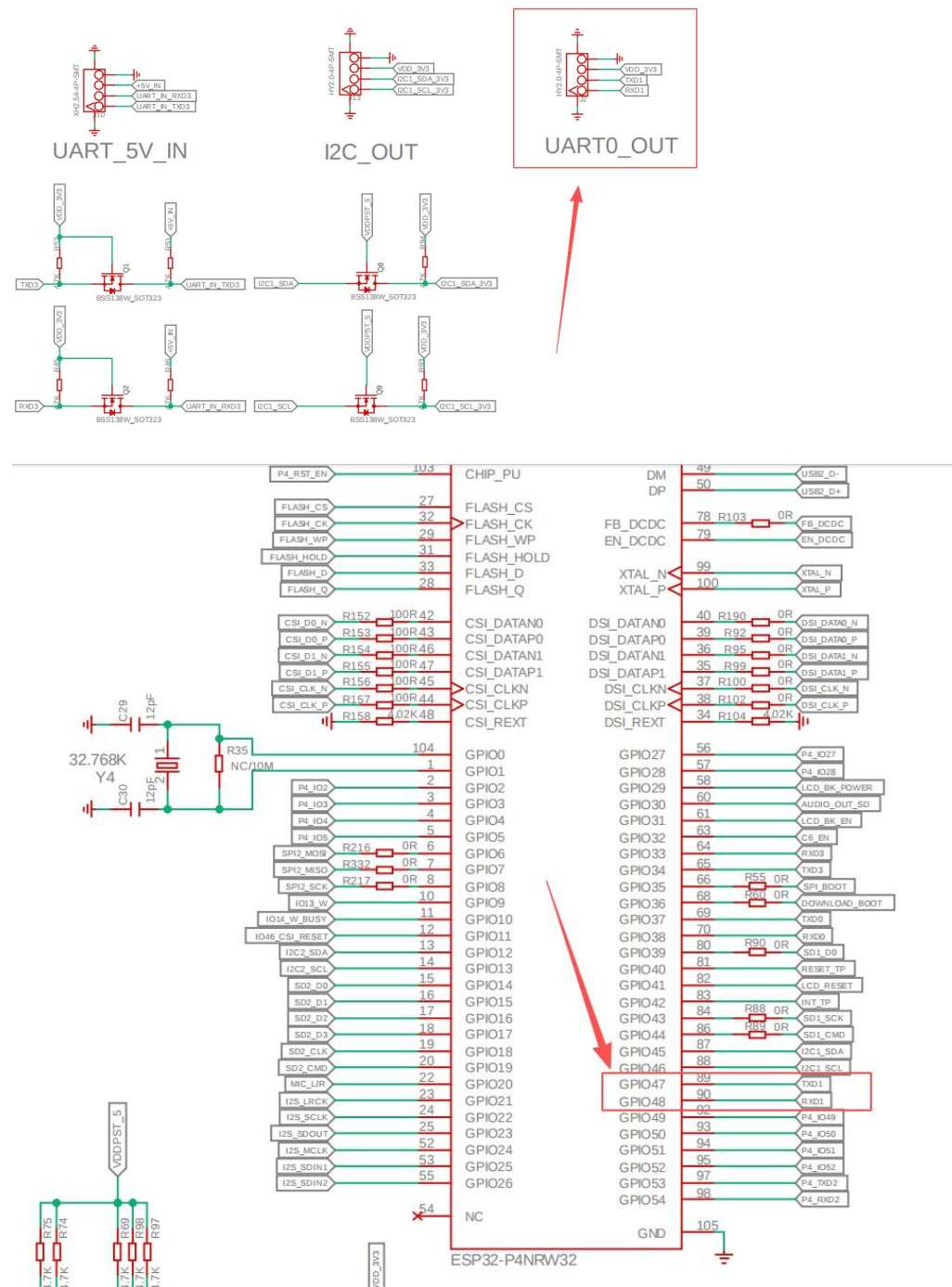
```

Lesson04-Serial_port_usage.ino  board_config.h

1  #pragma once
2
3  /***** Pin define *****/
4
5  #define UART1_EXTRA_GPIO_TXD 47    // Define GPIO number 47 as UART1 TXD pin
6  #define UART1_EXTRA_GPIO_RXD 48    // Define GPIO number 48 as UART1 RXD pin
7
8  /***** Pin define *****/
9

```

In this lesson, we are primarily controlling the WiFi module on the UART1 interface, specifically pins 47 and 48 at the UART1 interface.



2. Core Function Area

2.1 UART Initialization Function `uart_init()`

```

49  esp_err_t uart_init()
50  {
51      // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
52      Serial.begin(115200);
53
54      // Print to the debug console
55      Serial.println("Serial 0 (Debug) initialized.");
56
57      // Initialize Serial1 (UART1) with custom pins
58      // Parameters: baud rate, config, RX pin, TX pin
59      Serial1.begin(115200, SERIAL_8N1, UART1_EXTRA_GPIO_RXD, UART1_EXTRA_GPIO_TXD);
60
61      // Print to the second serial port
62      Serial1.println("Serial 1 (External Device) initialized.");
63
64      return ESP_OK;                // Return success if everything is OK
65  }

```

Serial.begin(115200): initializes ESP32-P4 hardware UART0 (default serial port) with baud rate 115200, used for outputting debug logs;

Serial1.begin(...): initializes UART1, parameter explanation:

115200: baud rate (must match AT command baud rate of WiFi module);

SERIAL_8N1: serial format (8 data bits, no parity bit, 1 stop bit, default format for AT modules);

UART1_EXTRA_GPIO_RXD/UART1_EXTRA_GPIO_TXD: custom RX/TX pins (from board_config.h);

Returns ESP_OK: conforms to ESP-IDF error code specification, indicating successful initialization.

2.2 UART Send Function `SendData()`

```

67  static int SendData(const char *data)    // Function to send a string of data through UART2
68  {
69      const int len = strlen(data);        // Get the length of the input string
70      const int txBytes = Serial1.write(data, len); // Write string to UART2
71      return txBytes;                      // Return number of bytes actually sent
72  }
73

```

static: function is only visible within the current file, avoiding global naming conflicts;

strlen(data): calculates the length of the string to be sent (excluding the null terminator `\0`);

Serial1.write(data, len): writes specified length of byte data to UART1 (different from print, write is more suitable for binary/pure character transmission);

Return value: actual number of bytes sent, can be used to verify successful transmission (e.g., return value < len indicates transmission failure).

2.3 UART Receive Function `uart_read_response()`

```

74  /* Read UART return data */
75  static int uart_read_response(char *buffer, size_t len, TickType_t timeout)
76  {
77      int total = 0; // Total number of bytes read
78      int read_bytes = 0; // Bytes read in current iteration
79      TickType_t start = xTaskGetTickCount(); // Get current system tick count
80      // Continue reading until timeout or buffer is full
81      while ((xTaskGetTickCount() - start) < timeout && total < len - 1)
82      {
83          // Read bytes from UART2
84          if (Serial1.available()) {
85              read_bytes = Serial1.read((uint8_t *) (buffer + total), len - total - 1);
86              if (read_bytes > 0)
87              {
88                  total += read_bytes; // Accumulate total bytes read
89              }
90          } else {
91              vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(5));
92          }
93      }
94      buffer[total] = '\0'; // Null-terminate the response string
95      return total; // Return total bytes read
96  }

```

The function `uart_read_response()` serves to: continuously read data returned by the device from the UART serial port (Serial1) within a specified timeout period, store the read content into the buffer, and finally return the total number of bytes read.

The function first records the current system tick time as the start time, then enters a loop that continues attempting to read serial port data as long as timeout has not occurred and the buffer is not yet full.

```

81      while ((xTaskGetTickCount() - start) < timeout && total < len - 1)
82      {

```

If there is data in the serial port buffer (`Serial1.available()` returns true), it calls `Serial1.read()` to read data into the position of `buffer + total`, thereby appending new data after existing data, and uses `total` to accumulate the number of bytes already read.

```

84          if (Serial1.available()) {
85              read_bytes = Serial1.read((uint8_t *) (buffer + total), len - total - 1);
86              if (read_bytes > 0)
87              {
88                  total += read_bytes; // Accumulate total bytes read
89              }

```

If no data is currently available to read, it pauses the task for a short period via `vTaskDelay(5ms)` to avoid occupying CPU resources.

After the loop ends, it appends the string terminator `'\0'` at the end of the data, making the buffer a valid C string. Finally, the function returns `total`, indicating how many bytes were read in total.

```

90          } else {
91              vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(5));
92          }
93      }
94      buffer[total] = '\0'; // Null-terminate the response string
95      return total; // Return total bytes read
96  }

```

2.4 AT Command Send Function send_at_command()

```

98  /* Send AT command and wait for OK response */
99  static bool send_at_command(const char *cmd, TickType_t timeout)
100 {
101     char response[AT_RESPONSE_MAX] = {0}; // Buffer to store response
102     SendData(cmd); // Send the AT command
103     SendData("\r\n"); // Send command terminator
104
105     uart_read_response(response, AT_RESPONSE_MAX, timeout); // Read response
106     PRINTF_INFO("AT Response: %s", response); // Log the response
107
108     // Check if response contains "OK"
109     if (strstr(response, "OK") != NULL)
110     | | return true; // Command succeeded
111     else
112     | | return false; // Command failed
113 }

```

The function send_at_command() serves to: send an AT command to the serial port device, then read the data returned by the device within a specified timeout period, and determine whether the command executed successfully by checking if the returned content contains "OK".

The function first creates a response buffer to save the data returned by the module, then calls SendData(cmd) to send the AT command string, and additionally sends "\r\n" as the AT command terminator (most AT devices require carriage return and line feed as the command ending).

```

98  /* Send AT command and wait for OK response */
99  static bool send_at_command(const char *cmd, TickType_t timeout)
100 {
101     char response[AT_RESPONSE_MAX] = {0}; // Buffer to store response
102     SendData(cmd); // Send the AT command
103     SendData("\r\n"); // Send command terminator

```

Then it calls the previously explained uart_read_response() function to read data returned by the module from the serial port within the specified timeout period and store it into response. After reading completes, it prints the entire response content via PRINTF_INFO for convenient debugging to see what the module actually returned.

```

105     uart_read_response(response, AT_RESPONSE_MAX, timeout); // Read response
106     PRINTF_INFO("AT Response: %s", response); // Log the response
107

```

Finally, the function uses strstr(response, "OK") to search for the "OK" substring in the returned string. If found, it indicates successful module execution and the function returns true; if not found, the command execution is considered failed and returns false.

```

108     // Check if response contains "OK"
109     if (strstr(response, "OK") != NULL)
110     | | return true; // Command succeeded
111     else
112     | | return false; // Command failed
113 }

```

2.5 WiFi Connection Function connect_wifi()

```

115  /* WiFi connection function */
116  static bool connect_wifi()
117  {
118      char cmd[128]; // Buffer to build AT command
119
120      // Construct AT command to join WiFi network
121      snprintf(cmd, sizeof(cmd), "AT+CWJAP=\"%s\", \"%s\"", WIFI_SSID, WIFI_PASS);
122      PRINTF_INFO("Connecting to WiFi: %s", WIFI_SSID); // Log connection attempt
123
124      // Send command with 5 second timeout and return result
125      if (send_at_command(cmd, pdMS_TO_TICKS(5000)))
126      {
127          PRINTF_INFO("WiFi Connected"); // Log successful connection
128          return true;
129      }
130      else
131      {
132          PRINTF_ERROR("Failed to connect WiFi"); // Log connection failure
133          return false;
134      }
135  }

```

The connect_wifi() function serves to: use AT commands to make the WiFi module connect to a specified WiFi network, and determine whether the connection is successful based on the module's return result.

The function first defines a cmd character array to store the AT command to be sent, then uses snprintf() to generate the complete WiFi connection command AT+CWJAP="SSID","PASSWORD", where WIFI_SSID and WIFI_PASS are the WiFi name and password to connect to.

```

115  /* WiFi connection function */
116  static bool connect_wifi()
117  {
118      char cmd[128]; // Buffer to build AT command
119
120      // Construct AT command to join WiFi network
121      snprintf(cmd, sizeof(cmd), "AT+CWJAP=\"%s\", \"%s\"", WIFI_SSID, WIFI_PASS);
122      PRINTF_INFO("Connecting to WiFi: %s", WIFI_SSID); // Log connection attempt
123

```

Then it prints a log via PRINTF_INFO, indicating which WiFi it is attempting to connect to. Next, it calls the previously encapsulated send_at_command() function to send this AT command, with a 5-second timeout set (pdMS_TO_TICKS(5000) converts 5000 milliseconds to FreeRTOS tick units).

```

124      // Send command with 5 second timeout and return result
125      if (send_at_command(cmd, pdMS_TO_TICKS(5000)))
126      {
127          PRINTF_INFO("WiFi Connected"); // Log successful connection
128          return true;
129      }
130      else
131      {
132          PRINTF_ERROR("Failed to connect WiFi"); // Log connection failure
133          return false;
134      }
135  }

```

If the module's returned data contains "OK", send_at_command() returns true, and the function prints "WiFi Connected" and returns true to indicate successful connection; if "OK" is not returned, it prints the error log "Failed to connect WiFi" and returns false to indicate connection failure.

2.6 Task Function wifi_task()

```

137 void wifi_task(void *arg)
138 {
139     // Initialize UART communication
140     if (uart_init() != ESP_OK)
141     {
142         PRINTF_ERROR("UART init failed"); // Log UART initialization failure
143         vTaskDelete(NULL); // Delete current task if initialization fails
144         return;
145     }
146
147     // Configure module to AP+STA mode (Access Point + Station)
148     send_at_command("AT+CWMODE=3", pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
149     // Reset the module to apply settings
150     send_at_command("AT+RST", pdMS_TO_TICKS(2000));
151     vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(3000)); // Delay to allow module to restart
152
153     // Attempt to connect to WiFi, maximum 5 tries
154     bool connected = false;
155     for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
156     {
157         if (connect_wifi())
158         {
159             connected = true; // Mark as connected if successful
160             break;
161         }
162         vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(2000)); // Delay between connection attempts
163     }
164
165     if (!connected)
166     {
167         PRINTF_ERROR(TAG, "Cannot connect to WiFi, stopping task"); // Log failure after all attempts
168         vTaskDelete(NULL); // Delete task if connection failed

```

The `wifi_task()` function is a FreeRTOS task function whose main purpose is to: initialize the serial port, configure the WiFi module, connect to WiFi, and start a TCP server for network communication.

At the beginning of the function, it calls `uart_init()` to initialize serial communication. If initialization fails, it prints an error log and uses `vTaskDelete(NULL)` to delete the current task, preventing the task from continuing to run.

```

137 void wifi_task(void *arg)
138 {
139     // Initialize UART communication
140     if (uart_init() != ESP_OK)
141     {
142         PRINTF_ERROR("UART init failed"); // Log UART initialization failure
143         vTaskDelete(NULL); // Delete current task if initialization fails
144         return;
145     }
146

```

Then it uses `send_at_command("AT+CWMODE=3")` to set the WiFi module to AP+STA mode (can act as both hotspot and connect to router), then sends AT+RST to restart the module and delays 3 seconds to wait for the module to reboot.

```

147     // Configure module to AP+STA mode (Access Point + Station)
148     send_at_command("AT+CWMODE=3", pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
149     // Reset the module to apply settings
150     send_at_command("AT+RST", pdMS_TO_TICKS(2000));
151     vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(3000)); // Delay to allow module to restart
152

```

Once the module is ready, the program enters a loop of up to 5 attempts to call `connect_wifi()` to connect to the specified WiFi. Each failure waits 2 seconds before retrying. If all 5 attempts fail, it prints an error message and deletes the task; if the connection succeeds, it continues with subsequent network configuration.

```

153 // Attempt to connect to WiFi, maximum 5 tries
154 bool connected = false;
155 for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
156 {
157     if (connect_wifi())
158     {
159         connected = true; // Mark as connected if successful
160         break;
161     }
162     vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(2000)); // Delay between connection attempts
163 }
164
165 if (!connected)
166 {
167     PRINTF_ERROR(TAG, "Cannot connect to WiFi, stopping task"); // Log failure after all attempts
168     vTaskDelete(NULL); // Delete task if connection failed
169 }

```

Then the program sends AT+CIFSR to obtain the module's IP address, sends AT+CIPMUX=1 to enable multiple connection mode, and finally sends AT+CIPSERVER=1,80 to start a TCP server on port 80 (similar to a simple network service endpoint).

```

171 // Get IP address of the module
172 send_at_command("AT+CIFSR", pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
173 // Enable multiple connections mode
174 send_at_command("AT+CIPMUX=1", pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
175 // Start TCP server on port 80
176 send_at_command("AT+CIPSERVER=1,80", pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
177
178 PRINTF_INFO("Complete the Wi-Fi connection task.");

```

After completing these steps, it prints a message indicating the WiFi connection task is finished, then enters an infinite loop while(1) with a one-second delay per iteration to reduce CPU usage. This loop is typically used for subsequently reading UART data and processing requests from TCP clients.

```

179
180 while (1)
181 {
182     // TODO: Can read UART data here to process TCP requests
183     vTaskDelay(pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000)); // Delay to reduce CPU usage
184 }
185 }

```

2.7 Arduino Framework Entry Functions

```

187 void setup() {
188     // put your setup code here, to run once:
189
190     // Create WiFi task with 4096 bytes stack, priority 5
191     xTaskCreate(wifi_task, "wifi_task", 4096, NULL, 5, NULL);
192 }
193
194
195 void loop() {
196     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
197
198 }

```

This code is the entry point of the Arduino program. Its purpose is to create a FreeRTOS task to run WiFi functionality when the system starts, while the main loop() no longer executes any logic.

In the setup() function, the program calls xTaskCreate() to create a task named "wifi_task". The actual function this task runs is the wifi_task() explained earlier. It allocates 4096 bytes of stack space for this task, passes NULL as the parameter, sets task priority to 5, and the last parameter is NULL indicating no need to save the task handle.

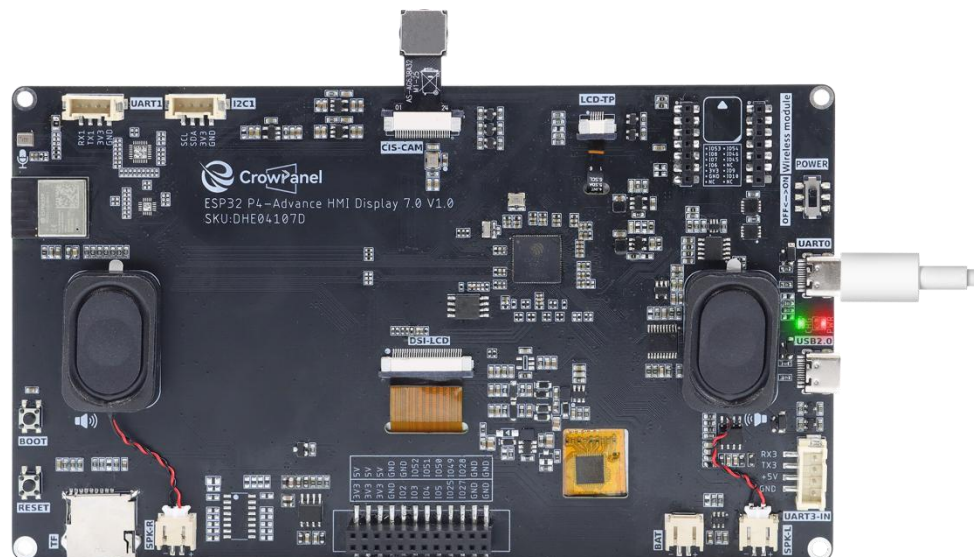
This way, after system startup, the FreeRTOS scheduler will run wifi_task, which completes UART initialization, WiFi connection, TCP server startup, and other operations.

The loop() function remains empty because when using FreeRTOS, main logic is typically placed in individual tasks rather than inside Arduino's loop() cycle.

Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



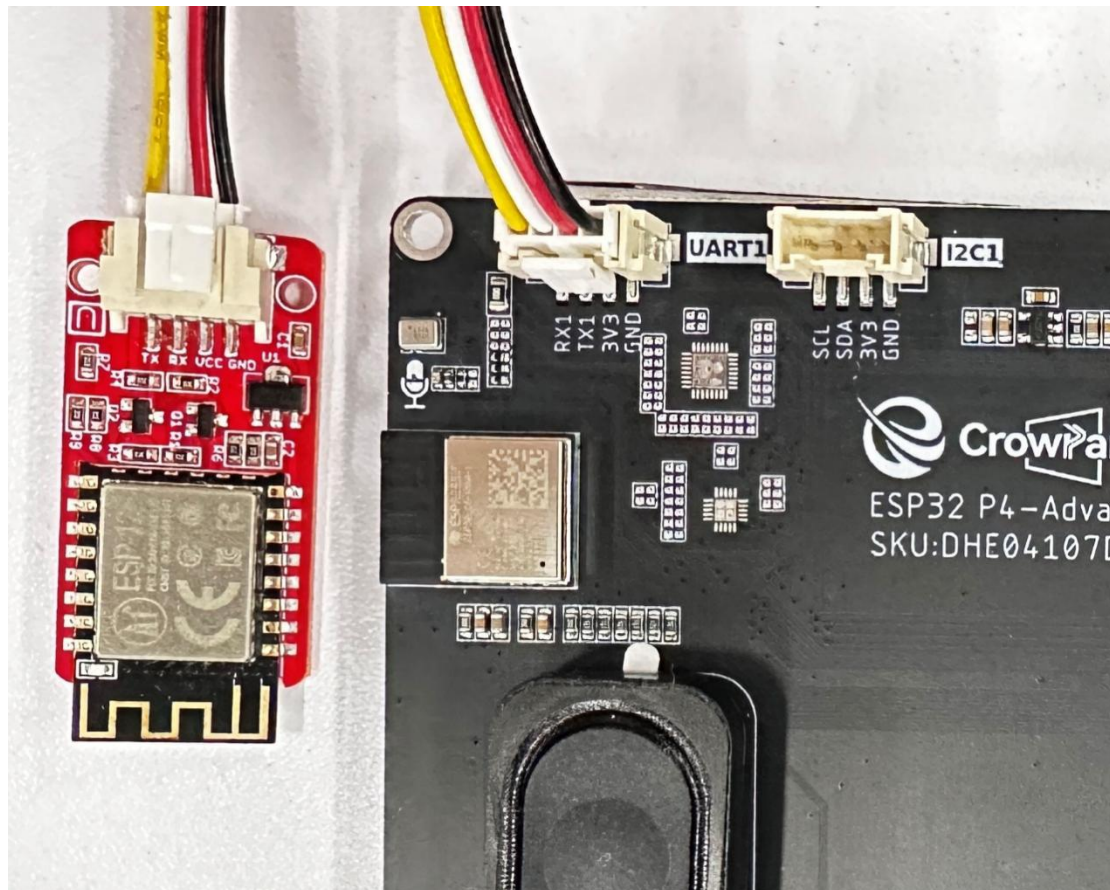
Then, connect an ESP8266 wifi module to the UART1 interface.

(Connect the VCC of UART1 interface to the VCC pin of the wifi module)

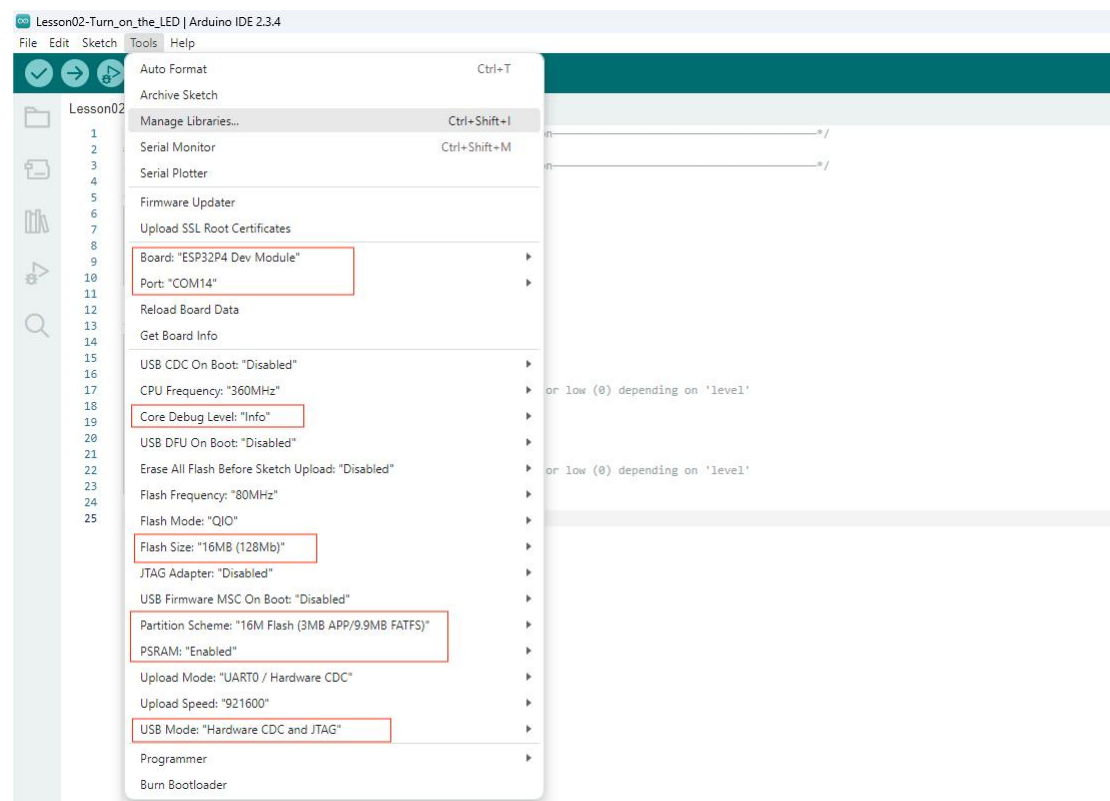
(Connect the GND of UART1 interface to the GND pin of the wifi module)

(Turn the TX of UART1 interface to the RX pin of the wifi module) (Cross connection)

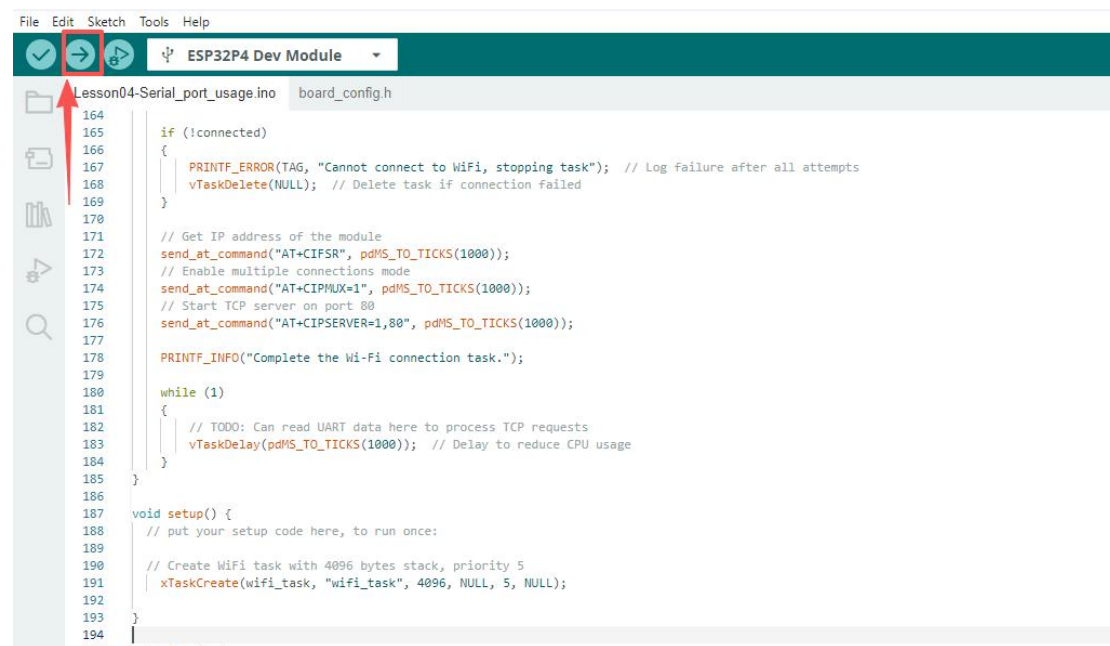
(Turn the RX of UART1 interface to the TX pin of the wifi module) (Cross connection)



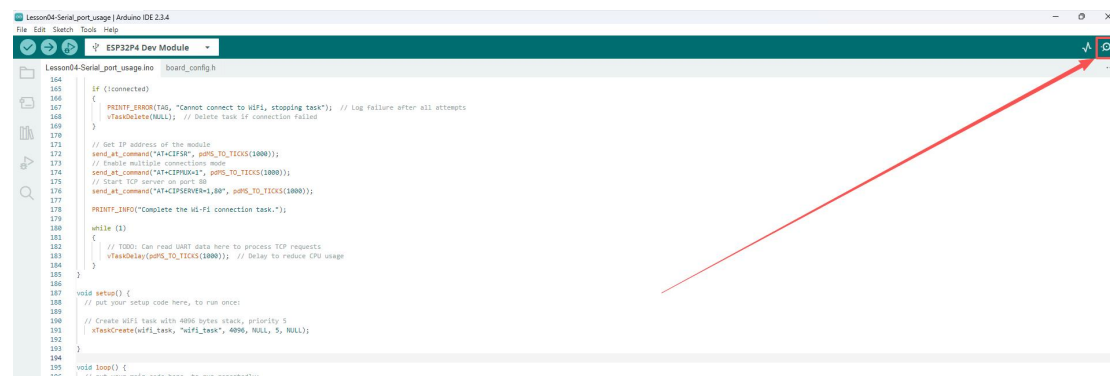
Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



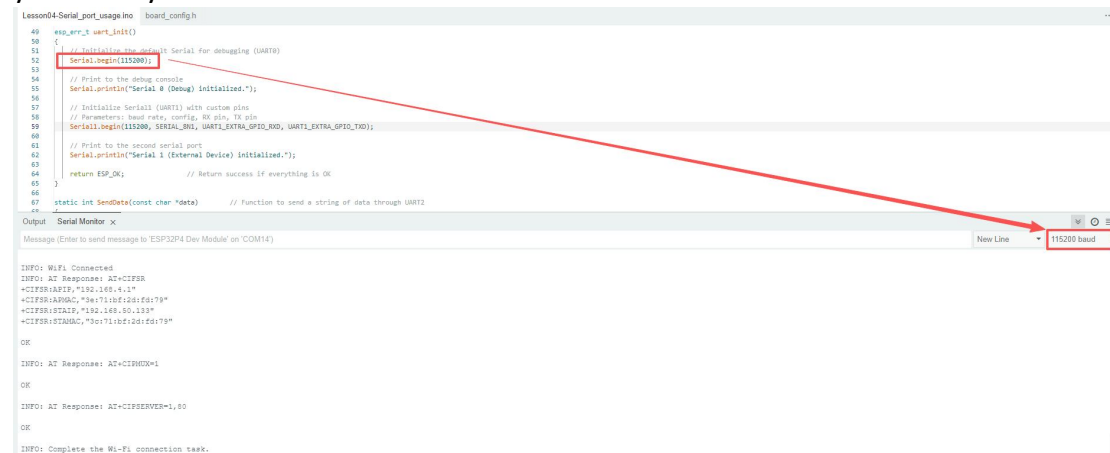
Then we compile and upload the code.



After the code upload completes, you can open the Serial Monitor built into the Arduino-IDE.



Then set the baud rate required by the serial port, keeping it consistent with what you set in your code.



This way you can see the communication with the WiFi module in progress, thereby connecting to the WiFi module.

Lesson04-Serial_port_usage | Arduino IDE 2.3.4

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

ESP32P4 Dev Module

Lesson04-Serial_port_usage.ino board_config.h

```

65 }
66
67 static int SendData(const char *data) // Function to send a string of data through UART2
68 {
69     const int len = strlen(data); // Get the length of the input string
70     const int txBytes = Serial1.write(data, len); // Write string to UART2
71     return txBytes; // Return number of bytes actually sent
72 }
73
74 /* Read UART return data */
75 static int uart_read_response(char *buffer, size_t len, TickType_t timeout)

```

Output Serial Monitor X

Message (Enter to send message to 'ESP32P4 Dev Module' on 'COM14')

```

INFO: Connecting to Wi-Fi: elecrow888
INFO: AT Response: AT+CWJAP="elecrow888","elecrow2014"
WIFI DISCONNECT
WIFI CONNECTED
WIFI GOT IP
OK

INFO: Wi-Fi Connected
INFO: AT Response: AT+CIFSR
+CIFSR:APIP,"192.168.4.1"
+CIFSR:APMAC,"9e:71:b7:2d:fd:79"
+CIFSR:STAIP,"192.168.50.133"
+CIFSR:STAMAC,"3c:71:b7:2d:fd:79"
OK

INFO: AT Response: AT+CWMUX=1
OK

INFO: AT Response: AT+CIPSERVER=1,80
OK

INFO: Complete the Wi-Fi connection task.

```

Lesson05--- Touchscreen

Introduction

In this lesson, we will learn how to use the touch screen functionality of the CrowPanel Advanced ESP32-P4 HMI AI Display. When you tap the screen, you will see the touch coordinates displayed in the Serial Monitor.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the fundamental principles of touch screens
2. How to install library files in the Arduino-IDE
3. Implement touch functionality using code

Preview of the Result

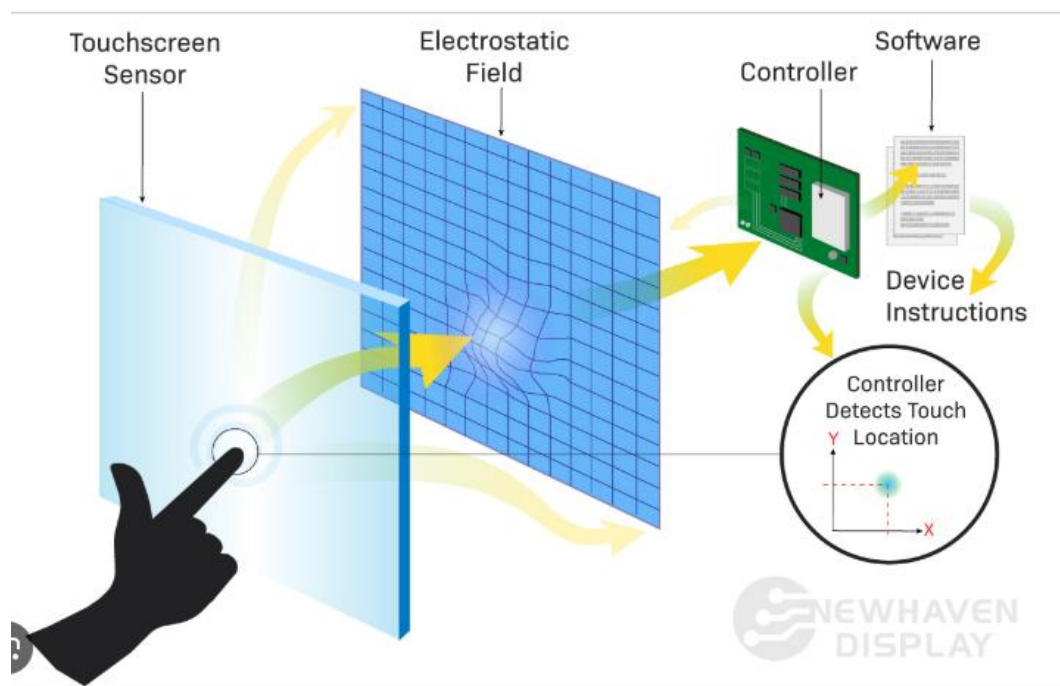
After running the code, you will be able to see the coordinates returned by the ESP32-P4 to you through the monitor on the Arduino-IDE at the moment when you touched the screen.



The touchscreen on the Advance-P4



51



First, let's look at the Touchscreen Sensor and Electrostatic Field sections. Inside the touchscreen sensor, there is a grid-like electrode structure composed of conductive layers. These electrodes interact with each other, forming a uniform electrostatic field in the screen area. When a finger touches the screen, since the human body is conductive, the finger will form a new capacitance with the conductive layer on the screen. The appearance of this capacitance will interfere with the originally uniform electrostatic field, causing a significant distortion in the distribution of the electrostatic field in the area near the touch point, and subsequently resulting in changes in the capacitance value of the electrodes in that area.

Then, we come to the core function of the Controller. The GT911 takes on this role as the controller. It continuously scans all the electrodes on the touchscreen and precisely detects the changes in the capacitance of each electrode. Based on the detected data of the different capacitances of the electrodes, the GT911 runs a specific algorithm internally, analyzing these data to calculate the X and Y coordinates of the touch point on the screen, which is the coordinate detection process illustrated in the diagram as "Controller Detects Touch Location".

After that, the GT911 sends the calculated touch point coordinate information to the connected main processor (such as an ESP32 microcontroller) according to the pre-set communication protocol (such as I2C, SPI, etc.).

Finally, the main processor receives the coordinate data and further processes and parses these data using software.

At the same time, in combination with the "Device Instructions" (device instruction logic), the software maps and correlates the touch coordinates with specific elements in the device interface (such as buttons, sliders, etc.). Thus, when the user touches the screen, the device can accurately identify whether it is clicking a button, sliding the screen, or other operations, and make corresponding interaction responses, thereby achieving smooth touch interaction functionality.

Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

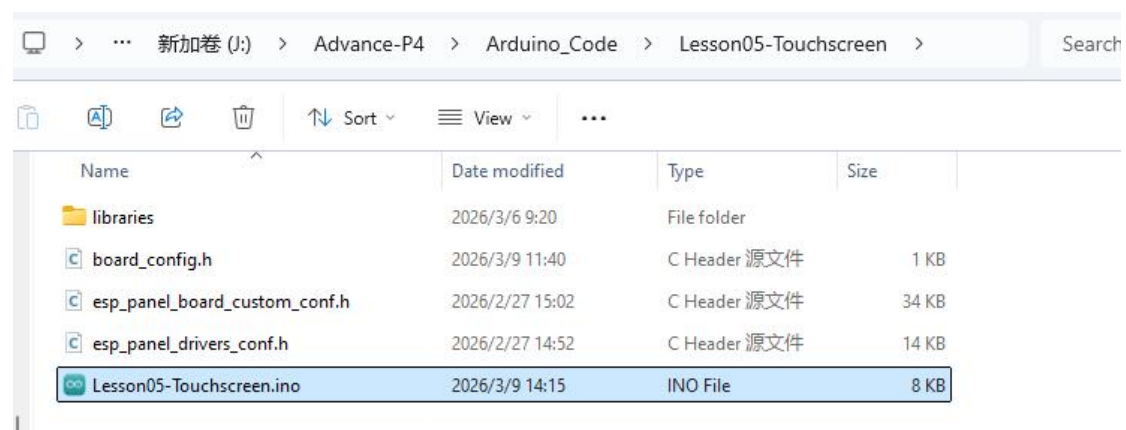
(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson05-Touchscreen

Key Explanations

How can we make the touch screen coordinates accurate, so that wherever you tap, it displays the coordinates of that exact location on the screen? Let's dive into how the code achieves this together.

Double-click to open this lesson's code (the .ino file).



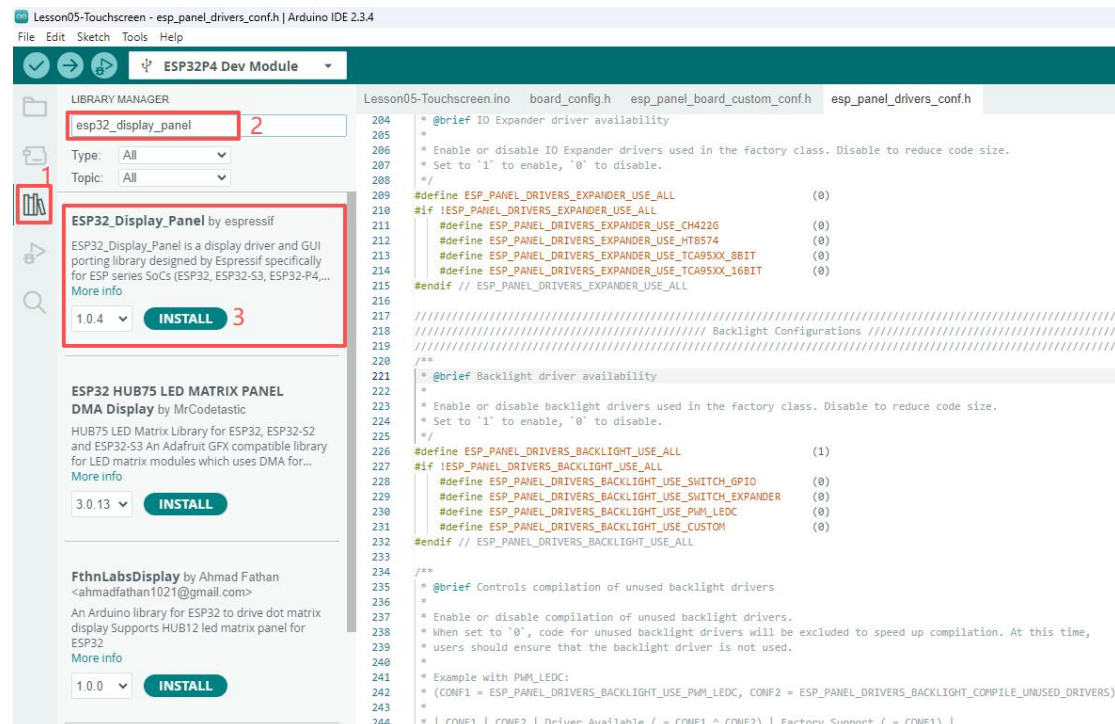
After opening, you can see the project's code, configuration file board_config.h, and other related screen driver files. Let's understand the project architecture for this lesson.

Among them:

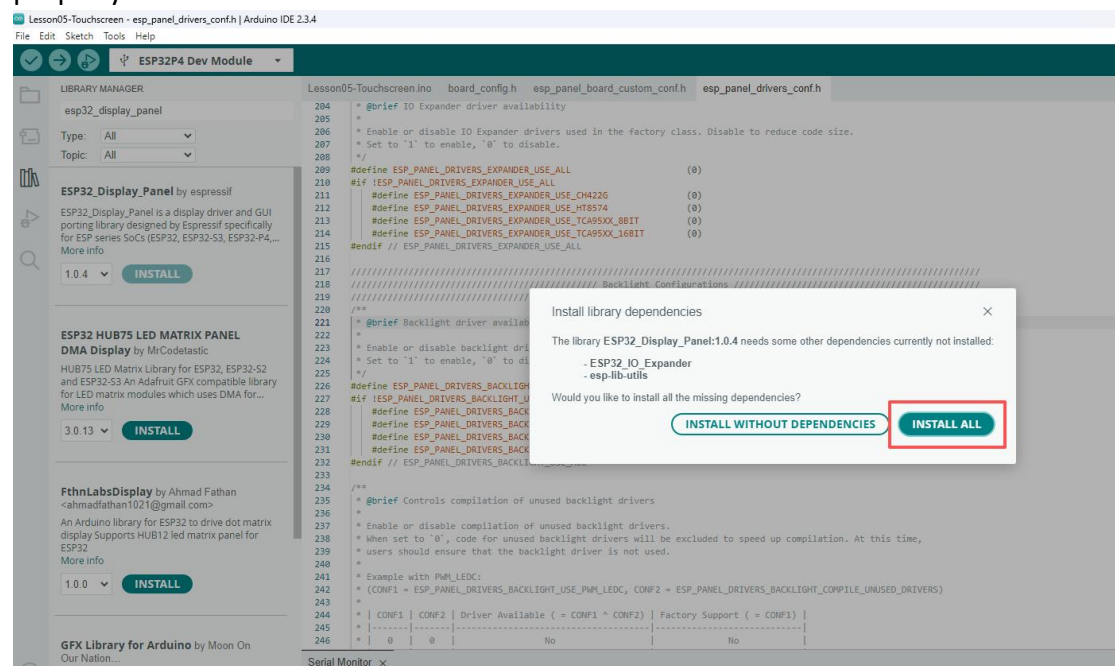
The libraries folder:

It contains three files: ESP32_Display_Panel, ESP32_IO_Expander, and esp-lib-utils. Where do these three files come from?

Search for esp32_display_panel in the Library Manager, select version 1.0.4 and install it.



It will prompt you whether to install the related dependencies for ESP32_Display_Panel. We select Install All, as we need these dependencies to use it properly.



Installation completed successfully.

Lesson05-Touchscreen - esp_panel_drivers_conf.h | Arduino IDE 2.3.4

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

ESP32P4 Dev Module

LIBRARY MANAGER

esp32_display_panel

Type: All

Topic: All

ESP32_Display_Panel by espressif

1.0.4 installed

ESP32_Display_Panel is a display driver and GUI porting library designed by Espressif specifically for ESP series SoCs (ESP32, ESP32-S3, ESP32-P4,...

More info

1.0.4 REMOVE

ESP32 HUB75 LED MATRIX PANEL DMA Display by MrCodestatic

HUB75 LED Matrix Library for ESP32, ESP32-S2 and ESP32-S3 An Adafruit GFX compatible library for LED matrix modules which uses DMA for...

More info

3.0.13 INSTALL

FthnLabsDisplay by Ahmad Fathan <ahmadfathan1021@gmail.com>

An Arduino library for ESP32 to drive dot matrix display Supports HUB12 led matrix panel for ESP32

More info

1.0.0 INSTALL

GFX Library for Arduino by Moon On Our Nation...

Lesson05-Touchscreen.ino board_config.h esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h esp_panel_drivers_conf.h

```

204 * @brief IO Expander driver availability
205 *
206 * Enable or disable IO Expander drivers used in the factory class. Disable to reduce code size.
207 * Set to '1' to enable, '0' to disable.
208 */
209 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_ALL (0)
210 #if !ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_ALL
211 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_CH4226 (0)
212 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_HT8574 (0)
213 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_TCA95XX_8BIT (0)
214 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_TCA95XX_16BIT (0)
215 #endif // ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_ALL
216
217 /////////////////////////////////////////////////// Backlight Configurations ///////////////////////////////////
218 ///////////////////////////////////////////////////
219
220 /**
221 * @brief Backlight driver availability
222 *
223 * Enable or disable backlight drivers used in the factory class. Disable to reduce code size.
224 * Set to '1' to enable, '0' to disable.
225 */
226 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_ALL (1)
227 #if !ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_ALL
228 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_SWITCH_GPIO (0)
229 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_SWITCH_EXPANDER (0)
230 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_PWM_LEDC (0)
231 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_CUSTOM (0)

```

Serial Monitor Output

```

Downloading esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
Installing esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
Installed esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
Downloading ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
Installing ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
Installed ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
Downloading ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1
ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1
Installing ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1
Installed ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1

```

You can also see the installed libraries in the left sidebar.

Lesson05-Touchscreen - esp_panel_drivers_conf.h | Arduino IDE 2.3.4

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

ESP32P4 Dev Module

LIBRARY MANAGER

esp

Type: Installed

Topic: All

ESP32_Display_Panel by espressif

1.0.4 installed

ESP32_Display_Panel is a display driver and GUI porting library designed by Espressif specifically for ESP series SoCs (ESP32, ESP32-S3, ESP32-P4, etc.)...

More info

1.0.4 REMOVE

ESP32_IO_Expander by espressif

1.1.1 installed

ESP32_IO_Expander is a library designed for driving IO expander chips using ESP SoCs Currently support TCA95xx(8bit), TCA95xx(16bit), HT8574,...

More info

1.1.1 REMOVE

esp-lib-utils by espressif

0.2.3 installed

esp-lib-utils is a library designed for ESP SoCs to provide utility functions, including logging, checking, and memory.

More info

0.2.3 UPDATE

Lesson05-Touchscreen.ino board_config.h esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h esp_panel_drivers_conf.h

```

204 * @brief IO Expander driver availability
205 *
206 * Enable or disable IO Expander drivers used in the factory class. Disable to reduce code size.
207 * Set to '1' to enable, '0' to disable.
208 */
209 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_ALL (0)
210 #if !ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_ALL
211 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_CH4226 (0)
212 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_HT8574 (0)
213 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_TCA95XX_8BIT (0)
214 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_TCA95XX_16BIT (0)
215 #endif // ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_EXPANDER_USE_ALL
216
217 /////////////////////////////////////////////////// Backlight Configurations ///////////////////////////////////
218 ///////////////////////////////////////////////////
219
220 /**
221 * @brief Backlight driver availability
222 *
223 * Enable or disable backlight drivers used in the factory class. Disable to reduce code size.
224 * Set to '1' to enable, '0' to disable.
225 */
226 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_ALL (1)
227 #if !ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_ALL
228 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_SWITCH_GPIO (0)
229 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_SWITCH_EXPANDER (0)
230 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_PWM_LEDC (0)
231 #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BACKLIGHT_USE_CUSTOM (0)

```

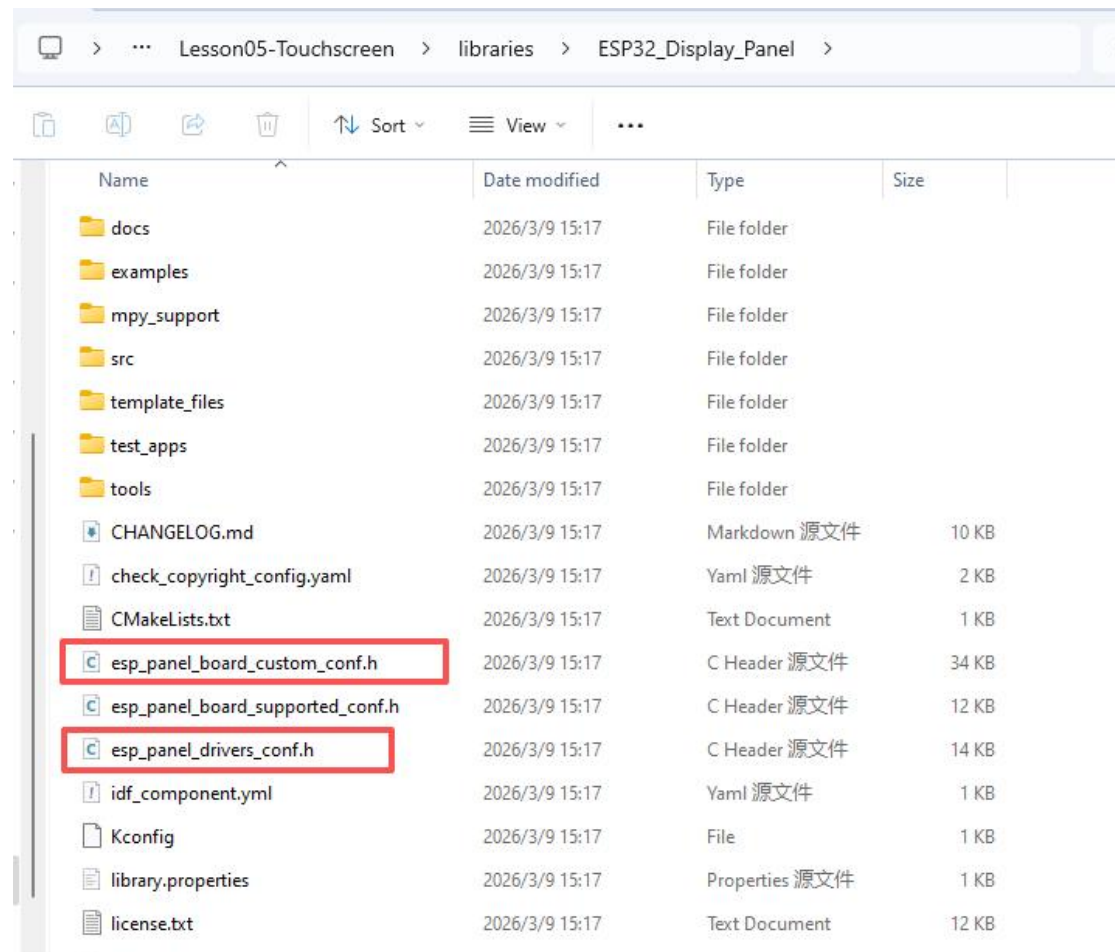
Serial Monitor Output

```

Downloading esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
Installing esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
Installed esp-lib-utils@0.2.3
Downloading ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
Installing ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
Installed ESP32_Display_Panel@1.0.4
Downloading ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1
ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1
Installing ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1
Installed ESP32_IO_Expander@1.1.1

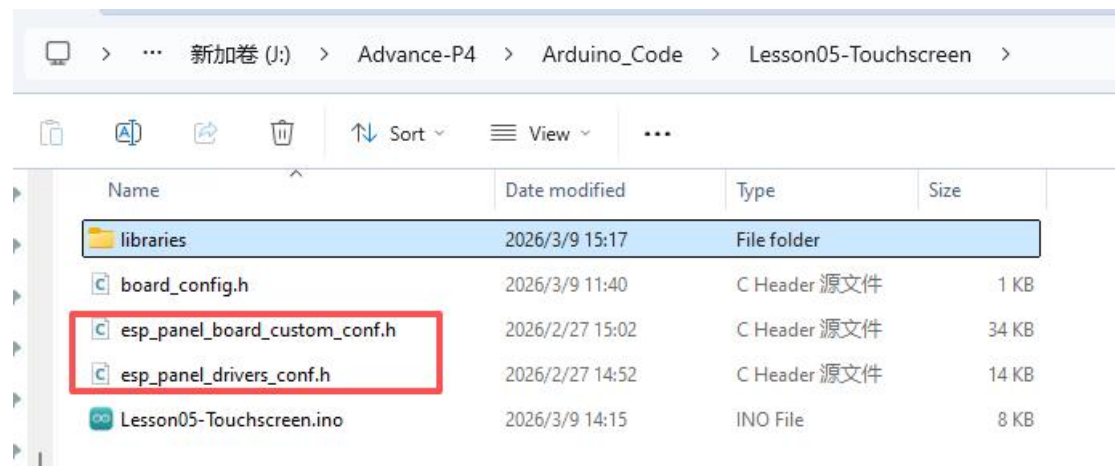
```

After downloading, we open the ESP32_Display_Panel library and copy out the esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h and esp_panel_drivers_conf.h files.



Name	Date modified	Type	Size
docs	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
examples	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
mpy_support	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
src	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
template_files	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
test_apps	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
tools	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
CHANGELOG.md	2026/3/9 15:17	Markdown 源文件	10 KB
check_copyright_config.yaml	2026/3/9 15:17	Yaml 源文件	2 KB
CMakeLists.txt	2026/3/9 15:17	Text Document	1 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/9 15:17	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_board_supported_conf.h	2026/3/9 15:17	C Header 源文件	12 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/3/9 15:17	C Header 源文件	14 KB
idf_component.yml	2026/3/9 15:17	Yaml 源文件	1 KB
Kconfig	2026/3/9 15:17	File	1 KB
library.properties	2026/3/9 15:17	Properties 源文件	1 KB
license.txt	2026/3/9 15:17	Text Document	12 KB

Paste them in the same directory path as the .ino file.



Name	Date modified	Type	Size
libraries	2026/3/9 15:17	File folder	
board_config.h	2026/3/9 11:40	C Header 源文件	1 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/2/27 15:02	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
Lesson05-Touchscreen.ino	2026/3/9 14:15	INO File	8 KB

Then modify the parameters and configurations within them to adapt to our own product, the CrowPanel Advanced ESP32-P4 HMI AI Display.

(Note: You do not need to modify the esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h and esp_panel_drivers_conf.h files; we have already configured them for you, so you can use them directly.)

This code serves to include various header files required for program operation, providing foundational support for subsequent screen display, touch reading, power management, and log debugging functionalities.

Among them, `"#include "board_config.h"` is used to load the development board's pin configuration and hardware definitions; `"#include <Arduino.h>"` is the Arduino core library, providing Arduino APIs such as `Serial`, `delay()`, `setup()`, `loop()`, etc., so it is usually placed first to ensure the compiler correctly recognizes these functions.

Next, `string.h` provides C language string processing functions (such as `strlen`, `strcpy`, etc.), `esp_log.h` and `esp_err.h` are logging and error code libraries from the ESP-IDF framework, used for printing debug information and determining whether function execution was successful.

esp_ldo_regulator.h is a power management library specific to the ESP32-P4, used to control the chip's internal LDO voltage regulator, thereby providing appropriate voltage for the screen interface or touch circuit.

The last three files, `esp_panel_drivers_conf.h`, `esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h`, and `ESP_Panel_Library.h`, belong to the ESP32 Display Panel Library related configurations and driver interfaces. They are used to specify the display driver chip used (such as EK79007), touch chip (such as GT911), and the panel's hardware configuration, and provide unified APIs to initialize the screen, control display, and read touch data.

2. Macro Definitions

[illegible]

This code mainly defines a set of macros for serial port log output, aiming to unify the program's debug information printing method, making the code more

standardized and clear during debugging.

The first three, `PRINTF_ORIGINAL`, `PRINTF_PRINT`, and `PRINTF_LN`, are simple wrappers for Arduino serial functions `Serial.printf()`, `Serial.print()`, and `Serial.println()`, used for directly outputting strings or formatted content.

The following `PRINTF_ERROR`, `PRINTF_WARN`, `PRINTF_INFO`, and `PRINTF_DEBUG` automatically add different log level prefixes (such as "ERROR", "WARN", "INFO", "DEBUG") when printing information, allowing quick distinction between error messages, warning messages, general information, or debug information in the serial monitor. For example, when calling `PRINTF_INFO("WiFi Connected")`, the serial port outputs `INFO: WiFi Connected`.

These macros internally use `Serial.print` and `Serial.printf` combined to output content, and manually add `\r\n` at the end to achieve line breaks. At the same time, the `do { ... } while(0)` syntax encapsulates multiple statements into a single entity, making the macro syntactically look like an ordinary function call and avoiding logical errors when used in if statements and similar constructs.

3. Variable Definitions

```
54 // Touch panel resolution
55 #define V_size 600 // Vertical resolution (Y-axis)
56 #define H_size 1024 // Horizontal resolution (X-axis)
57 /*
58 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | GLOBAL VARIABLES
59 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | */
60 static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP"; // Tag for logging messages
61
62 // --- Declare the panel pointer globally ---|
63 ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;
64 /*
65 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | SIMPTAM PROTOTYPES
66 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | */
67 */
```

This code mainly completes the definition of touch screen resolution and the declaration of global variables, providing basic parameters and control objects for subsequent display and touch functionality.

First, through macro definitions `"#define V_size 600"` and `"#define H_size 1024"`, the touch screen resolution is specified, where `V_size` represents the vertical direction (Y-axis) resolution of 600 pixels, and `H_size` represents the horizontal direction (X-axis) resolution of 1024 pixels. This corresponds to the actual display resolution of 1024×600 , and can serve as a reference size for subsequent touch coordinate processing or interface layout.

Next, `"static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP";"` is defined. This is a log tag string, typically used to identify the current module source when printing log information, for example indicating that the log comes from the touch application module, making it convenient to quickly locate issues during debugging.

The last line "ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;" declares an ESP_Panel type pointer variable and initializes it to nullptr (indicating it currently points to no object). This pointer will point to an ESP_Panel object during program runtime, used to uniformly manage the display screen and touch device, such as initializing the screen, reading touch data, and other operations. Since it is defined as a global variable, this panel control object can be directly accessed in setup(), loop(), or other functions.

4. setup Section

The purpose of this setup() function code is to complete serial port debugging initialization, power configuration, and display and touch panel initialization when the system starts up, enabling the entire display and touch system to work properly.

```
Lesson05-Touchscreen.ino  board_config.h  esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h  esp_panel_drivers_conf.h
//
72 void setup() {
73   // put your setup code here, to run once:
74
75   // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
76   Serial.begin(115200);
77
78   // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
79   // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
80   // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
81   esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
82   esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
83   esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
84     .chan_id = 3,      // LDO Channel 3
85     .voltage_mv = 2500, // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
86   };
87
88   Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
89   err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
90   if (err != ESP_OK) {
91     Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
92   } else {
93     Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
94   }
95
96   // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
97   esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
98   esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
99     .chan_id = 4,      // LDO Channel 4
100    .voltage_mv = 3300, // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
101  };
102
103  Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
104  err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
105  if (err != ESP_OK) {
106    Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
107  } else {
108    Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
109  }
110
111  // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
112  panel = new ESP_Panel();
113
```

First, serial communication is started via "Serial.begin(115200)" for outputting debug information. Then the program configures the ESP32-P4's internal LDO voltage regulator power supply: it first creates an "ldo3_cfg" structure and sets "chan_id = 3", "voltage_mv = 2500", then calls "esp_ldo_acquire_channel()" to enable LDO3 and output 2.5V voltage.

This is the operating voltage required for MIPI D-PHY (used for the MIPI-DSI display interface); if enabling fails, it prints error information via "esp_err_to_name()". Subsequently, LDO4 is configured to output 3.3V, which is typically used as the pull-up power supply for the I2C bus or touch chip (such as GT911).

```

72 void setup() {
73     // put your setup code here, to run once:
74
75     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
76     Serial.begin(115200);
77
78     // --- Power Configuration (LD03 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
79     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
80     // LD03 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
81     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
82     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
83     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
84         .chan_id = 3,          // LDO Channel 3
85         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
86     };
87
88     Serial.println("Initializing LD03 to 2.5V...");
89     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
90     if (err != ESP_OK) {
91         Serial.printf("LD03 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
92     } else {
93         Serial.println("LD03 Power enabled successfully.");
94     }
95
96     // --- Power Configuration (LD04 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
97     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
98     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
99         .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
100        .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
101    };
102
103    Serial.println("Initializing LD04 to 3.3V...");
104    err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
105    if (err != ESP_OK) {
106        Serial.printf("LD04 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
107    } else {
108        Serial.println("LD04 Power enabled successfully.");
109    }
110 }

```

After power configuration is complete, the program creates a display panel control object via "panel = new ESP_Panel();", then calls "panel->init()" to initialize the MIPI-DSI bus as well as the screen driver EK79007 and touch chip GT911 (specific configurations are determined by the configuration files in the library); if initialization fails, the program enters an infinite loop and stops running.

```

111 // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
112 panel = new ESP_Panel();
113
114 // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
115 // The library uses settings from ESP_Panel_Conf.h internally
116 Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
117 if (!panel->init()) {
118     Serial.println("Panel Initialization Failed!");
119     while (1) delay(100);
120 }

```

Then "panel->begin()" is called to start the display panel, including executing the screen startup sequence and turning on the backlight; if this fails, the program also stops. Finally, it prints "Display and Touch system online," indicating that the display and touch system have been successfully initialized and are ready for normal use.

```

122 // Begin the panel (Startup sequences and backlight)
123 if (!panel->begin()) {
124     Serial.println("Panel Start Failed!");
125     while (1) delay(100);
126 }
127
128 Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
129
130

```

5. loop Section

The purpose of this loop() function code is to continuously read touch data from the touch screen during program operation, and print the touch point coordinates and touch strength information via the serial port.

```

131 void loop() {
132     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
133
134     // --- Process Touch Inputs ---
135     auto touch = panel->getTouch();
136
137     if (touch != nullptr) {
138         // --- Read data from the hardware ---
139         // Use the correct struct name: ESP_PanelTouchPoint
140         ESP_PanelTouchPoint point[10]; // save 10 points
141
142         // --- Check the number of touch points ---
143         int point_num = touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0); // readPoints() ==> readRawData() + getPoints()
144
145         for (int i=0; i<point_num; i++) {
146             // Print the coordinates to Serial
147             Serial.printf("Touch point[%d]: x %4d, y %3d, strength %d\n", i, point[i].x, point[i].y, point[i].strength);
148         }
149
150         if (!touch->isInterruptEnabled()) {
151             delay(20); // Small delay to maintain stability
152         }
153     } else {
154         Serial.println("IDLE loop");
155         delay(1000);
156     }
157 }

```

The program first obtains the current panel's touch control object via "panel->getTouch()" and stores it in the touch variable.

If this object is not null (indicating the touch device has been successfully initialized), the program creates an "ESP_PanelTouchPoint point[10]" array to store touch data. Here it can store up to 10 touch points, because touch chips like GT911 support multi-touch.

```

131 void loop() {
132     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
133
134     // --- Process Touch Inputs ---
135     auto touch = panel->getTouch();
136
137     if (touch != nullptr) {
138         // --- Read data from the hardware ---
139         // Use the correct struct name: ESP_PanelTouchPoint
140         ESP_PanelTouchPoint point[10]; // save 10 points
141

```

Then "touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0)" is called to read data from the touch hardware. This function reads raw touch data and parses it into coordinate information, returning the number of touch points currently detected as "point_num".

The program then iterates through each touch point using a for loop, and uses "Serial.printf()" to print the X coordinate, Y coordinate, and touch strength of that touch point, allowing you to see the touch position in real-time in the Serial Monitor.

```

142 | // --- Check the number of touch points ---
143 | int point_num = touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0); // readPoints() ==> readRawData() + getPoints()
144 |
145 | for (int i=0; i<point_num; i++) {
146 |     // Print the coordinates to Serial
147 |     Serial.printf("Touch point[%d]: x %4d, y %3d, strength %d\n", i, point[i].x, point[i].y, point[i].strength);
148 | }
149 |

```

If the touch controller does not have interrupt mode enabled (`isInterruptEnabled()` returns false), the program executes `delay(20)` for a brief pause to reduce read frequency and maintain system stability. If the touch object is null (indicating the touch device was not properly initialized or does not exist), the program prints "IDLE loop" once per second to indicate that no touch device is currently working.

```

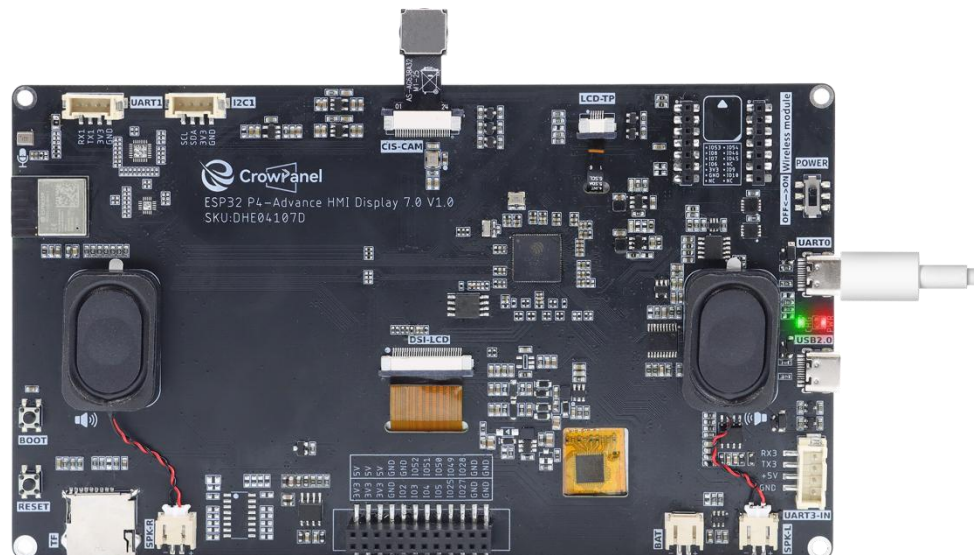
150 |     if (!touch->isInterruptEnabled()) {
151 |         delay(20); // Small delay to maintain stability
152 |     }
153 | } else {
154 |     Serial.println("IDLE loop");
155 |     delay(1000);
156 | }
157 | }
158 |

```

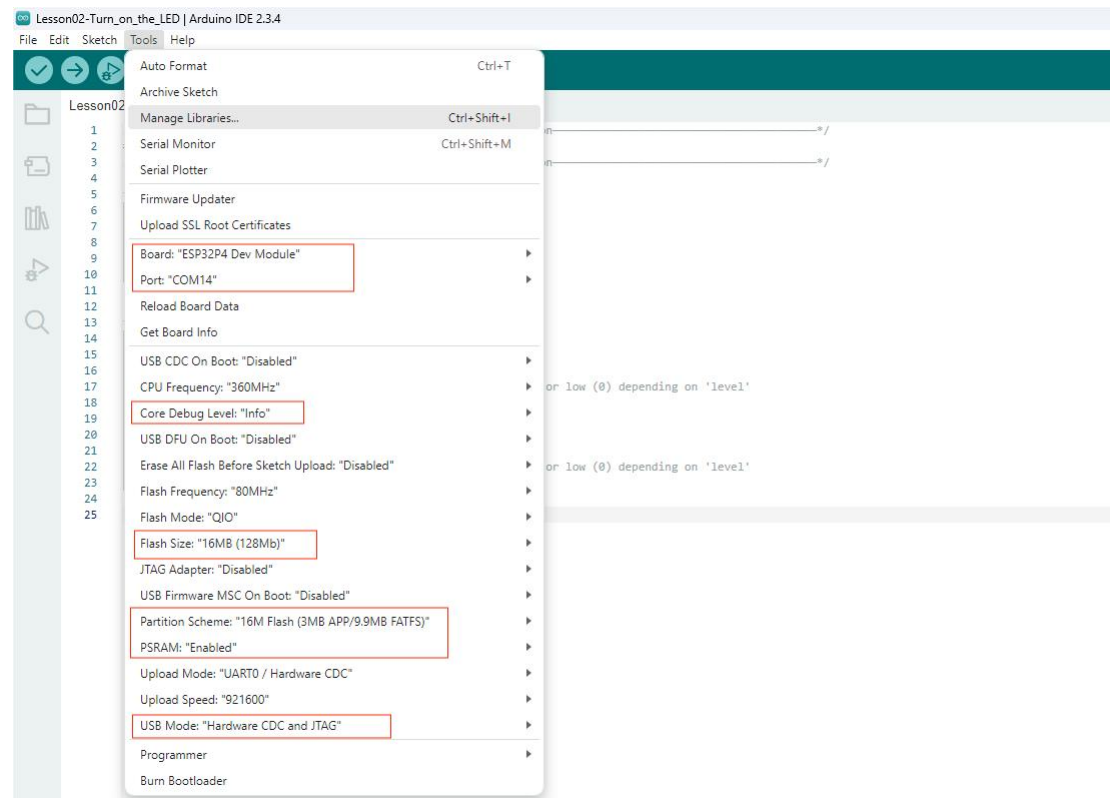
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

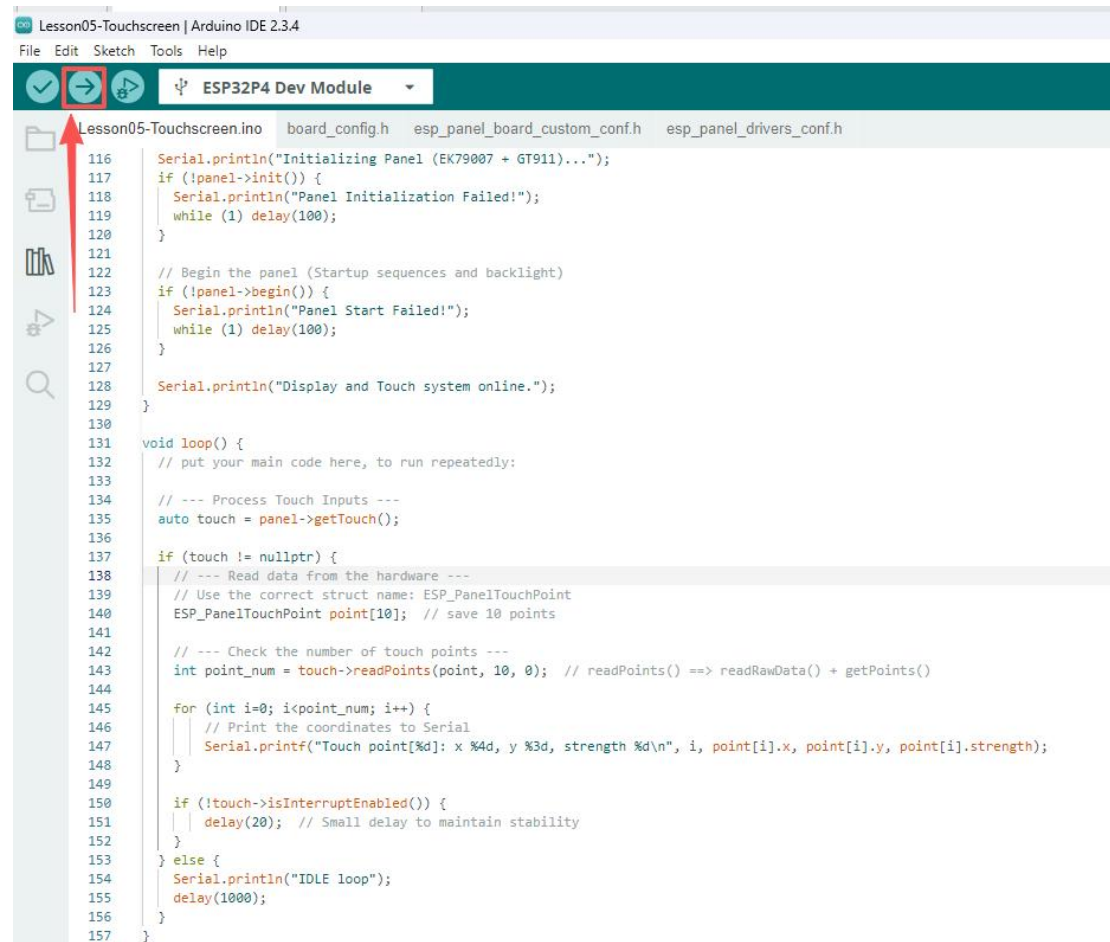
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



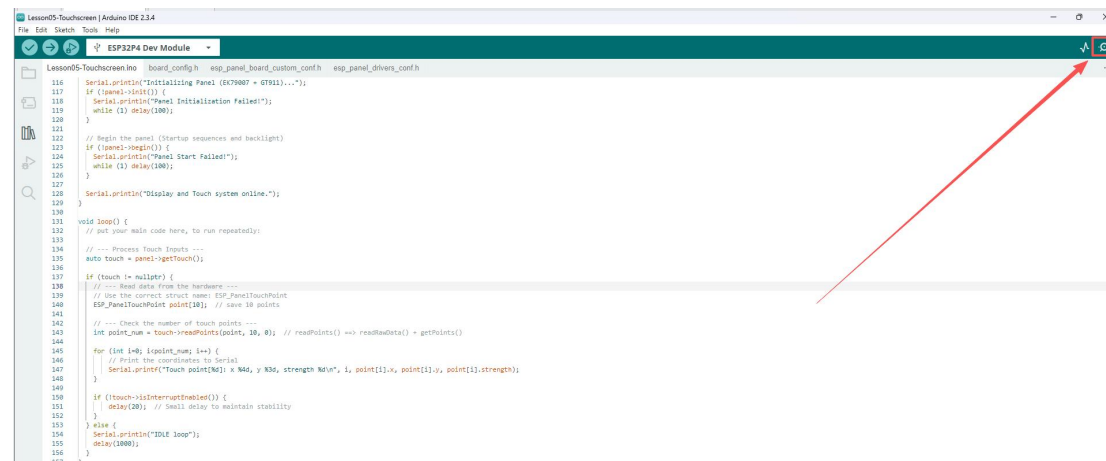
Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



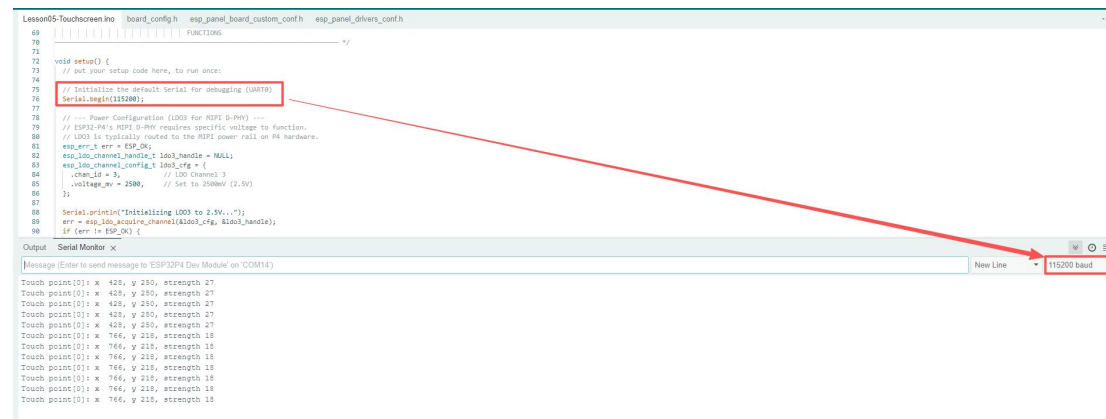
Then we compile and upload the code.



After the code upload completes, you can open the Serial Monitor built into the Arduino-IDE.



Then set the baud rate required by the serial port, keeping it consistent with what you set in your code.



Next, when you touch the screen, you will be able to see the relevant coordinate information printed in the Serial Monitor.



Lesson06---USB2.0

Introduction

In this lesson, we will build upon what we learned in the previous lesson. Before studying this lesson, please ensure you have understood how the touch functionality was implemented in the previous lesson. This will be very helpful for learning this lesson.

This will enable us to use the USB2.0 interface on the Advance-P4 as a mouse. When you swipe on the Advance-P4 screen, you will find that the mouse on your computer moves accordingly.

Learning Goals

1. Understand USB2.0
2. Implement USB2.0 functionality based on the touch functionality from the previous lesson

Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to see that when you slide the screen on the Advance-P4, the mouse on your computer also moves accordingly, and at the same time, you can see the relevant coordinates printed on the monitor.



Lesson06-USB2.0 | Arduino IDE 2.3.4

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

ESP32P4 Dev Module

Lesson06-USB2.0.ino board_config.h esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h esp_panel_drivers_conf.h

```

141 }
142
143 void loop() {
144     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
145
146     // --- Process Touch Inputs ---
147     auto touch = panel->getTouch();
148
149     if (touch != nullptr) {
150         // --- Read data from the hardware ---
151         // Use the correct struct name: ESP_PanelTouchPoint
152         ESP_PanelTouchPoint point[10]; // save 10 points
153
154         // --- Check the number of touch points ---
155         int point_num = touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0); // readPoints() ==> readRawData() + getPoints()
156         for (int i=0; i<point_num; i++) {
157             // Print the coordinates to Serial
158             Serial.printf("Touch point[%d]: x %4d, y %3d, strength %d\r\n", i, point[i].x, point[i].y, point[i].strength);
159         }
160
161         static int prev_x = -1;
162         static int prev_y = -1;
163         if (0 < point_num) {
164             // Calculate the movement distance based on the button states
165         }
166     }
167 }

```

Output Serial Monitor x

Message (Enter to send message to 'ESP32P4 Dev Module' on 'COM14')

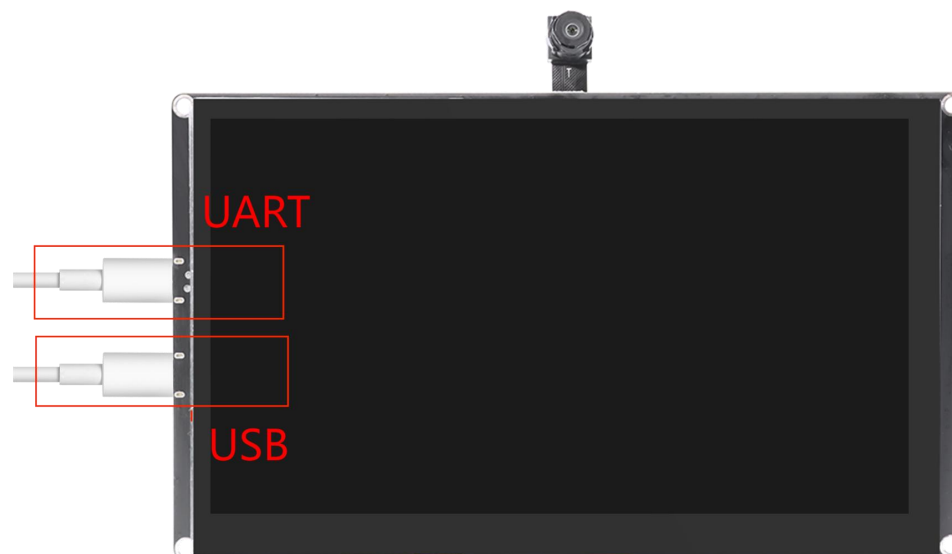
```

Mouse.move: x = -2, y = -2
Touch point[0]: x 271, y 312, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -10, y = -7
Touch point[0]: x 261, y 305, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -10, y = -7
Touch point[0]: x 252, y 298, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -9, y = -7
Touch point[0]: x 245, y 293, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -7, y = -5
Touch point[0]: x 239, y 289, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -6, y = -4
Touch point[0]: x 235, y 285, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -4, y = -4
Touch point[0]: x 234, y 284, strength 9
Mouse.move: x = -1, y = -1

```

Hardware Used in This Lesson

USB 2.0 on the Advance-P4



Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

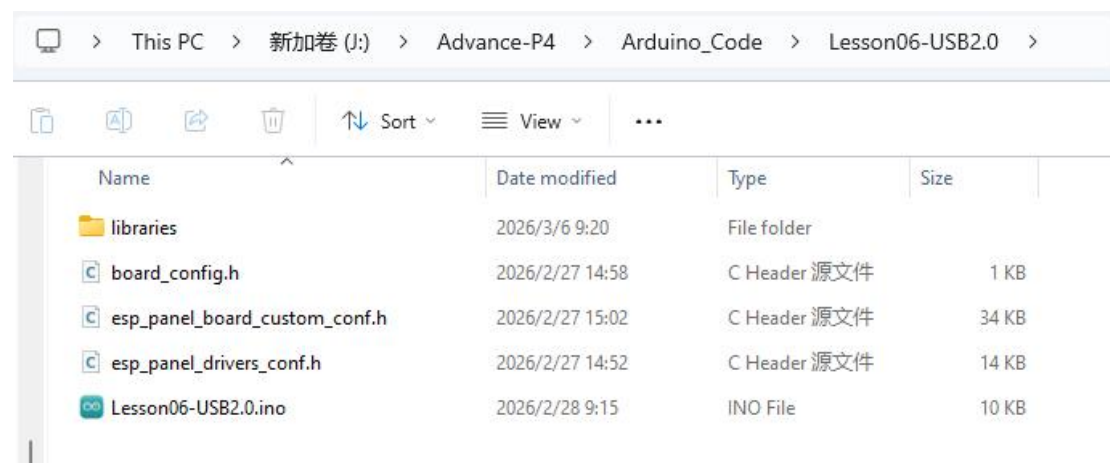
(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson06-USB2.0

Key Explanations

Building on the touch screen knowledge from the previous lesson, let's now understand how to connect touch screen input to USB2.0, thereby controlling the mouse on the PC side via USB2.0.

Double-click to open this lesson's code (the .ino file).



After opening, you can see the project's code, configuration file board_config.h, and other related screen driver files.

The meanings of these files were explained in detail in the previous lesson.

Next, let's understand how the USB2.0 functionality is implemented in the code.

This program actually does something quite interesting: it turns the ESP32-P4's touch screen into a USB mouse touchpad for the computer.

When you slide your finger on the screen, the ESP32 reads the touch coordinates, calculates the finger movement distance, and sends it to the computer via the USB HID protocol. The computer then interprets this as mouse movement.

1. Header Files

```

11  /*
12  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | INCLUDES
13  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | */
14  #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15  #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17  #include <string.h>        // C string lib
18  #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
19  #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
20  #include <esp_ldo_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22  #include "USB.h"
23  #include "USBHIDMouse.h"
24
25  #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
26  #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
27  #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
28

```

(The functions of other library files were explained in detail in the previous lesson.)

The purpose of these two lines of code is to enable the ESP32 with USB HID mouse device functionality.

USB.h is the core library of the ESP32 USB device framework, used to initialize and manage the USB interface, allowing the chip to communicate with the computer via USB.

USBHIDMouse.h is a HID (Human Interface Device) mouse class library built on top of the USB framework. It encapsulates common mouse operation interfaces, such as Mouse.move() (move mouse pointer), Mouse.press() (press mouse button), Mouse.release() (release button), and Mouse.isPressed() (check button status), etc.

After the program runs and calls USB.begin() and Mouse.begin(), the ESP32 will be recognized on the computer side as a standard USB mouse device. Subsequently, the program only needs to call these functions to send HID reports such as mouse movement, clicks, and scrolling to the computer, thereby achieving control of the computer cursor like a real mouse (for example, in this program, mouse movement is controlled through touch screen coordinate changes).

2. Variable Definitions

```

57  // Touch panel resolution
58  #define V_size 600      // Vertical resolution (Y-axis)
59  #define H_size 1024     // Horizontal resolution (X-axis)
60
61  /*
62  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | GLOBAL VARIABLES
63  | | | | | | | | | | | | | | */
64
65  static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP"; // Tag for logging messages
66
67  // --- Declare the panel pointer globally ---
68  ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;
69
70  // Create a mouse object
71  // Mouse instance to control cursor and buttons
72  USBHIDMouse Mouse;

```

This code mainly completes the definition of touch screen resolution and the

declaration of global objects, preparing for subsequent touch reading, log debugging, and USB mouse control.

First, through "#define V_size 600" and "#define H_size 1024", the touch screen resolution is defined, where V_size represents the vertical direction (Y-axis) resolution of 600 pixels, and H_size represents the horizontal direction (X-axis) resolution of 1024 pixels. These macro constants are typically used for coordinate calculation, boundary judgment, or coordinate mapping.

Next, "static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP";" defines a log tag string TAG, which can be used to identify the log source module when using the ESP-IDF logging system (such as ESP_LOGI, ESP_LOGE), making it convenient to distinguish output from different functional modules during debugging.

Then, "ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;" declares an ESP_Panel class pointer variable and initializes it to a null pointer. It is used to create and manage the display screen and touch controller (such as MIPI-DSI screen and GT911 touch chip) during program runtime. Since it is defined as a global variable, this panel object can be accessed in functions such as setup() and loop().

Finally, "USBHIDMouse Mouse;" creates a USB HID mouse object instance. This object encapsulates the operation interfaces of the mouse device. The program can send mouse movement, click, and other commands to the computer through it, such as Mouse.move() to control cursor movement, Mouse.press() and Mouse.release() to control mouse buttons, thereby achieving the function of operating the computer mouse using the touch screen.

3. setup Section

The setup() function code mainly completes system initialization, power configuration, USB mouse function startup, and display and touch screen hardware initialization. It only executes once when the device starts up.

First, serial communication is initialized via Serial.begin(115200) for debugging information output. Then Mouse.begin() and USB.begin() are called to start the USB HID mouse function and USB device protocol, enabling the ESP32 to be recognized as a USB mouse device when connected to a computer.

```
79 void setup() {  
80     // put your setup code here, to run once:  
81  
82     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)  
83     Serial.begin(115200);  
84  
85     // initialize mouse control:  
86     Mouse.begin();  
87     USB.begin();  
-- }
```

Then the program configures the ESP32-P4 chip's LDO power module: first defining the error status variable "esp_err_t err", then configuring the LDO3 channel ("chan_id = 3") to output 2.5V voltage. This voltage is used to power the MIPI D-PHY display interface. The power is enabled via "esp_ldo_acquire_channel()" and checked for success; if it fails, error information is output via the serial port. Next, the LDO4 channel ("chan_id = 4") is configured to output 3.3V voltage, used for the I2C bus and touch screen pull-up power. This is also initialized and status information is output.

```

92     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
93     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
94     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
95         .chan_id = 3,          // LDO Channel 3
96         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
97     };
98
99     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
100    err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
101    if (err != ESP_OK) {
102        Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\r\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
103    } else {
104        Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
105    }
106
107    // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
108    esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
109    esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
110        .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
111        .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
112    };
113
114    Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
115    err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
116    if (err != ESP_OK) {
117        Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\r\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
118    } else {
119        Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
120    }

```

After power configuration is complete, the program creates an ESP_Panel object "panel = new ESP_Panel()", used to manage the display screen and touch screen hardware. Then "panel->init()" is called to initialize the MIPI-DSI bus, EK79007 display driver chip, and GT911 touch controller (related configurations come from ESP_Panel_Conf.h in the library files). If initialization fails, the program enters an infinite loop and stops running.

```

122    // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
123    panel = new ESP_Panel();
124
125    // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
126    // The library uses settings from ESP_Panel_Conf.h internally
127    Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
128    if (!panel->init()) {
129        Serial.println("Panel Initialization Failed!");
130        while (1) delay(100);
131    }
132

```

Then "panel->begin()" is called to start the display panel, including executing the display startup sequence and turning on the backlight. If this fails, the program also stops. Finally, "Display and Touch system online." is printed to the serial port, indicating that the screen display and touch system have successfully started and can

now enter the main loop to process touch input and control the mouse.

```

133     // Begin the panel (Startup sequences and backlight)
134     if (!panel->begin()) {
135         Serial.println("Panel Start Failed!");
136         while (1) delay(100);
137     }
138
139     Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
140 }
141

```

4、 loop Section

This loop() function code implements the core logic of continuously reading touch screen data and converting touch operations into USB mouse control signals.

The program first obtains the touch controller object via "panel->getTouch()". If the object exists, it indicates that touch functionality is available.

It then creates an "ESP_PanelTouchPoint point[10]" array to store up to 10 touch point data, and calls "touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0)" to read the current number of touch points and their coordinate information from the touch chip (such as GT911).

The program uses a for loop to output each touch point's X coordinate, Y coordinate, and touch strength (pressure/strength) to the serial port for debugging purposes.

```

142 void loop() {
143     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
144
145     // --- Process Touch Inputs ---
146     auto touch = panel->getTouch();
147
148     if (touch != nullptr) {
149         // --- Read data from the hardware ---
150         // Use the correct struct name: ESP_PanelTouchPoint
151         ESP_PanelTouchPoint point[10]; // save 10 points
152
153         // --- Check the number of touch points ---
154         int point_num = touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0); // readPoints() ==> readRawData() + getPoints()
155         for (int i=0; i<point_num; i++) {
156             // Print the coordinates to Serial
157             Serial.printf("Touch point[%d]: x %4d, y %3d, strength %d\r\n", i, point[i].x, point[i].y, point[i].strength);
158         }
159     }
160 }

```

Then two static variables "prev_x" and "prev_y" are used to record the previous touch position. When at least one touch point is detected ("point_num > 0"), the program calculates the displacement difference "xDistance" and "yDistance" between the current touch point and the previous touch point.

If the displacement is not zero, it calls "Mouse.move(xDistance, yDistance, 0)" to send a mouse movement command to the computer, causing the mouse cursor to move in the direction of the finger swipe. Then "prev_x" and "prev_y" are updated to the current coordinates.

```

160     static int prev_x = -1;
161     static int prev_y = -1;
162     if (0 < point_num) {
163         // calculate the movement distance based on the button states:
164         if (-1 != prev_x || -1 != prev_y) {
165             int xDistance = (point[0].x - prev_x);
166             int yDistance = (point[0].y - prev_y);
167             // if X or Y is non-zero, move:
168             if ((xDistance!=0) || (yDistance!=0)) {
169                 Mouse.move(xDistance, yDistance, 0);
170                 Serial.printf("Mouse.move: x = %2d, y = %2d\r\n", xDistance, yDistance);
171             }
172         }
173         prev_x = point[0].x;
174         prev_y = point[0].y;

```

At the same time, the program simulates mouse button logic: when a touch is detected, if the left mouse button is not already pressed, it executes "Mouse.press(MOUSE_LEFT)", equivalent to holding down the left mouse button.

```

176         // if the mouse is not pressed, press it:
177         if (!Mouse.isPressed(MOUSE_LEFT)) {
178             Mouse.press(MOUSE_LEFT);
179         }

```

When there are no touch points (finger leaves the screen), the program resets "prev_x" and "prev_y" to -1, and calls "Mouse.release(MOUSE_LEFT)" to release the left mouse button, thereby achieving a mouse operation effect similar to "click and drag."

Finally, "delay(20)" limits the loop execution speed to avoid excessively fast mouse movement. If the touch object does not exist, the program outputs "IDLE loop" and checks the status once per second.

```

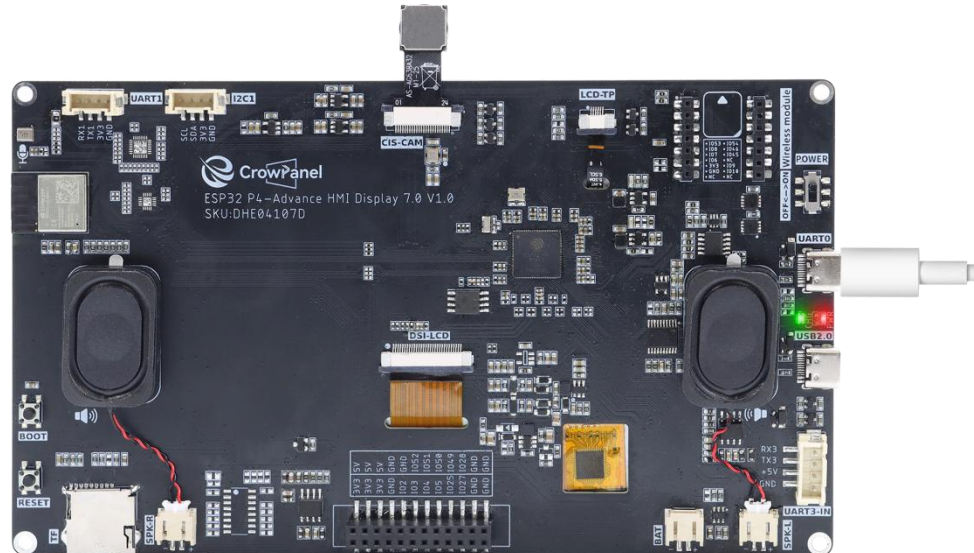
180     } else {
181         prev_x = -1;
182         prev_y = -1;
183
184         // if the mouse is pressed, release it:
185         if (Mouse.isPressed(MOUSE_LEFT)) {
186             Mouse.release(MOUSE_LEFT);
187         }
188     }
189
190     // a delay so the mouse doesn't move too fast:
191     delay(20);
192
193 } else {
194     Serial.println("IDLE loop");
195     delay(1000);
196 }
197 }

```

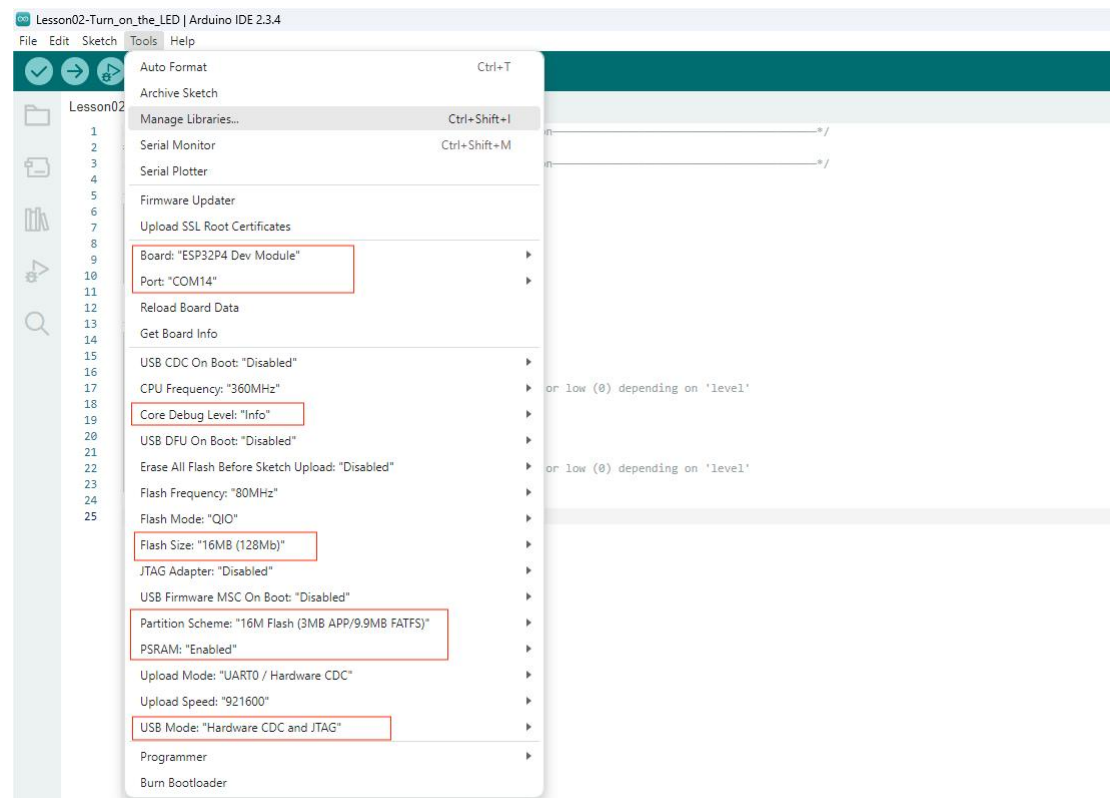
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

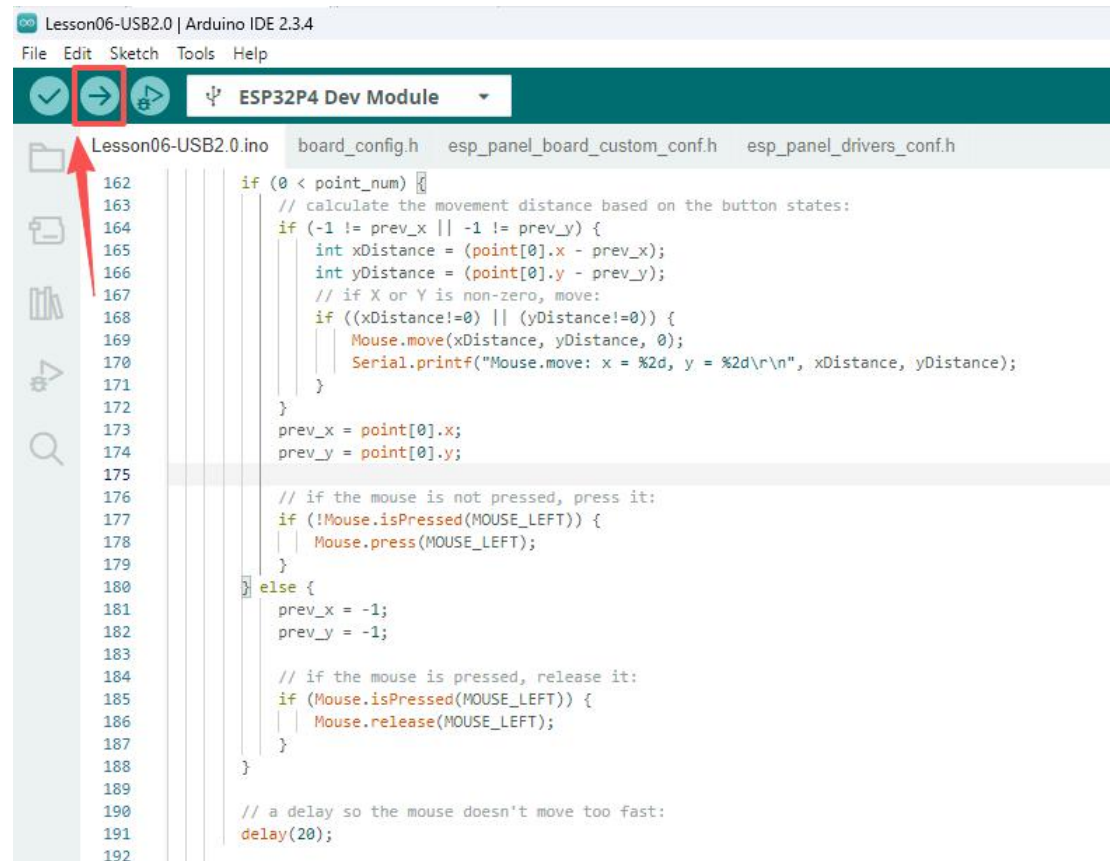
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



Lesson06-USB2.0 | Arduino IDE 2.3.4

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

ESP32P4 Dev Module

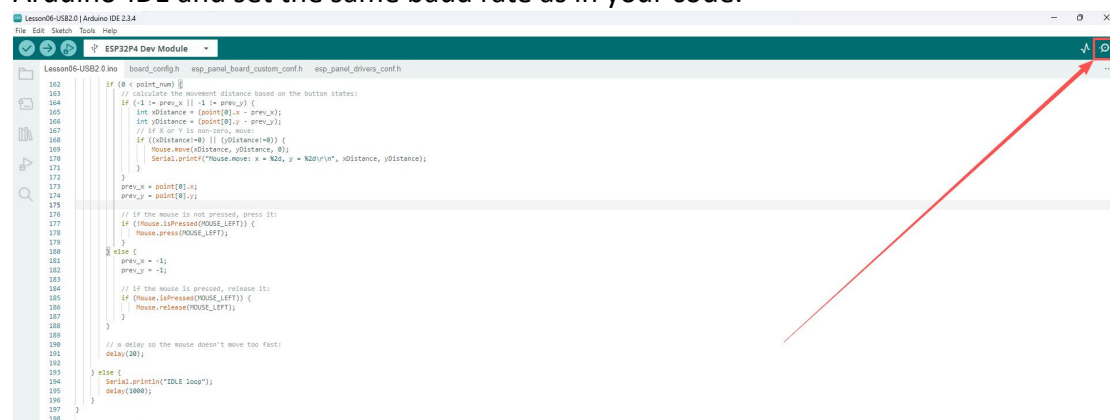
Lesson06-USB2.0.ino board_config.h esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h esp_panel_drivers_conf.h

```

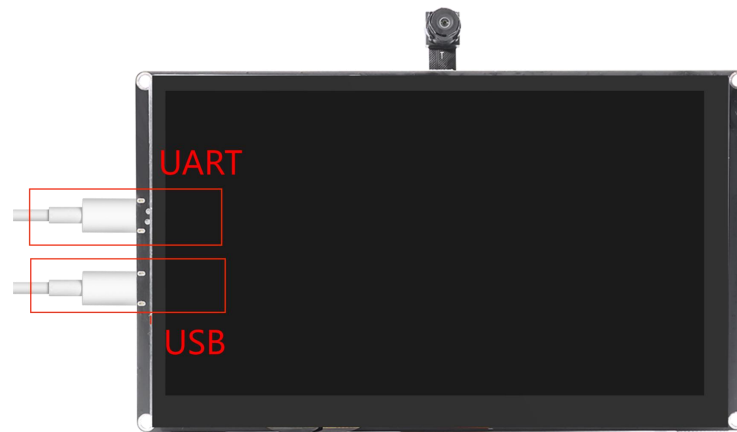
162     if (0 < point_num) {
163         // calculate the movement distance based on the button states:
164         if (-1 != prev_x || -1 != prev_y) {
165             int xDistance = (point[0].x - prev_x);
166             int yDistance = (point[0].y - prev_y);
167             // if X or Y is non-zero, move:
168             if ((xDistance!=0) || (yDistance!=0)) {
169                 Mouse.move(xDistance, yDistance, 0);
170                 Serial.printf("Mouse.move: x = %2d, y = %2d\r\n", xDistance, yDistance);
171             }
172         }
173         prev_x = point[0].x;
174         prev_y = point[0].y;
175     }
176     // if the mouse is not pressed, press it:
177     if (!Mouse.isPressed(MOUSE_LEFT)) {
178         Mouse.press(MOUSE_LEFT);
179     }
180 } else {
181     prev_x = -1;
182     prev_y = -1;
183 }
184 // if the mouse is pressed, release it:
185 if (Mouse.isPressed(MOUSE_LEFT)) {
186     Mouse.release(MOUSE_LEFT);
187 }
188 }
189 // a delay so the mouse doesn't move too fast:
190 delay(20);
191
192

```

After the code upload completes, you can open the Serial Monitor built into the Arduino-IDE and set the same baud rate as in your code.



At this point, please make sure to connect your Advance-P4 to the computer via a separate Type-C data cable using the USB2.0 interface. Only in this way can communication be carried out using the USB2.0 protocol.



When you slide the screen of the Advance-P4, the mouse on your computer also moves along. At this moment, your Advance-P4 becomes your new mouse. Meanwhile, you can also see the corresponding coordinates printed on the monitor when you turn it on.



```

153 // --- Check the number of touch points ---
154 int point_num = touch->readPoints(point, 10, 0); // readPoints() ==> readRawData() + getPoints()
155 for (int i=0; i<point_num; i++) {
156     // Print the coordinates to Serial
157     Serial.printf("Touch point[%d]: x %4d, y %3d, strength %d\r\n", i, point[i].x, point[i].y, point[i].strength);
158 }
159
160 static int prev_x = -1;
161 static int prev_y = -1;
162 if (0 < point_num) {
163     // Calculate the movement distance based on the button status
164
165     Mouse.move: x = -2, y = -2
166     Touch point[0]: x 271, y 312, strength 9
167     Mouse.move: x = -10, y = -7
168     Touch point[0]: x 261, y 305, strength 9
169     Mouse.move: x = -10, y = -7
170     Touch point[0]: x 252, y 298, strength 9
171     Mouse.move: x = -9, y = -7
172     Touch point[0]: x 245, y 293, strength 9
173     Mouse.move: x = -7, y = -5
174     Touch point[0]: x 239, y 289, strength 9
175     Mouse.move: x = -6, y = -4
176     Touch point[0]: x 235, y 285, strength 9
177     Mouse.move: x = -4, y = -4
178     Touch point[0]: x 234, y 284, strength 9
179     Mouse.move: x = -1, y = -1

```

Lesson07---Turn on the screen

Introduction

In this class, we will start by teaching you how to turn on the screen. Then, while turning on the screen backlight, we will display "Hello Elecrow" on the screen. Of course, you can replace it with whatever you want.

The main focus of this class is to teach you how to turn on the screen backlight and turn on the screen, in preparation for the subsequent courses.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the display principles of the screen.
2. Understand the role of LVGL in displaying information.
3. Implement the screen text display function by utilizing libraries.

Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to visually see that "Hello Elecrow" is displayed on the screen of the Advance-P4.

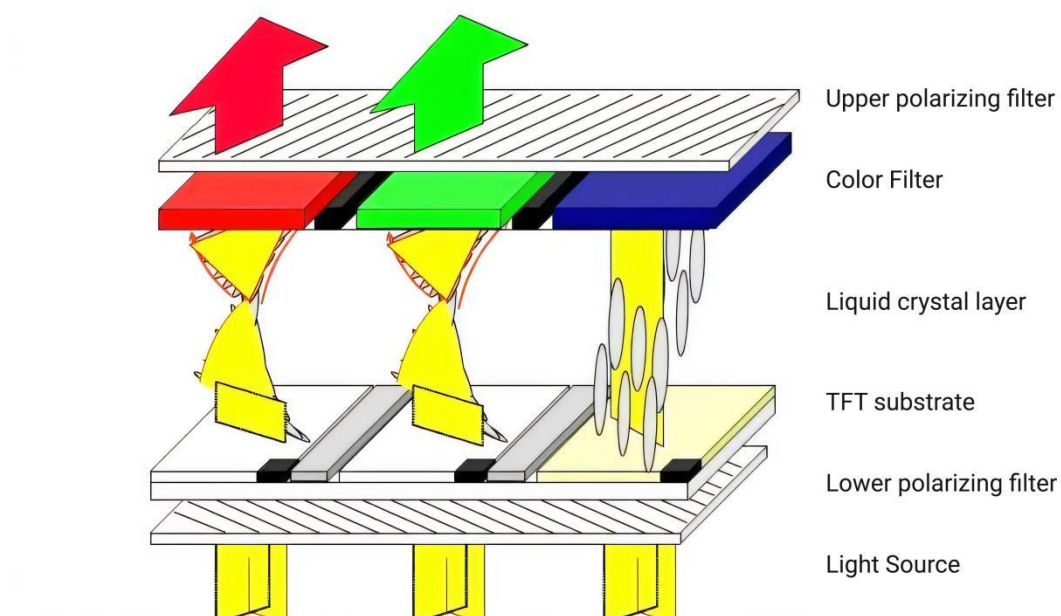


Hardware Used in This Lesson

The screen on the Advance-P4



Display Screen CXM090IPS-D27 Schematic Diagram



Firstly, the backlight (usually an LED array) emits a white surface light source, providing the basic light for display.

Then, the lower polarizer polarizes and filters the light from the backlight, allowing only light of a specific polarization direction (such as horizontal) to pass through, forming linearly polarized light.

Next, the light reaches the TFT substrate, where the thin-film transistors (TFTs) on the substrate act as switching devices, controlling the electrical state of the liquid

crystal molecules in the corresponding pixel area based on the applied voltage, thereby changing the alignment direction of the liquid crystal molecules.

Liquid crystal molecules have optical anisotropy and electric field response characteristics. The change in their alignment direction modulates the polarization state of the passing polarized light. Subsequently, the light enters the color filter, which is composed of red, green, and blue primary color filter units.

Only light corresponding to the color of the filter units (for example, only red light can pass through the red filter unit) can pass through, generating primary color light.

Finally, the upper polarizer (whose polarization direction is perpendicular to that of the lower polarizer, such as horizontal for the lower polarizer and vertical for the upper polarizer) filters the light that has passed through the color filter again.

Only light with a polarization direction consistent with the allowed direction of the upper polarizer can pass through.

Through the precise control of the liquid crystal molecules in each pixel by the TFT substrate, the polarization state of the polarized light is adjusted.

Combined with the color filtering of the color filter and the polarization selection of the upper and lower polarizers, different pixels present different brightness and colors, ultimately forming a visible color image.

Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

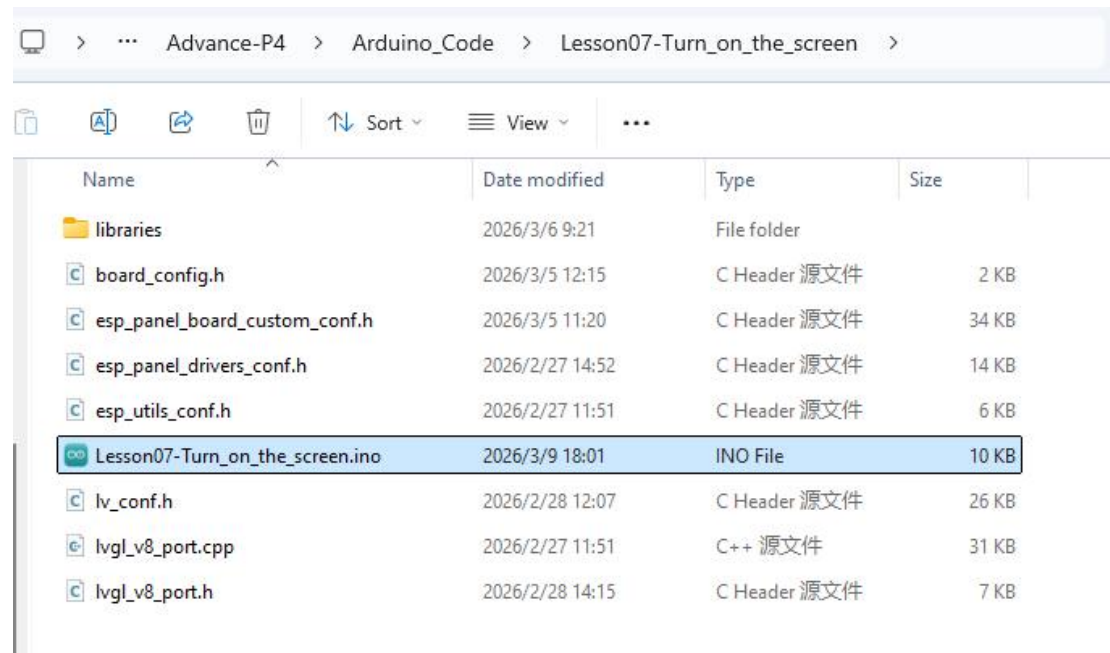
(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

[https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson07-Turn on the screen](https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson07-Turn%20on%20the%20screen)

Key Explanations

How do we display text on the screen of the CrowPanel Advanced ESP32-P4 HMI AI Display? Next, let's dive into the specifics together.

Double-click to open this lesson's code (the .ino file).



After opening, you can see the project's code, configuration file board_config.h, and other related screen driver files. Let's understand the project architecture for this lesson.

Among them:

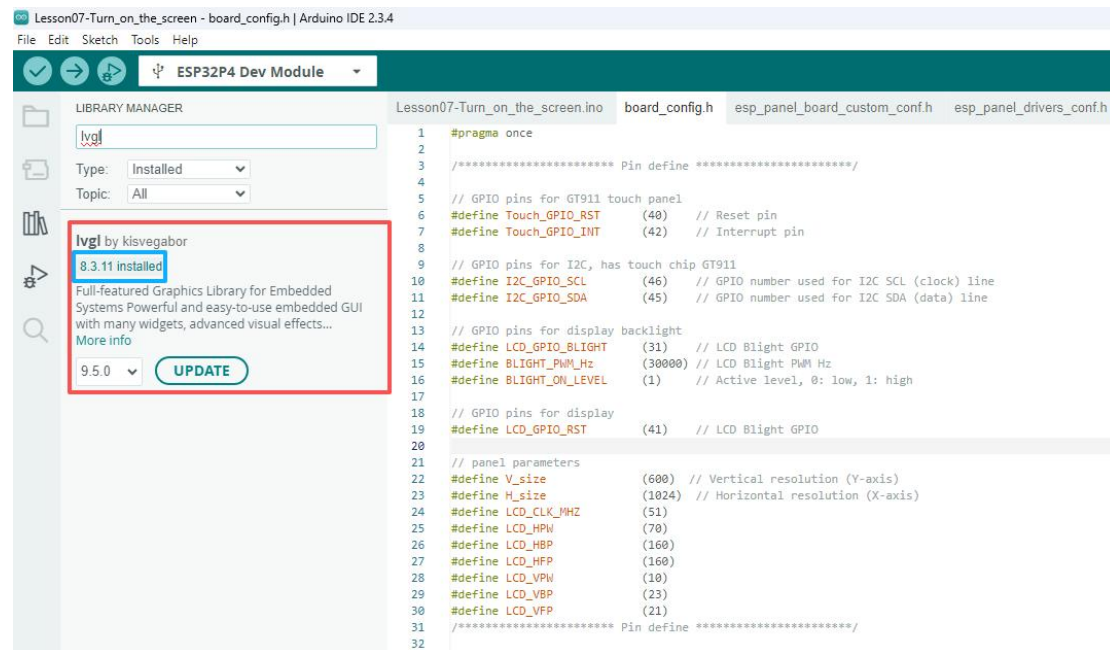
1. The [libraries folder](#) is the project's dependency library storage directory, storing core third-party libraries such as ESP32_Display_Panel and LVGL v8 according to Arduino library management standards.

In the preface, we have already imported all the library files into the Arduino's "libraries" folder. If you haven't done so, please follow the instructions in the preface to import all the library files into the "libraries" folder of Arduino.

This directory contains all library source code and header files required for compiling the project, ensuring the Arduino IDE can correctly locate and link the ESP32_Display_Panel library, LVGL library, and their dependencies. It forms the library dependency foundation for the project to compile and run normally, avoiding version inconsistency issues from manual library installation.

The ESP32_Display_Panel library is consistent with what we covered in Lesson 5, and the version is also [1.0.4](#).

The LVGL library is version **8.3.11**, please keep this consistent.



2. board_config.h: Hardware Pin and Panel Parameter Configuration File

board_config.h is the project's underlying hardware configuration file, specifically defining all hardware-related pin mappings and panel parameters for the ESP32-P4 development board. Through macro definitions, it clarifies the GT911 touch chip's reset/interrupt pins, I2C communication pins, LCD backlight control pin, LCD reset pin, as well as core hardware parameters such as screen resolution (1024×600) and MIPI-DSI timing parameters (clock frequency, front/back porch/sync pulse width). This is the foundation that binds the entire project to the physical development board hardware. All upper-layer drivers and applications rely on these configurations to correctly address and control the hardware.

```

1  #pragma once
2
3  /***** Pin define *****/
4
5  // GPIO pins for GT911 touch panel
6  #define Touch_GPIO_RST    (40)    // Reset pin
7  #define Touch_GPIO_INT    (42)    // Interrupt pin
8
9  // GPIO pins for I2C, has touch chip GT911
10 #define I2C_GPIO_SCL      (46)    // GPIO number used for I2C SCL (clock) line
11 #define I2C_GPIO_SDA      (45)    // GPIO number used for I2C SDA (data) line
12
13 // GPIO pins for display backlight
14 #define LCD_GPIO_BLIGHT   (31)    // LCD Blight GPIO
15 #define BLIGHT_PWM_Hz     (30000) // LCD Blight PWM Hz
16 #define BLIGHT_ON_LEVEL   (1)     // Active level, 0: low, 1: high
17
18 // GPIO pins for display
19 #define LCD_GPIO_RST      (41)    // LCD Blight GPIO
20
21 // panel parameters
22 #define V_size             (600)   // Vertical resolution (Y-axis)
23 #define H_size             (1024)  // Horizontal resolution (X-axis)
24 #define LCD_CLK_MHZ        (51)
25 #define LCD_HPW            (70)
26 #define LCD_HBP            (160)
27 #define LCD_HFP            (160)
28 #define LCD_VPW            (10)
29 #define LCD_VBP            (23)
30 #define LCD_VFP            (21)
31 /***** Pin define *****/
32

```

3. [esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h](#) : ESP Display Panel Custom Board-Level Configuration File

`esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h` is the custom board-level configuration file for the `ESP32_Display_Panel` library. It inherits hardware parameters from `board_config.h` and encapsulates them into macro definitions recognizable by the library. It uniformly configures the LCD controller (EK79007), bus type (MIPI-DSI), resolution, touch controller (GT911), I2C communication parameters, backlight control (PWM mode), etc. It also defines hook function interfaces before and after library initialization. This is the core configuration file for the `ESP32_Display_Panel` library to adapt to custom ESP32-P4 development boards, determining how the library initializes LCD, touch, backlight, and other peripherals.

4. [esp_panel_drivers_conf.h](#): ESP Display Panel Driver Selection Configuration File

`esp_panel_drivers_conf.h` is the driver trimming and compilation configuration file for the `ESP32_Display_Panel` library. Through macro definitions, it precisely controls which driver modules are included during library compilation. It disables all unrelated drivers, only enabling the MIPI-DSI bus driver, EK79007 LCD driver, GT911 touch driver, and PWM backlight driver. It also configures maximum touch points, compilation optimization options, etc. This ensures the library functions fully adapt to project hardware while minimizing compiled code size to the greatest extent. It is the core of library-level functional trimming and performance optimization.

5. [esp_utils_conf.h](#): ESP Utils Library General Configuration File

`esp_utils_conf.h` is the general configuration file for the `esp_utils` tool library that the project depends on. It manages the tool library's basic behaviors: including error handling methods for null pointers/memory allocation (print error logs), log output level (INFO level), memory allocation strategy (default using standard library `malloc/free`, switchable to ESP-IDF exclusive memory allocation), etc. It provides unified logging, memory management, and error handling specifications for the entire project, forming the foundation for ensuring project code robustness and maintainability.

6. [lv_conf.h](#): LVGL Graphics Library Core Configuration File

`lv_conf.h` is the core compilation configuration file for the LVGL v8.3.11 graphics library. Through macro definitions, it comprehensively manages LVGL's functional scope and resource consumption: configuring color depth as RGB565 (16-bit), memory allocation strategy as system `malloc/free`, hardware abstraction layer parameters (refresh rate 30ms, input device read cycle 30ms), while enabling complex drawing engine (shadows, gradients, rounded corners, etc.), full range of common widgets (buttons, sliders, labels, etc.), Montserrat full font family, as well as widget demonstrations, performance benchmarking, and other Demo functions. It is the "master switch" of the LVGL graphics system, determining what UI capabilities LVGL can provide and how much memory it consumes. It is key to adapting to ESP32-P4 hardware resources.

7. [lvgl_v8_port.h](#): LVGL Porting Layer Interface and Configuration Header File

lvgl_v8_port.h is the porting layer interface file connecting the LVGL native library with ESP32-P4 hardware. On one hand, it defines key parameters for LVGL adapting to ESP32: LVGL clock tick period (2ms), buffer memory allocation type (default SRAM, switchable to PSRAM), anti-tearing mode (double buffering + full refresh), screen rotation angle (0°), etc. On the other hand, it declares core porting layer interfaces (lvgl_port_init/deinit, lvgl_port_lock/unlock), providing standardized LVGL initialization, deinitialization, and thread-safe lock operation entry points for upper-layer applications. It is the "interface contract" between upper-layer business and underlying hardware adaptation.

8. [lvgl_v8_port.cpp](#): LVGL Porting Layer Hardware Adaptation Implementation File

lvgl_v8_port.cpp is the core implementation file for porting LVGL to the ESP32-P4 platform, fully implementing the adaptation logic between LVGL and hardware: implementing anti-tearing optimization for MIPI-DSI screens (synchronizing frame buffer switching through VSYNC interrupts), optimizing rotation algorithms for 16-bit color depth screens (block copy improves performance by 10~20 times), completing LCD display buffer initialization, touch interrupt synchronization and coordinate mapping, while creating an independent LVGL task to handle timer events, and ensuring multi-threaded access safety to LVGL API through recursive mutexes. It is the core carrier transforming LVGL from a universal graphics library into a runnable graphics system on ESP32-P4.

(The above library files can be used directly. We have already modified them for you, and they can smoothly run screen display-related functions and LVGL functions on the CrowPanel Advanced ESP32-P4 HMI AI Display.)

9. [Lesson07-Turn_on_the_screen.ino](#): Arduino Main Program Entry File

Lesson07-Turn_on_the_screen.ino is the project's main program entry file, following the Arduino programming paradigm, containing setup() and loop() functions. In setup(), it sequentially completes serial port debugging initialization, ESP32-P4 exclusive LDO power configuration (providing 2.5V/3.3V power for MIPI-DSI and I2C), ESP32_Display_Panel library initialization (LCD + touch), LVGL porting layer initialization, and calls LVGL interfaces to create basic UI (such as displaying "Hello Elecrow"). In loop(), it maintains LVGL task operation. It is the complete process carrier from hardware power-on to graphical interface display for the entire project, and also the core entry for users to write business logic.

Alright, next let's understand the code content in the main code ino file.

1. Header Files

This code is mainly used to include various library files required for program operation, providing support for subsequent hardware drivers, system functions, and graphical interface development.

```

14 #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15 #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17 #include <string.h>        // C string lib
18 #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
19 #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
20 #include <esp_ido_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22 #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
23 #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
24 #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
25
26 #include <lvgl.h>
27 #include "lvgl_v8_port.h"

```

First, `#include "board_config.h"` is used to load the development board's hardware configuration file, which typically contains board-level information such as GPIO pin definitions and display interface configurations.

`#include <Arduino.h>` is the Arduino core library. It provides Arduino's basic functions such as `setup()`, `loop()`, Serial serial communication, and `delay()`, so it must be placed relatively early to ensure these APIs can be correctly recognized.

Next, `#include <string.h>` introduces the standard C language string processing library, used for string copying, comparison, and other operations. `#include <esp_log.h>` and `#include <esp_err.h>` are system libraries provided by ESP-IDF, used for log output and error code management respectively, helping developers with system debugging and error handling.

`#include <esp_ido_regulator.h>` is an ESP32-P4 exclusive LDO power management library, used to configure the chip's internal low-dropout linear regulator, providing stable voltage for the MIPI display interface or other peripherals.

Subsequently, `esp_panel_drivers_conf.h`, `esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h`, and `ESP_Panel_Library.h` are introduced. These files belong to the ESP32_Display_Panel driver library, used to configure and drive display and touch screen hardware (such as EK79007 display driver and GT911 touch chip).

Finally, `#include <lvgl.h>` and `#include "lvgl_v8_port.h"` introduce the LVGL graphical interface library and its hardware adaptation layer. Among them, `lvgl.h` provides all LVGL UI widgets and graphics functions, while `lvgl_v8_port.h` is responsible for connecting LVGL with underlying display drivers and touch drivers, enabling developers to create graphical interfaces on the screen and respond to touch input.

2. Namespace

The purpose of these two lines of code is to introduce contents from specified namespaces, allowing the program to omit namespace prefixes when using classes, functions, or variables from these libraries, thereby simplifying code writing.

```

28
29 using namespace esp_panel::drivers;
30 using namespace esp_panel::board;
31

```

using namespace esp_panel::drivers; indicates introducing all members from the drivers namespace in the esp_panel library (such as LCD drivers, touch drivers, and related classes and interfaces) directly into the current file scope. This way, when using these driver classes, you don't need to write the complete esp_panel::drivers::class name.

using namespace esp_panel::board; introduces contents from the board namespace. This namespace typically contains development board-related wrapper classes, such as the Board class, which is responsible for uniformly managing hardware resources like display screens, touch screens, and bus interfaces. Therefore, in the code you can directly write Board *board = new Board(); without needing to write esp_panel::board::Board.

3. Macro Definitions

This code creates a set of shortcut names for commonly used colors for the LVGL graphical interface library through #define macro definitions, making it convenient to directly use these colors when writing interface code.

```

62 #define LV_COLOR_RED      lv_color_make(0xFF, 0x00, 0x00) // LVGL Red
63 #define LV_COLOR_GREEN    lv_color_make(0x00, 0xFF, 0x00) // LVGL Green
64 #define LV_COLOR_BLUE     lv_color_make(0x00, 0x00, 0xFF) // LVGL Blue
65 #define LV_COLOR_WHITE    lv_color_make(0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF) // LVGL White
66 #define LV_COLOR_BLACK    lv_color_make(0x00, 0x00, 0x00) // LVGL Black
67 #define LV_COLOR_GRAY     lv_color_make(0x80, 0x80, 0x80) // LVGL gray
68 #define LV_COLOR_YELLOW   lv_color_make(0xFF, 0xFF, 0x00) // LVGL yellow
69 /*

```

Each macro calls the lv_color_make(R, G, B) function. This function is a color constructor provided by LVGL, used to generate an LVGL-recognizable color type lv_color_t based on RGB primary color values (red, green, blue).

For example, LV_COLOR_RED is defined as lv_color_make(0xFF, 0x00, 0x00), indicating red component of 255, green of 0, and blue of 0, thereby generating pure red. Similarly, LV_COLOR_GREEN, LV_COLOR_BLUE, LV_COLOR_WHITE, LV_COLOR_BLACK, LV_COLOR_GRAY, and LV_COLOR_YELLOW define green, blue, white, black, gray, and yellow respectively.

The purpose of these macros is to improve code readability and simplify UI development. When developers set LVGL widget styles or background colors, they only need to write LV_COLOR_RED or LV_COLOR_WHITE, without having to repeatedly write the RGB parameters of lv_color_make(...) every time, making interface code clearer and more readable.

4. Global Variables

This code is mainly used to define log identifiers and declare display panel object pointers.

```

72 static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP"; // Tag for logging messages
73
74 // --- Declare the panel pointer globally ---|
75 ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;
76 /*

```

First, `static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP";` defines a string constant pointer `TAG` with value `"TOUCH_APP"`. This is typically used as a tag in the logging system. When using ESP-IDF logging functions (such as `ESP_LOGI`, `ESP_LOGE`, etc.) to output debug information, this tag can be used to identify the log source module, making it easier to distinguish log information from different functional modules during debugging. Here `static` indicates the variable's scope is limited to the current file, and `const char *` indicates this is a pointer to a constant string.

Next, `ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;` declares an `ESP_Panel` class pointer variable `panel` and initializes it to a null pointer `nullptr`. This object is mainly used to manage display and touch screen hardware (such as initializing display interfaces, reading touch data, etc.). Since it is defined as a global variable, it can be shared and accessed in the program's `setup()`, `loop()`, and other functions. Typically, an actual object is created for it during the program initialization phase to complete control of the display and touch devices.

5、LVGL text display

This code defines a function `lvgl_show_hello_elecrow()`, whose purpose is to use the LVGL graphics library to create and display a "Hello Elecrow" text interface in the center of the screen.

```
87 static void lvgl_show_hello_elecrow(void) {
88     // 1. Lock LVGL: ensure thread-safe operations
89     if (lvgl_port_lock(-1) != true) { // 0 means non-blocking wait for the lock (timeout = 0)
90         MAIN_ERROR("LVGL lock failed"); // Print error if lock fails
91         return; // Exit function
92     }
93
94     // 2. Create screen background (optional: set background color for better text visibility)
95     lv_obj_t *screen = lv_scr_act(); // Get current active screen object
96     lv_obj_set_style_bg_color(screen, LV_COLOR_WHITE, LV_PART_MAIN); // Set background color to white
97     lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa(screen, LV_OPA_COVER, LV_PART_MAIN); // Set background fully opaque
98
99     // 3. Create label object (parent object = current screen)
100    lv_obj_t *hello_label = lv_label_create(screen); // Create label
101    if (hello_label == NULL) { // Check if creation failed
102        MAIN_ERROR("Create LVGL label failed"); // Log error
103        lvgl_port_unlock(); // Unlock LVGL before returning
104        return; // Exit function
105    }
106
107    // 4. Set label text content
108    lv_label_set_text(hello_label, "Hello Elecrow"); // Set label text
109
110    // 5. Configure label style (font, color, background)
111    static lv_style_t label_style; // Define a style object
112    lv_style_init(&label_style); // Initialize style object
113    // Set font: Montserrat size 42 (must be enabled in LVGL config)
114    lv_style_set_text_font(&label_style, &lv_font_montserrat_42);
115    // Set text color to black (contrast with white background)
116    lv_style_set_text_color(&label_style, LV_COLOR_BLACK);
117    // Set label background transparent (avoid blocking screen background)
118    lv_style_set_bg_opa(&label_style, LV_OPA_TRANSP);
119    // Apply style to the label
120    lv_obj_add_style(hello_label, &label_style, LV_PART_MAIN);
121
122    // 6. Adjust label position: center on screen
123    lv_obj_center(hello_label);
124
125    // 7. Unlock LVGL: release lock, allow LVGL task to render
126    lvgl_port_unlock();
127 }
```

The function first locks LVGL via `lvgl_port_lock(-1)` to ensure thread-safe operation on UI objects in multi-task or multi-thread environments. If acquiring the lock fails, it outputs an error message and returns directly.

```
87 static void lvgl_show_hello_elecrow(void) {
88     // 1. Lock LVGL: ensure thread-safe operations
89     if (lvgl_port_lock(-1) != true) { // 0 means non-blocking wait for the lock (timeout = 0)
90         MAIN_ERROR("LVGL lock failed"); // Print error if lock fails
91         return; // Exit function
92     }
```

Then it calls `"lv_scr_act()"` to get the current active screen object, and uses `"lv_obj_set_style_bg_color()"` and `"lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa()"` to set the screen background to a fully opaque white background, improving text readability.

```
94     // 2. Create screen background (optional: set background color for better text visibility)
95     lv_obj_t *screen = lv_scr_act(); // Get current active screen object
96     lv_obj_set_style_bg_color(screen, LV_COLOR_WHITE, LV_PART_MAIN); // Set background color to white
97     lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa(screen, LV_OPA_COVER, LV_PART_MAIN); // Set background fully opaque
```

Then the program creates a label text widget on the current screen via `"lv_label_create(screen)"`. If creation fails, it prints an error log and releases the LVGL lock.

```
99     // 3. Create label object (parent object = current screen)
100     lv_obj_t *hello_label = lv_label_create(screen); // Create label
101     if (hello_label == NULL) { // Check if creation failed
102         MAIN_ERROR("Create LVGL label failed"); // Log error
103         lvgl_port_unlock(); // Unlock LVGL before returning
104         return; // Exit function
105     }
```

After the label is successfully created, `"lv_label_set_text()"` is used to set its text content to "Hello Elecrow".

```
107     // 4. Set label text content
108     lv_label_set_text(hello_label, "Hello Elecrow"); // Set label text
```

To beautify the display effect, the program then creates a `lv_style_t` style object and initializes it. It then sets the Montserrat 42pt font, black text color, and transparent background for the label, and applies this style to the label object via `lv_obj_add_style()`.

```
110     // 5. Configure label style (font, color, background)
111     static lv_style_t label_style; // Define a style object
112     lv_style_init(&label_style); // Initialize style object
113     // Set font: Montserrat size 42 (must be enabled in LVGL config)
114     lv_style_set_text_font(&label_style, &lv_font_montserrat_42);
115     // Set text color to black (contrast with white background)
116     lv_style_set_text_color(&label_style, LV_COLOR_BLACK);
117     // Set label background transparent (avoid blocking screen background)
118     lv_style_set_bg_opa(&label_style, LV_OPA_TRANSP);
119     // Apply style to the label
120     lv_obj_add_style(hello_label, &label_style, LV_PART_MAIN);
```

Finally, it calls `"lv_obj_center()"` to center the text label on the screen. After completing the interface layout, it uses `"lvgl_port_unlock()"` to release the LVGL lock, allowing LVGL's background task to refresh and render the interface.

```

122 // 6. Adjust label position: center on screen
123 lv_obj_center(hello_label);
124
125 // 7. Unlock LVGL: release lock, allow LVGL task to render
126 lvgl_port_unlock();
127

```

6. setup

This `setup()` function code mainly completes system initialization, power configuration, display and touch hardware startup, and LVGL graphical interface initialization and UI creation.

The program first initializes serial communication via `"Serial.begin(115200)"` for outputting debug information. It then configures the ESP32-P4 chip's internal LDO power module: first defining the error status variable `"esp_err_t err"`, then configuring LDO3 (channel 3) to output 2.5V voltage. This voltage is used to power the MIPI D-PHY display interface, enabling this power channel via `"esp_ldo_acquire_channel()"`, while printing initialization success or failure information to the serial port. Next, it configures LDO4 (channel 4) to output 3.3V voltage, providing power for the I2C bus and touch screen pull-up resistors.

```

129 void setup() {
130     // put your setup code here, to run once:
131
132     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
133     Serial.begin(115200);
134
135     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
136     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
137     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
138     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
139     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
140     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
141         .chan_id = 3,          // LDO Channel 3
142         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
143     };
144
145     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
146     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
147     if (err != ESP_OK) {
148         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
149     } else {
150         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
151     }
152
153     // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
154     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
155     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
156         .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
157         .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
158     };
159
160     Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
161     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
162     if (err != ESP_OK) {
163         Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
164     } else {
165         Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
166     }
167 }

```

After power initialization is complete, the program creates a Board class object "board". This object is used to uniformly manage the display and touch devices on the development board, and calls "board->init()" to initialize the MIPI-DSI display bus, EK79007 LCD driver, and GT911 touch chip.

```
168 // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
169 Board *board = new Board();
170 // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
171 Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
172 assert(board->init());
173
```

If LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE (screen tearing prevention mode) is enabled, the program obtains the LCD object and sets the number of frame buffers via "configFrameBufferNumber()" to reduce screen tearing issues during refresh.

```
174 #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
175     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
176     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
177     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
178 #endif
179
```

Then "board->begin()" is called to start the display, including executing the display startup sequence and turning on the backlight, and outputting system online information to the serial port.

Next, the program initializes the LVGL graphics interface library. Through "lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch())", LVGL is bound to the underlying LCD display driver and touch driver, enabling LVGL to draw interfaces and receive touch input.

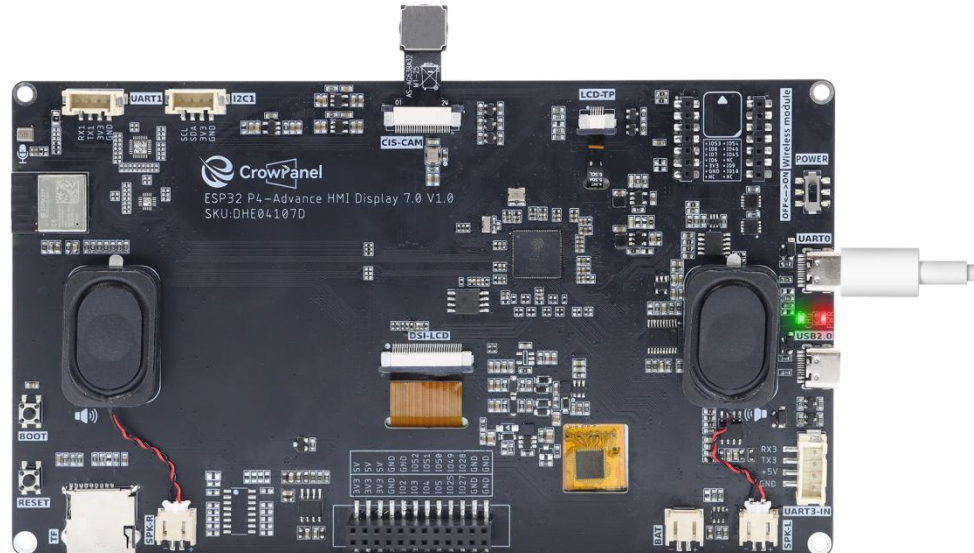
```
180 assert(board->begin());
181 Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
182
183 Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
184 lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
185
186 Serial.println("Creating UI");
187
188 lvgl_show_hello_elecrow();
189
190
```

Finally, "lvgl_show_hello_elecrow()" is called to create a simple UI interface, displaying the "Hello Elecrow" text on the screen, thereby completing the initialization of the entire display system and graphical interface.

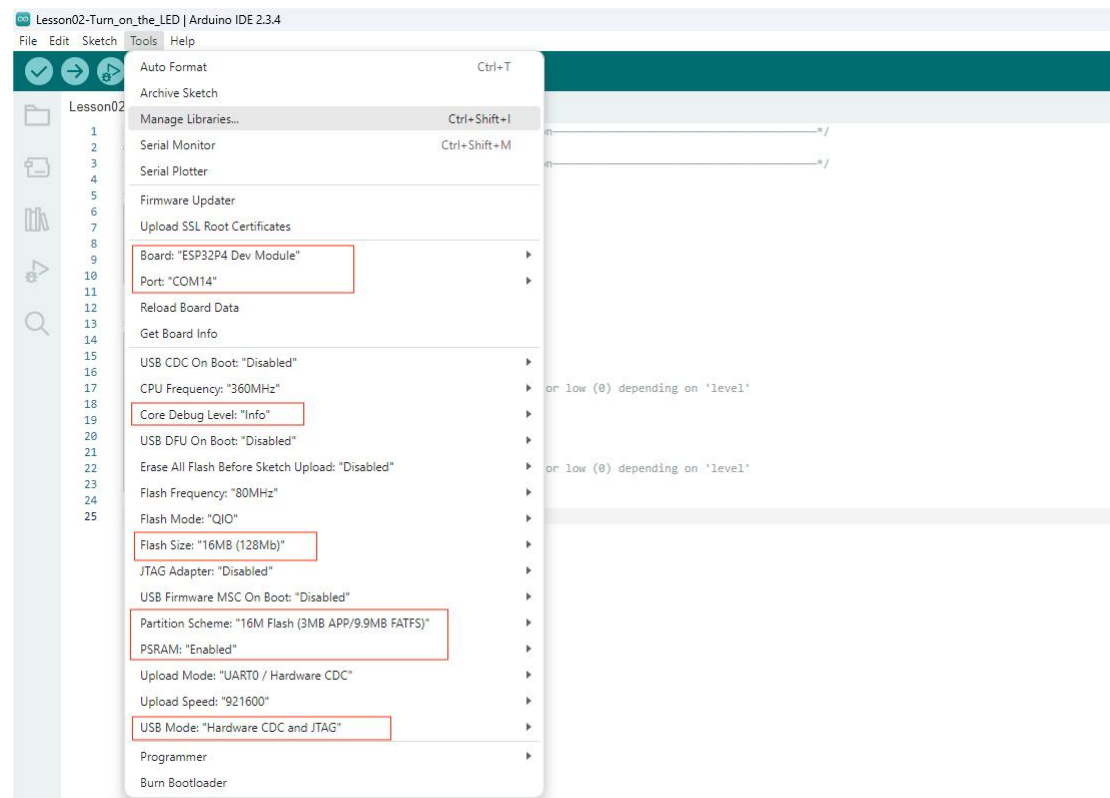
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



```
Lesson07-Turn_on_the_screen.ino board_config.h esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h esp_panel_drivers_conf.h esp_utils_conf.h lv_conf.h lvgl_v8_port.cpp lvgl_v8_port.h
154 esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
155 esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
156     .chan_id = 4, // LDO Channel 4
157     .voltage_mv = 3300, // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
158 };
159
160 Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
161 err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
162 if (err != ESP_OK) {
163     Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
164 } else {
165     Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
166 }
167
168 // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
169 Board *board = new Board();
170 // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
171 Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
172 assert(board->init());
173
174 #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
175     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
176     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
177     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
178 #endif
179
```

After the burning process is completed. You will be able to see that your Advance-P4 screen lights up, and the message "Hello Elecrow" appears in the center of the screen.



Lesson08---SD Card File Reading

Introduction

In this lesson, we will start teaching you how to use the SD card on the Advance-P4 development board to perform read and write operations on files stored in the SD card.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the SD_MMC/SPI hardware interface principles and pin configuration methods for the SD card on the ESP32-P4 development board.
2. Master the mounting and initialization process of the SD card FAT file system.
3. Master basic file operations for SD card text/binary files, including reading, writing, positioning, and copying.

Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to visually see that a file named "hello.txt" appears in the SD card, with the content "hello world!" already written in it.

```

Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading.ino | board_config.h
File Edit Sketch Tools Help
ESP32P4 Dev Module
Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading.ino
353
354 void setup() {
355     // put your setup code here, to run once:
356
357     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
358     Serial.begin(115200);
359
360     MAIN_INFO("-----SD card test program start-----\r\n"); // Print program start message
361
362     // Initialize system
363     Init(); // Call initialization function to set up SD card and other components
364
365     MAIN_INFO("-----SD card test begin-----\r\n"); // Print message indicating test task has started
366     // Create SD card test task
367     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(sd_task, "sd_task", 4096, NULL, 5, &sd_task_handle, 1); // Create a FreeRTOS task to test SD card (core 1)
368 }

Output Serial Monitor x
Message (Enter to send message to 'ESP32P4 Dev Module' on 'COM14')

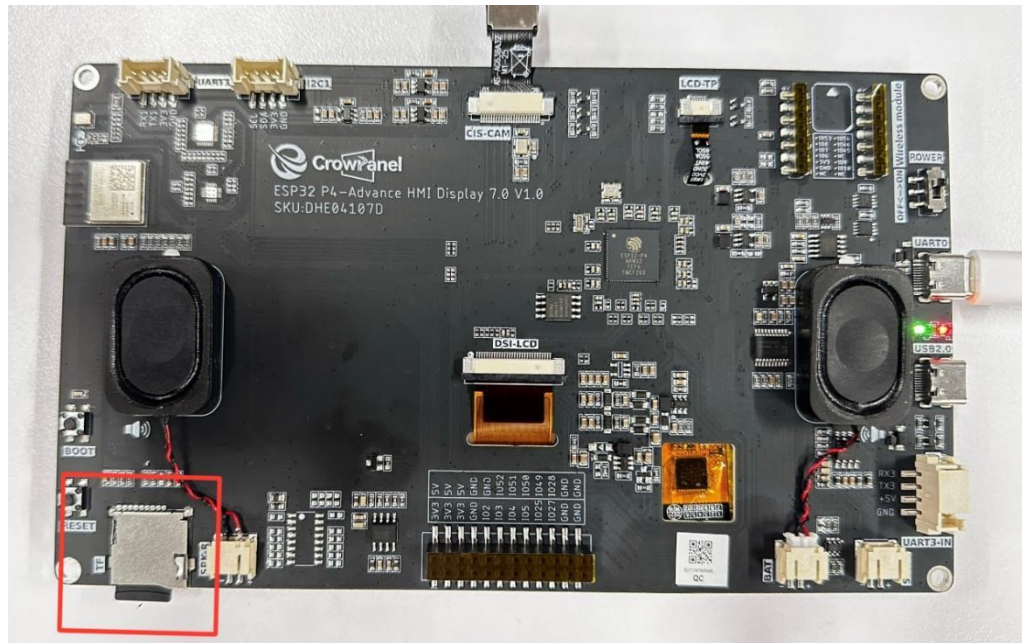
[INFO] -----SD card test program start-----

[INFO] Mounting filesystem
[INFO] Filesystem mounted
Name: SD
Type: SDHC
Speed: 10.00 MHz (limit: 10.00 MHz)
Size: 119275MB
CSD: ver=2, sector_size=512, capacity=244275200 read_bl_len=9
SSR: bus_width=1
[INFO] -----SD card test begin-----

Name: SD
Type: SDHC
Speed: 10.00 MHz (limit: 10.00 MHz)
Size: 119275MB
CSD: ver=2, sector_size=512, capacity=244275200 read_bl_len=9
SSR: bus_width=1
[INFO] Opening file /sdcard/hello.txt
[INFO] File written
[INFO] Reading file /sdcard/hello.txt
[INFO] Read from file: 'hello world!'
[INFO] SD card test completed
  
```

Hardware Used in This Lesson

SD card on the Advance-P4



Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

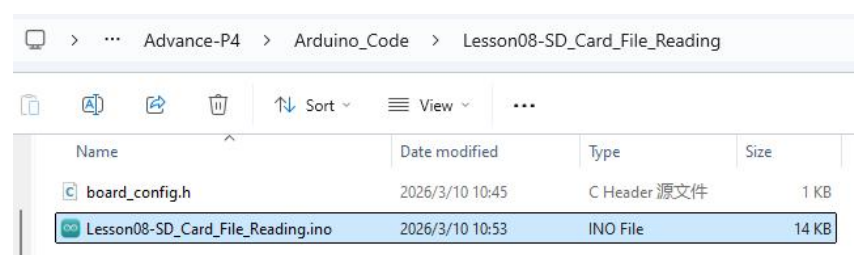
(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Electrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading

Key Explanations

The focus of this lesson is how to use the "SD card", how to initialize it, and how to read and write files.

Double-click to open this lesson's code (the .ino file).



After opening, you can see the project's code and configuration file `board_config.h`.

Let's understand the project architecture for this lesson.

This `board_config.h` header file is a hardware board-level configuration file. Its core purpose is to uniformly declare and manage the GPIO pin numbers corresponding to the SD card and two different communication interfaces (SD_MMC and SPI) through macro definitions. Among them, the SPI interface reuses the CLK, CMD, and D0 pins of the SD_MMC interface, achieving centralized management of hardware pins. This also facilitates subsequent code to directly reference pin numbers through macro names, improving code readability and maintainability. Meanwhile, the `#pragma once` directive ensures this header file is only included once during compilation, avoiding duplicate definition errors.

```
Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading.ino  board_config.h
1  #pragma once
2
3  /***** Pin define *****/
4  // SD card GPIO with SD_MMC
5  #define SD_GPIO_MMC_CLK    (43)
6  #define SD_GPIO_MMC_CMD    (44)
7  #define SD_GPIO_MMC_D0     (39)
8
9  // SD card GPIO with SPI
10 #define SD_GPIO_SPI_CLK    SD_GPIO_MMC_CLK
11 #define SD_GPIO_SPI_MOSI   SD_GPIO_MMC_CMD
12 #define SD_GPIO_SPI_MISO   SD_GPIO_MMC_D0
13 /***** Pin define *****/
14
```

Next, let's take a look at the code in the main code `.ino` file together.

Code for SD Card File Reading and Writing

1. Header Files

This code is mainly used to include various header files required for program operation, providing underlying support for subsequent SD card file system read/write functionality.

```
4  #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
5  #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
6
7  #include <string.h>        // Include standard string manipulation functions
8  #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
9  #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
10 #include <sys/unistd.h>     // Include system calls for file handling
11 #include <sys/stat.h>       // Include functions for file status and permissions
12 #include <esp_vfs_fat.h>    // Include ESP-IDF FAT filesystem support for SD card
13 #include <sdmmc_cmd.h>      // Include SDMMC card command definitions and helpers
14 #include <driver/sdmmc_host.h> // Include SDMMC host driver for SD card communication
15
```

First, `"#include "board_config.h"` introduces the development board hardware configuration file. This file typically defines SD card interfaces, GPIO pins, and hardware connection information for other peripherals.

Next, `"<Arduino.h>"` is included. This is the core library of the Arduino framework, providing basic APIs such as `Serial`, `delay()`, `setup()`, `loop()`, etc. Therefore, it must be placed in a relatively early position to ensure Arduino functions can be correctly

recognized.

Then "<string.h>" provides standard C language string processing functions (such as strchr(), strlen(), etc.), used for processing string data after file reading.

"<esp_log.h>" and "<esp_err.h>" come from the ESP-IDF underlying development framework, used for log output and error code definition respectively, facilitating the program to print debug information during operation and determine whether function execution was successful.

Next, "`<sys/unistd.h>`" and "`<sys/stat.h>`" belong to the POSIX system interface library, providing system calls related to file operations and file status management, enabling the program to use file read/write interfaces similar to Linux.

Finally, the three groups of header files "`<esp_vfs_fat.h>`", "`<sdmmc_cmd.h>`", and "`<driver/sdmmc_host.h>`" constitute the core of ESP32's SD card file system support: among them, `esp_vfs_fat.h` is responsible for mounting the FAT file system to the Virtual File System (VFS), enabling the program to access the SD card through standard functions such as `fopen()`, `fread()`, `fwrite()`; `sdmmc_cmd.h` provides SD card protocol commands and card information structures; while `sdmmc_host.h` is responsible for the SDMMC host controller driver, used to communicate with the SD card through hardware interfaces (such as CLK, CMD, D0 pins, etc.).

2. Macro Definitions and Global Variables

This code is mainly used to define constants and global variables related to the SD card file system, providing basic data structures for subsequent SD card initialization, file read/write, and task management.

```

49 #define EXAMPLE_MAX_CHAR_SIZE 64 // Maximum character buffer size for file read/write operations
50 #define SD_MOUNT_POINT "/sdcard" // Default SD card mount point path
51 /* _____
52 | | | | | | | | | | | GLOBAL VARIABLES
53 |_____*/
54 static sdmmc_card_t *card;
55 const char sd_mount_point[] = SD_MOUNT_POINT;
56
57 TaskHandle_t sd_task_handle; // Task handle for the SD card test task
58 /*

```

First, `"#define EXAMPLE_MAX_CHAR_SIZE 64"` defines a macro constant used to limit the maximum length of the character buffer for file read/write operations to 64 bytes. This avoids buffer overflow when reading text file content, improving program runtime safety.

Next, `#define SD_MOUNT_POINT "/sdcard"` defines the mount path for the SD card in the system. In ESP32's Virtual File System (VFS), after the SD card is mounted, it will be mapped to the `/sdcard` directory. Therefore, subsequent file operations in the program can directly access files in the SD card through paths like `/sdcard/hello.txt`.

Then a global pointer variable "static sdmmc_card_t *card" is declared. It is used to save the SD card device information structure. After SD card initialization succeeds, this structure will record card type, capacity, operating frequency, and CID/CSD information. The program can obtain detailed hardware information of the SD card through it.

Next, "const char sd_mount_point[] = SD_MOUNT_POINT;" defines a constant string array used to save the SD card mount path. This allows the variable to be uniformly used as the file system path parameter in function calls, improving code maintainability and readability.

Finally, the variable "TaskHandle_t sd_task_handle" is defined. This is a FreeRTOS task handle used to save the control block address of the subsequently created SD card test task (sd_task). Through this handle, task management can be performed, such as querying task status, deleting tasks, or task control.

3. create_file:

Use fopen(filename, "wb") to create a file in binary write mode; Close the file immediately after successful creation; Return ESP_FAIL if opening fails.

Function: Ensure that an empty file exists on the SD card.

```
66  esp_err_t create_file(const char *filename)
67  {
68      SD_INFO("Creating file %s", filename);
69      FILE *file = fopen(filename, "wb");
70      if (!file)
71      {
72          SD_ERROR("Failed to create file");
73          return ESP_FAIL;
74      }
75      fclose(file);
76      SD_INFO("File created");
77      return ESP_OK;
78  }
```

4. write_string_file:

Open the file in text write mode using fopen(filename, "w");

Write the string using fprintf(file, "%s", data);

Close the file after writing.

Function: Save a section of text (string) into a file on the SD card.

```
80  esp_err_t write_string_file(const char *filename, char *data)
81  {
82      SD_INFO("Opening file %s", filename);
83      FILE *file = fopen(filename, "w");
84      if (!file)
85      {
86          SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for writing string");
87          return ESP_FAIL;
88      }
89      fprintf(file, "%s", data);
90      fclose(file);
91      SD_INFO("File written");
92      return ESP_OK;
93  }
```

5. read_string_file:

Open the file for reading;

Use "fgets()" to read a line of text;

Check if there is a newline character "\n", and if so, replace it with a string terminator;

Print the read content.

Function: Read a line of text content from the file and output it to the "log".

```

95     esp_err_t read_string_file(const char *filename)
96     {
97         SD_INFO("Reading file %s", filename);
98         FILE *file = fopen(filename, "r");
99         if (!file)
100         {
101             SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for reading string");
102
103             return ESP_FAIL;
104         }
105         char line[EXAMPLE_MAX_CHAR_SIZE];
106         fgets(line, sizeof(line), file);
107         fclose(file);
108
109         char *pos = strchr(line, '\n');
110         if (pos)
111         {
112             *pos = '\0';
113             SD_INFO("Read a line from file: '%s'", line);
114         }
115         else
116         {
117             SD_INFO("Read from file: '%s'", line);
118             return ESP_OK;
119         }
120     }

```

Note:

The maximum number of characters that can be read here is 64. If you need to read more characters, you will need to adjust the size.

```

Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading.ino    board_config.h

95  esp_err_t read_string_file(const char *filename)
96  {
97      SD_INFO("Reading file %s", filename);
98      FILE *file = fopen(filename, "r");
99      if (!file)
100     {
101         SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for reading string");
102     }
103     return ESP_FAIL;
104 }
105 char line[EXAMPLE_MAX_CHAR_SIZE];
106 fgets(line, sizeof(line), file);
107 fclose(file);

```

```

Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading.ino board_config.h
46 #define SD_INFO(fmt, ...) PRINTF_INFO(fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
47 #define SD_ERROR(fmt, ...) PRINTF_ERROR(fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
48
49 #define EXAMPLE_MAX_CHAR_SIZE 64 // Maximum character buffer size for file read/write operations
50 #define SD_MOUNT_POINT "/sdcard" // Default SD card mount point path
51
52 /*
53 | | | | | | | | | | GLOBAL VARIABLES
54 */

```

6. write_file:

Open the file in binary write mode ("wb");

Use "fwrite()" to write the "data" in memory to the file;

If the number of bytes written is not equal to "size", it indicates a write failure;

Finally, close the file.

Function: Suitable for writing binary data or image files.

```

120  esp_err_t write_file(const char *filename, char *data, size_t size)
121  {
122      size_t success_size = 0;
123      FILE *file = fopen(filename, "wb");
124      if (!file)
125      {
126          SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for writing");
127          return ESP_FAIL;
128      }
129      success_size = fwrite(data, 1, size, file);
130      if (success_size != size)
131      {
132          fclose(file);
133          SD_ERROR("Failed to write file");
134          return ESP_FAIL;
135      }
136      else
137      {
138          fclose(file);
139          SD_INFO("File written");
140      }
141      return ESP_OK;
142  }

```

7. write_file_seek:

Open the file;

Call "fseek()" to move the file write pointer to the specified offset;

Then execute "fwrite()";

Return an error if the operation fails.

Function: Write data at a specific position in the file, commonly used for log appending or data block replacement.

```

144  esp_err_t write_file_seek(const char *filename, void *data, size_t size, int32_t seek)
145  {
146      size_t success_size = 0;
147      FILE *file = fopen(filename, "wb");
148      if (!file)
149      {
150          SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for writing");
151          return ESP_FAIL;
152      }
153      if (fseek(file, seek, SEEK_SET) != 0)
154      {
155          SD_ERROR("Failed to seek file");
156          return ESP_FAIL;
157      }
158      success_size = fwrite(data, 1, size, file);
159      if (success_size != size)
160      {
161          fclose(file);
162          SD_ERROR("Failed to write file");
163          return ESP_FAIL;
164      }
165      else
166      {
167          fclose(file);
168          SD_INFO("File written");
169      }
170      return ESP_OK;
171  }

```

8. read_file:

Open the file;

Use "fread()" to read a fixed-size data from the file;

If the number of bytes read does not match the expected value, an error is reported;

Otherwise, close the file and return success.

Function: Read binary files or fixed-length data blocks.

```
173  esp_err_t read_file(const char *filename, char *data, size_t size)
174  {
175      size_t success_size = 0;
176      FILE *file = fopen(filename, "rb");
177      if (!file)
178      {
179          SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for reading");
180          return ESP_FAIL;
181      }
182      success_size = fread(data, 1, size, file);
183      if (success_size != size)
184      {
185          fclose(file);
186          SD_ERROR("Failed to read file");
187          return ESP_FAIL;
188      }
189      else
190      {
191          fclose(file);
192          SD_INFO("File read success");
193      }
194      return ESP_OK;
195  }
```

9. read_file_size:

Read all data blocks in the file in a loop;

Accumulate the "size" to get the total number of bytes of the file;

Output the total size of the file.

Function: Calculate the file size and verify the correctness of writing.

```
197  esp_err_t read_file_size(const char *read_filename)
198  {
199      size_t read_success_size = 0;
200      size_t size = 0;
201      FILE *read_file = fopen(read_filename, "rb");
202      if (!read_file)
203      {
204          SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for reading");
205          return ESP_FAIL;
206      }
207      uint8_t buffer[1024];
208      while ((read_success_size = fread(buffer, 1, sizeof(buffer), read_file)) > 0)
209      {
210          size += read_success_size;
211      }
212      fclose(read_file);
213      SD_INFO("File read success,success size =%d", size);
214      return ESP_OK;
215  }
```

10. read_write_file:

Open the source file (for reading) and the target file (for writing);

Read 1024-byte content from the source file in blocks;

Write the content to the target file;

Check whether the number of written bytes is consistent with the number of read

bytes;

Finally, close the files and output the message indicating successful copying.

Function: Implement file copying operation.

```

217 esp_err_t read_write_file(const char *read_filename, char *write_filename)
218 {
219     size_t read_success_size = 0;
220     size_t write_success_size = 0;
221     size_t size = 0;
222     FILE *read_file = fopen(read_filename, "rb");
223     FILE *write_file = fopen(write_filename, "wb");
224     if (!read_file)
225     {
226         SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for reading");
227         return ESP_FAIL;
228     }
229     if (!write_file)
230     {
231         SD_ERROR("Failed to open file for writing");
232         return ESP_FAIL;
233     }
234     uint8_t buffer[1024];
235     while ((read_success_size = fread(buffer, 1, sizeof(buffer), read_file)) > 0)
236     {
237         write_success_size = fwrite(buffer, 1, read_success_size, write_file);
238         if (write_success_size != read_success_size)
239         {
240             SD_ERROR("inconsistent reading and writing of data");
241             return ESP_FAIL;
242         }
243         size += write_success_size;
244     }
245     fclose(read_file);
246     fclose(write_file);
247     SD_INFO("File read and write success,success size =%d", size);
248     return ESP_OK;
249 }

```

11. sd_init:

Create an "esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount_config_t" configuration structure to set:

- "format_if_mount_failed = false" → Do not automatically format;
- "max_files = 5" → Maximum 5 files can be opened simultaneously;
- "allocation_unit_size = 16 * 1024" → Each cluster size is 16KB;

Initialize "sdmmc_host_t" and "sdmmc_slot_config_t":

- Set clock, command, and data line pins;
- Set bus width (1-line mode);
- Reduce the clock frequency to 10MHz to improve stability;

Call "esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount()" to mount the SD card file system to "/sdcard";

If successful, print card information.

Function: Mount the SD card and establish the "FAT" file system.

```

251 esp_err_t sd_init()
252 {
253     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
254     esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount_config_t mount_config = {
255         // if SD card file system format is not fat32, mount failed unless ".format_if_mount_failed = true".
256         .format_if_mount_failed = false,
257         .max_files = 5,
258         .allocation_unit_size = 16 * 1024,
259     };
260
261     sdmmc_host_t host = SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT();
262     host.slot = SDMMC_HOST_SLOT_0;
263     host.max_freq_khz = 10000;
264
265     sdmmc_slot_config_t slot_config = SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT();
266     slot_config.clk = (gpio_num_t)SD_GPIO_MMC_CLK;
267     slot_config.cmd = (gpio_num_t)SD_GPIO_MMC_CMD;
268     slot_config.d0 = (gpio_num_t)SD_GPIO_MMC_D0;
269     slot_config.width = 1; // Single-line SDIO
270     slot_config.flags |= SDMMC_SLOT_FLAG_INTERNAL_PULLUP;
271     SD_INFO("Mounting filesystem");
272     err = esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount(sd_mount_point, &host, &slot_config, &mount_config, &card);
273     if (err != ESP_OK) {
274         if (err == ESP_FAIL) {
275             MAIN_INFO("Failed to mount filesystem. "
276                 "If you want the card to be formatted, set the EXAMPLE_FORMAT_IF_MOUNT_FAILED menuconfig option.");
277         } else {
278             MAIN_INFO("Failed to initialize the card (%s). "
279                 "Make sure SD card lines have pull-up resistors in place.", esp_err_to_name(err));
280         }
281         return err;
282     }
283     SD_INFO("Filesystem mounted");
284     sdmmc_card_print_info(stdout, card);
285     return err;
286 }

```

12. get_sd_card_info:

Print detailed information such as the type, capacity, and speed of the SD card to the console.

```

288 void get_sd_card_info()
289 {
290     sdmmc_card_print_info(stdout, card);
291 }
292
293

```

13. format_sd_card:

Call "esp_vfs_fat_sdcard_format()" to format the "FAT" file system;

Output an error message if formatting fails.

Function: Clear the SD card file system and reformat it.

```

293 esp_err_t format_sd_card()
294 {
295     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
296     err = esp_vfs_fat_sdcard_format(sd_mount_point, card);
297     if (err != ESP_OK)
298     {
299         SD_ERROR("Failed to format FATFS (%s)", esp_err_to_name(err));
300         return err;
301     }
302     return err;
303 }

```

14. sd_task

This code implements an SD card test task sd_task based on FreeRTOS, which is used to verify whether the SD card file system can perform read and write operations

normally.

```

305 void sd_task(void *param) // SD card test task function
306 {
307     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK; // Variable to store function return values (error codes)
308
309     const char *file_hello = SD_MOUNT_POINT "/hello.txt"; // File path for SD card test file
310     char *data = "hello world!"; // Data to be written into the file
311
312     // Get SD card information
313     get_sd_card_info(); // Print SD card info such as size, type, and speed
314
315     while (1) // Infinite loop to perform read/write test
316     {
317         // Write data to file
318         err = write_string_file(file_hello, data); // Write the "hello world!" string to the file
319         if (err != ESP_OK) // Check if writing failed
320         {
321             MAIN_ERROR("Write file failed"); // Print error message if writing fails
322             continue; // Continue to next iteration of loop
323         }
324
325         vTaskDelay(200 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS); // Delay 200ms to allow SD card to complete internal operations
326
327         // Read data from file
328         err = read_string_file(file_hello); // Read the content from the written file
329         if (err != ESP_OK) // Check if reading failed
330         {
331             MAIN_ERROR("Read file failed"); // Print error message if reading fails
332         }
333
334         vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS); // Delay 1 second before repeating the test
335         MAIN_INFO("SD card test completed"); // Log message indicating test finished successfully
336         vTaskDelete(NULL); // Delete this task after finishing the test
337     }
338 }

```

The function first defines an "esp_err_t err" variable to save the return results after each function execution (in ESP-IDF, ESP_OK typically indicates success, other values indicate errors). Next, it defines the file path "const char *file_hello = SD_MOUNT_POINT "/hello.txt"". This path indicates creating or accessing a test file named hello.txt in the SD card already mounted to the /sdcard directory. It also defines a string pointer "char *data = "hello world!"" as the test data to be written to the file.

```

305 void sd_task(void *param) // SD card test task function
306 {
307     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK; // Variable to store function return values (error codes)
308
309     const char *file_hello = SD_MOUNT_POINT "/hello.txt"; // File path for SD card test file
310     char *data = "hello world!"; // Data to be written into the file
311

```

At the start of the task, get_sd_card_info() is called to obtain and print the basic information of the SD card, such as capacity, type, and communication speed, which is used to confirm that the SD card has been initialized correctly.

```

312     // Get SD card information
313     get_sd_card_info(); // Print SD card info such as size, type, and speed
314

```

Subsequently, the program enters a "while(1)" loop to execute read and write tests: First, "write_string_file(file_hello, data)" is called to write the string "hello world!" into the hello.txt file. If the writing fails, an error log is output through "MAIN_ERROR()" and the program re-enters the next loop;

```

315     while (1) // Infinite loop to perform read/write test
316     {
317         // Write data to file
318         err = write_string_file(file_hello, data); // Write the "hello world!" string to the file
319         if (err != ESP_OK) // Check if writing failed
320         {
321             MAIN_ERROR("Write file failed"); // Print error message if writing fails
322             continue; // Continue to next iteration of loop
323         }

```

If the writing is successful, the program delays for approximately 200 milliseconds via "vTaskDelay(200 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS)" to allow the SD card a certain amount of time to complete internal write operations. Then, it calls "read_string_file(file_hello)" to read the content from the file just written and print it out; if the reading fails, an error log is also output.

```

325         vTaskDelay(200 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS); // Delay 200ms to allow SD card to complete internal operations
326
327         // Read data from file
328         err = read_string_file(file_hello); // Read the content from the written file
329         if (err != ESP_OK) // Check if reading failed
330         {
331             MAIN_ERROR("Read file failed"); // Print error message if reading fails
332         }
333

```

After completing the read and write operations, the task delays for another 1 second and prints "SD card test completed" to indicate the completion of one SD card read and write test.

```

334         vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS); // Delay 1 second before repeating the test
335         MAIN_INFO("SD card test completed"); // Log message indicating test finished successfully
336         vTaskDelete(NULL); // Delete this task after finishing the test
337     }
338 }
339

```

Finally, "vTaskDelete(NULL)" is called to delete the current task, making the FreeRTOS task end automatically after completing one test. Overall, the function of this function is to complete a complete test process of SD card information reading, file writing and file reading in an independent task to confirm that the SD card and its FAT file system can work normally.

15. Init

This code implements a system initialization function "Init()", whose main function is to complete the initialization of the SD card and ensure its successful mounting. If the initialization fails, it will keep retrying until it succeeds.

```

340 void Init(void) // System initialization function
341 {
342     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK; // Variable to store error codes
343
344     // Initialize SD card
345     err = sd_init(); // Call SD card initialization function
346     // Check if initialization failed
347     while (ESP_OK != err) {
348         MAIN_ERROR("%s initialization failed [ %s ]", "SD card", esp_err_to_name(err)); // Print module name and error description
349         delay(1000);
350         err = sd_init(); // Call SD card initialization function
351     }
352 }

```

At the start of the function, a variable "esp_err_t err = ESP_OK" is defined to store the return status code after the function is executed. Among them, "esp_err_t" is a standard error type used in ESP-IDF to indicate the execution result of a function, and

"ESP_OK" means the execution is successful.

Subsequently, the program calls the "sd_init()" function to attempt to initialize the SD card. This function usually completes operations such as SDMMC interface configuration, SD card communication initialization, and FAT file system mounting, and returns the corresponding execution result.

Then the program judges whether the initialization is successful through "while (ESP_OK != err)". If the return value is not "ESP_OK", it indicates that the SD card initialization has failed, such as the SD card not being inserted, wrong pin connection, or file system mounting failure. At this time, the program will call "MAIN_ERROR()" to print an error log, where "esp_err_to_name(err)" will convert the error code into a readable error name to facilitate debugging and locating the problem.

Then the program delays for 1 second through "delay(1000)" to avoid wasting system resources due to frequent repeated attempts when the initialization fails. After the delay ends, it calls "sd_init()" again to re-initialize the SD card. This process will keep looping until the SD card is successfully initialized and returns "ESP_OK".

16. Setup Section

This code is the "setup()" initialization function in an Arduino program, which is executed only once when the device is powered on or the system starts up. It is mainly responsible for starting the debugging serial port, completing system initialization, and creating a FreeRTOS task for testing the read and write functions of the SD card.

```
354 void setup() {  
355     // put your setup code here, to run once:  
356  
357     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)  
358     Serial.begin(115200);  
359  
360     MAIN_INFO("-----SD card test program start-----\r\n"); // Print program start message  
361  
362     // Initialize system  
363     Init(); // Call initialization function to set up SD card and other components  
364  
365     MAIN_INFO("-----SD card test begin-----\r\n"); // Print message indicating test task has started  
366     // Create SD card test task  
367     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(sd_task, "sd_task", 4096, NULL, 5, &sd_task_handle, 1); // Create a FreeRTOS task to test SD card (core 1)  
368 }
```

First, the program initializes the default serial port (UART0) via "Serial.begin(115200)" and sets the communication baud rate to 115200, so as to output debugging information in the serial monitor.

Subsequently, it calls "MAIN_INFO()" to print the startup prompt "SD card test program start", which is used to indicate that the SD card test program has started running.

Then, it invokes the "Init()" function to perform system initialization. Inside this function, an attempt is made to initialize the SD card and mount the FAT file system. If the initialization fails, it will automatically retry in a loop until successful, thus

ensuring that the SD card is ready before the system proceeds to run.

After the initialization is completed, the program prints the log "SD card test begin" again to prompt that the SD card test is about to start, and then calls "xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()" to create a FreeRTOS task "sd_task" for executing the SD card read and write tests.

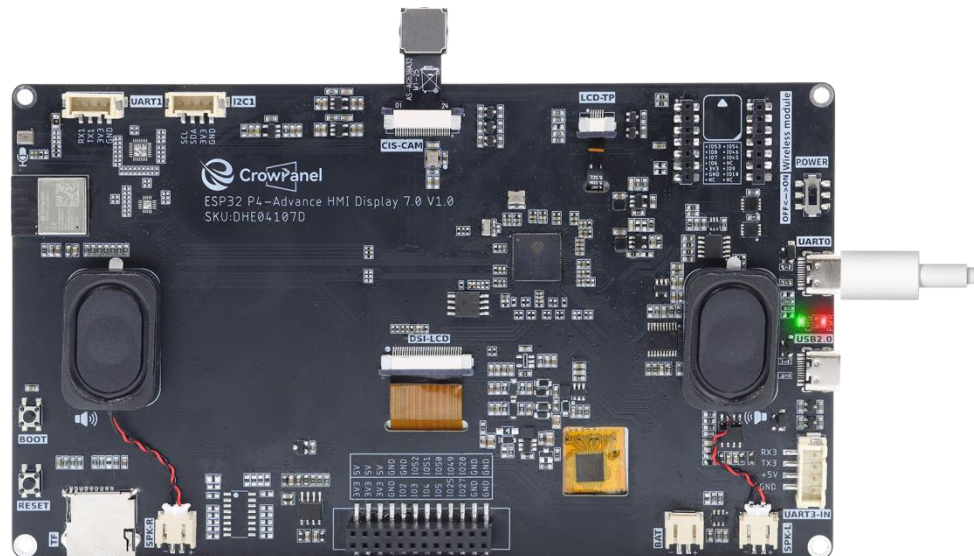
The parameters of this function represent in sequence: the task function is "sd_task", the task name is "sd_task", the task stack size is 4096 bytes, the task parameter is NULL, the task priority is 5, the task handle is saved to the "sd_task_handle" variable, and the task is pinned to run on CPU Core 1.

In this way, the read and write tests of the SD card will run in an independent FreeRTOS task without blocking the main program, thereby achieving a more stable and efficient system operation.

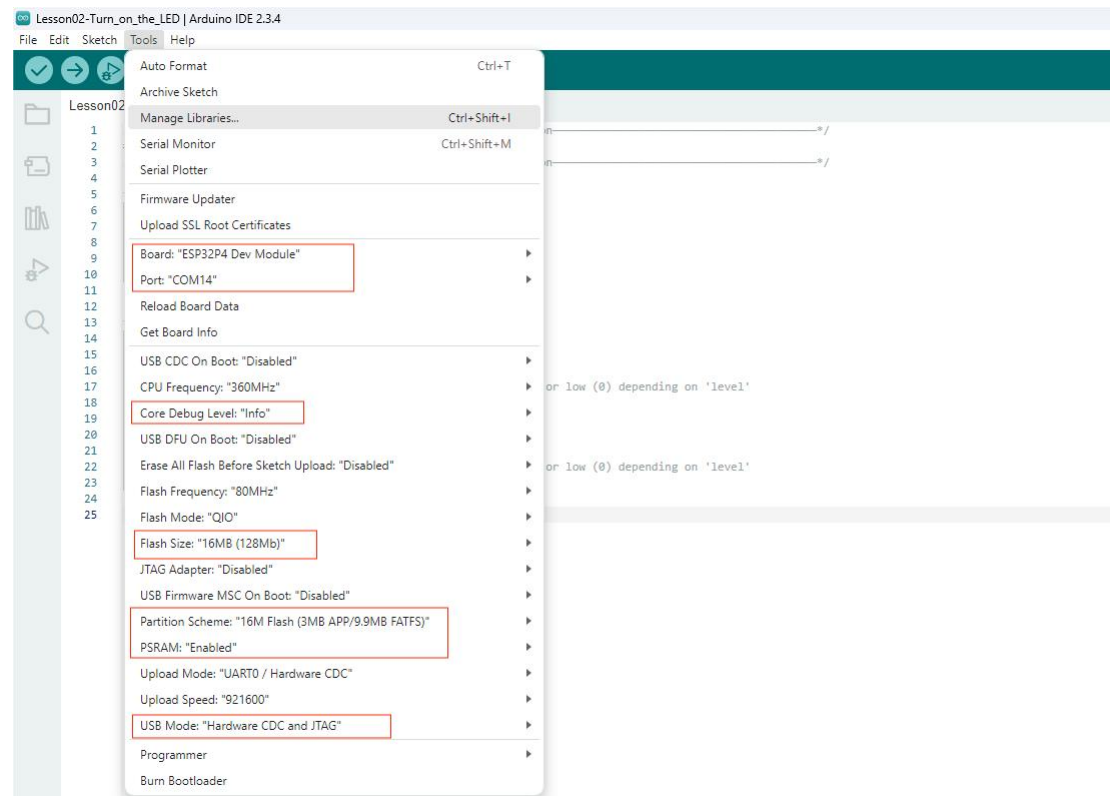
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

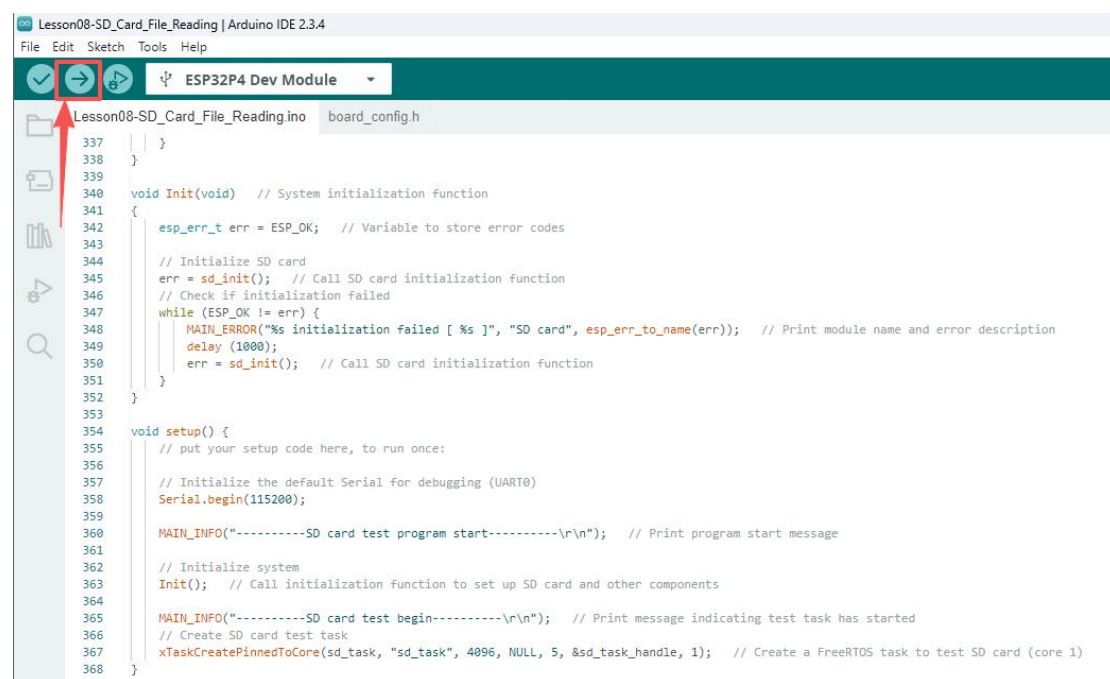
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



After running the code, you will be able to visually see that a file named "hello.txt" appears in the SD card, with the content "hello world!" already written in it.

Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading | Arduino IDE 2.3.4

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

ESP32P4 Dev Module

Lesson08-SD_Card_File_Reading.ino board_config.h

```

353
354 void setup() {
355     // put your setup code here, to run once:
356
357     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
358     Serial.begin(115200);
359
360     MAIN_INFO("-----SD card test program start-----\r\n"); // Print program start message
361
362     // Initialize system
363     Init(); // Call initialization function to set up SD card and other components
364
365     MAIN_INFO("-----SD card test begin-----\r\n"); // Print message indicating test task has started
366     // Create SD card test task
367     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(sd_task, "sd_task", 4096, NULL, 5, &sd_task_handle, 1); // Create a FreeRTOS task to test SD card (core 1)

```

Output Serial Monitor x

Message (Enter to send message to 'ESP32P4 Dev Module' on 'COM14')

```

[INFO] -----SD card test program start-----

[INFO] Mounting filesystem
[INFO] Filesystem mounted
Name: SD
Type: SDHC
Speed: 10.00 MHz (limit: 10.00 MHz)
Size: 119275MB
CSD: ver=2, sector_size=512, capacity=244275200 read_bl_len=9
SSR: bus_width=1
[INFO] -----SD card test begin-----

Name: SD
Type: SDHC
Speed: 10.00 MHz (limit: 10.00 MHz)
Size: 119275MB
CSD: ver=2, sector_size=512, capacity=244275200 read_bl_len=9
SSR: bus_width=1
[INFO] Opening file /sdcard/hello.txt
[INFO] File written
[INFO] Reading file /sdcard/hello.txt
[INFO] Read from file: 'hello world!'
[INFO] SD card test completed

```

Lesson09--- LVGL Lighting Control

Introduction

In previous courses, we separately lit an LED, implemented touch testing, and lit up the screen. In this lesson, we will use LVGL to create two buttons to control the LED connected to the UART1 interface for turning on and off operations.

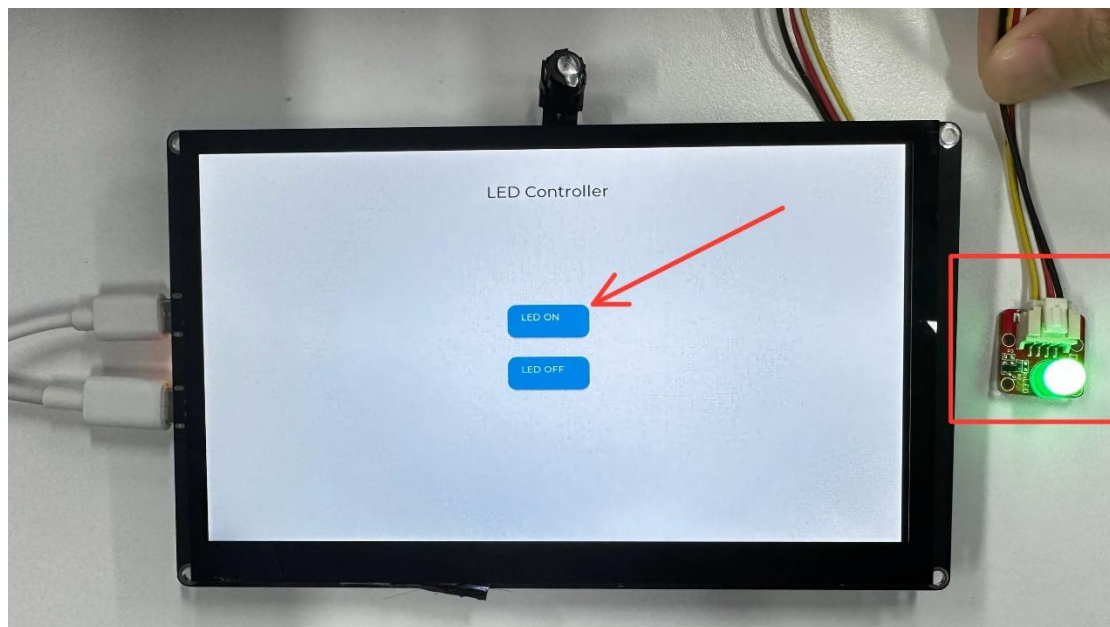
Pressing the ON button can turn on the LED, and pressing the OFF button can turn off the LED.

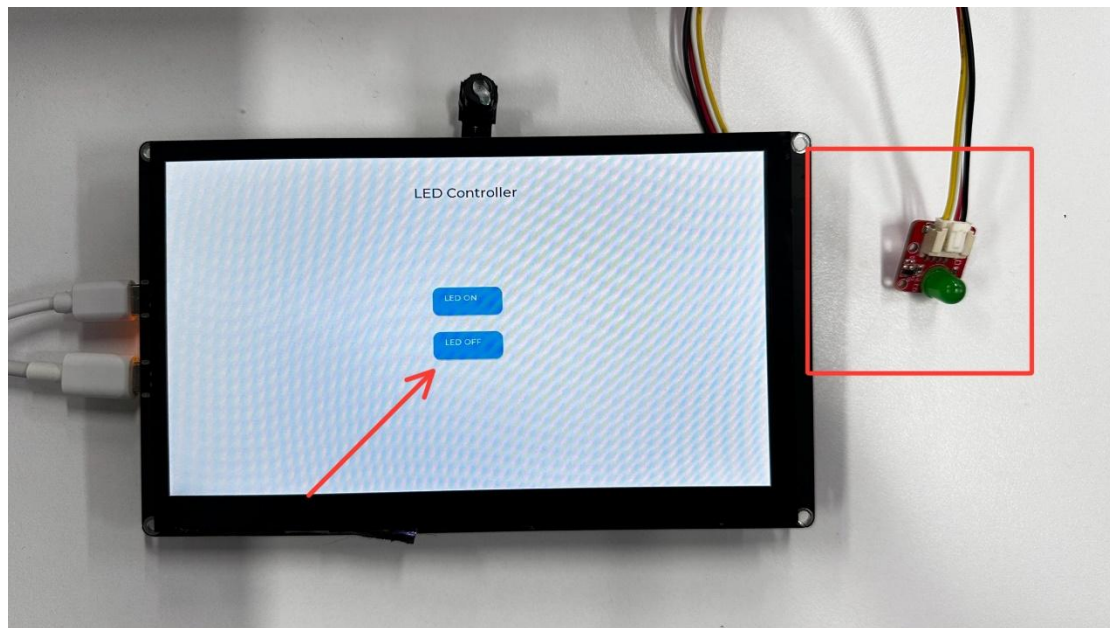
Learning Goals

1. Understand the GPIO pin configuration of the ESP32-P4 development board and the hardware control principle of the LED (the UART1 interface is connected to the LED).
2. Master the UI creation methods of the LVGL graphics library, including the drawing and layout of buttons and labels, as well as the binding of callback functions for button click events.
3. Master the linkage method between LVGL and the touch screen/display driver, and realize the complete process from touch interface operation to hardware (LED) control.

Preview of the Result

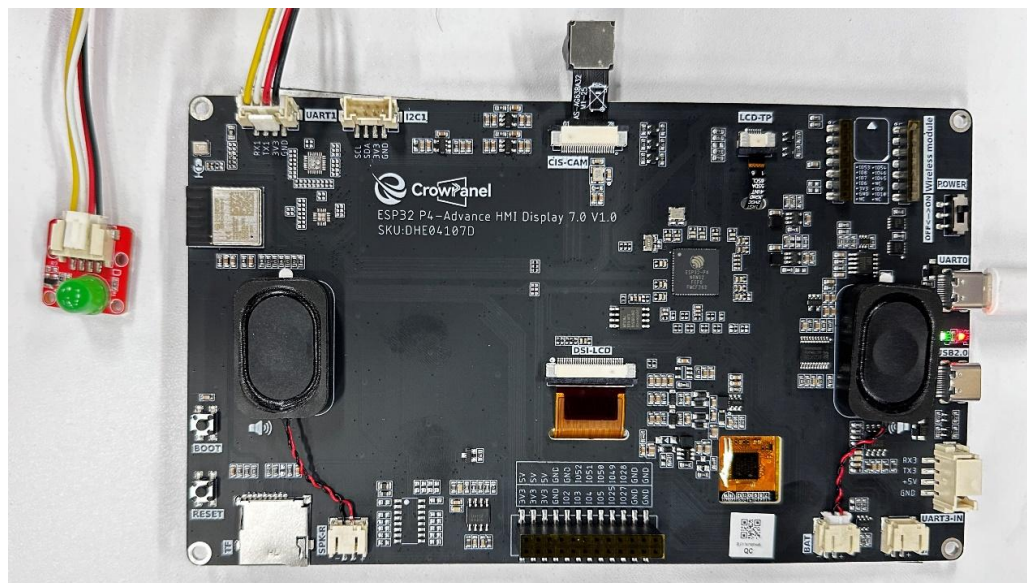
After running the code, when you press the "LED ON" button on the Advance-P4, you will be able to turn on the LED; when you press the "LED OFF" button, you will be able to turn off the LED.





Hardware Used in This Lesson

The UART1 interface on the Advance-P4 is connected to an LED.



Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson09-LVGL_Lighting_Control

Key Explanations

How to bind the screen touch with the LVGL interface? And how to light up the LED light by touching the LVGL interface? Next, let's explore these questions together.

Double-click to open the code (ino file) for this lesson.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
libraries	2026/3/6 9:21	File folder	
board_config.h	2026/3/5 12:14	C Header 源文件	2 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
Lesson09-LVGL_Lighting_Control.ino	2026/2/28 16:30	INO File	10 KB
lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

After opening it, you can see the code of this project, the configuration file "board_config.h", as well as other related screen driver files.

In the preface, we have already imported all the library files into the Arduino's "libraries" folder. If you haven't done so, please follow the instructions in the preface to import all the library files into the "libraries" folder of Arduino.

First, let's take a look at the content in board_config.h.

```

1  #pragma once
2
3  /***** Pin define *****/
4  // GPIO pins for LED module
5  #define PIN_LED           (48)    // 1:Turn on LED, 0:Turn off LED
6  #define LED_ON            ( 1)
7  #define LED_OFF           ( 0)
8
9  // GPIO pins for GT911 touch panel
10 #define Touch_GPIO_RST    (40)    // Reset pin
11 #define Touch_GPIO_INT    (42)    // Interrupt pin
12
13 // GPIO pins for I2C, has touch chip GT911
14 #define I2C_GPIO_SCL      (46)    // GPIO number used for I2C SCL (clock) line
15 #define I2C_GPIO_SDA      (45)    // GPIO number used for I2C SDA (data) line
16
17 // GPIO pins for display backlight
18 #define LCD_GPIO_BLIGHT   (31)    // LCD Blight GPIO
19 #define BLIGHT_PWM_Hz     (30000) // LCD Blight PWM Hz
20 #define BLIGHT_ON_LEVEL   (1)     // Active level, 0: low, 1: high
21
22 // GPIO pins for display
23 #define LCD_GPIO_RST      (41)    // LCD Blight GPIO
24
25 // panel parameters
26 #define V_size             (600)   // Vertical resolution (Y-axis)
27 #define H_size             (1024)  // Horizontal resolution (X-axis)
28 #define LCD_CLK_MHZ        (51)
29 #define LCD_HPW            (70)
30 #define LCD_HBP            (160)
31 #define LCD_HFP            (160)
32 #define LCD_VPW            (10)
33 #define LCD_VBP            (23)
34 #define LCD_VFP            (21)
35 /***** Pin define *****/
36

```

This code is a hardware configuration header file, which is mainly used to centrally define the GPIO pins used by various peripherals on the development board and the display-related parameters, so as to facilitate unified calling and management throughout the program. At the beginning of the file, the "#pragma once" directive is used to prevent the header file from being included repeatedly, thereby avoiding the problem of duplicate definitions during compilation.

Subsequently, the code declares the pins and parameters of different hardware modules through a series of "#define" macro definitions: first, it defines the GPIO pin of the LED module, where "PIN_LED" is GPIO48, and specifies the on and off levels of the LED through the "LED_ON" and "LED_OFF" macros;

Then it defines the pins of the GT911 touch screen controller, including "Touch_GPIO_RST" (GPIO40, used for touch chip reset) and "Touch_GPIO_INT" (GPIO42, used for touch interrupt signal);

Next, it defines the I2C bus pins: "I2C_GPIO_SCL" is GPIO46 (clock line), and "I2C_GPIO_SDA" is GPIO45 (data line). This I2C bus is used to communicate with the GT911 touch control chip.

After that, the code defines the parameters related to LCD backlight control, among which "LCD_GPIO_BLIGHT" is the backlight control pin (GPIO31), "BLIGHT_PWM_Hz" sets the PWM dimming frequency to 30kHz, and "BLIGHT_ON_LEVEL" indicates that the effective level of the backlight is high level.

Then it defines the LCD display reset pin "LCD_GPIO_RST" (GPIO41), which is used to perform hardware reset on the display when the system starts up.

The last part is the timing and resolution parameters of the display panel, including the screen resolution "H_size=1024" (horizontal pixels) and "V_size=600" (vertical pixels), as well as the timing parameters required by the MIPI/LCD driver, such as pixel clock "LCD_CLK_MHZ", horizontal sync pulse width "LCD_HPW", horizontal front/back porch (HFP/HBP), and vertical sync pulse width and front/back porch (VPW/VBP/VFP). These parameters determine how the display controller correctly drives the screen refresh.

(The meaning and function of each file here have been explained in detail in Lesson 7, so we will not elaborate on them here. If you have any questions, you can review the content of the previous lessons.)

Next, we will focus on learning the main ".ino" code file to see how to realize LED lighting control through the LVGL interface.

(The specific explanations of header files, namespaces, macro definitions and global

variables have been detailed in Lesson 7, so we will not go into too much detail here.)

```

14 #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15 #include <Arduino.h> // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17 #include <string.h> // C string lib
18 #include <esp_log.h> // ESP-IDF logging library
19 #include <esp_err.h> // ESP-IDF error codes
20 #include <esp_ldo_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22 #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
23 #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
24 #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
25
26 #include <lvgl.h>
27 #include "lvgl_v8_port.h"
28
29 using namespace esp_panel::drivers;
30 using namespace esp_panel::board;
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62 #define LV_COLOR_RED lv_color_make(0xFF, 0x00, 0x00) // LVGL Red
63 #define LV_COLOR_GREEN lv_color_make(0x00, 0xFF, 0x00) // LVGL Green
64 #define LV_COLOR_BLUE lv_color_make(0x00, 0x00, 0xFF) // LVGL Blue
65 #define LV_COLOR_WHITE lv_color_make(0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF) // LVGL White
66 #define LV_COLOR_BLACK lv_color_make(0x00, 0x00, 0x00) // LVGL Black
67 #define LV_COLOR_GRAY lv_color_make(0x80, 0x80, 0x80) // LVGL gray
68 #define LV_COLOR_YELLOW lv_color_make(0xFF, 0xFF, 0x00) // LVGL yellow
69
70 /*
71 | | | | | | | | | | GLOBAL VARIABLES
72 | | | | | | | | | |
73 */
74 static const char *TAG = "TOUCH_APP"; // Tag for logging messages
75
76 // --- Declare the panel pointer globally ---
77 ESP_Panel *panel = nullptr;
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99

```

1. Callback Functions

This code defines two LVGL button event callback functions, which are used to control the on and off of the LED on the development board when the user clicks the screen buttons, and output log information through the serial port.

```

84 /* Button callback function - turn on LED */
85 static void btn_on_click_event(lv_event_t *e)
86 {
87     (void)e;
88     digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LED_ON); // Turn on LED on GPIO48
89     MAIN_INFO("LED turned ON");
90 }
91
92 /* Button callback function - turn off LED */
93 static void btn_off_click_event(lv_event_t *e)
94 {
95     (void)e;
96     digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LED_OFF); // Turn off LED on GPIO48
97     MAIN_INFO("LED turned OFF");
98 }
99

```

The first function `btn_on_click_event(lv_event_t *e)` serves as the event handler for

the LED turn-on button. When the user clicks the "LED ON" button on the touch screen interface and triggers the LV_EVENT_CLICKED event, LVGL invokes this function. The function parameter `lv_event_t *e` is an LVGL event structure that contains information such as the object that triggered the event and the event type. However, it is not utilized in this example, so `(void)e;` is used to explicitly mark it as an unused parameter to prevent compiler warnings. Subsequently, the function calls `digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LED_ON)` to set the GPIO pin defined as `PIN_LED` (GPIO48 in the code) to the `LED_ON` level, thereby lighting up the LED, and outputs an info-level log via `MAIN_INFO("LED turned ON")` to indicate that the LED has been turned on.

The second function `btn_off_click_event(lv_event_t *e)` features essentially the same structure and logic. It is used to handle the click event of the LED turn-off button: when the user clicks the "LED OFF" button, the function also ignores the event parameter `e`, then calls `digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LED_OFF)` to set GPIO48 to the level state that turns off the LED, thus turning off the LED, and prints log information via `MAIN_INFO("LED turned OFF")`.

2. UI Interface Creation

This code defines a function `create_led_control_ui()` for creating an LED control interface (UI) based on the LVGL graphics library. Its main function is to draw a title and two buttons on the screen, and bind the button click events to the LED control functions, thereby realizing the control of the on and off of the development board's LED through the touch screen.

At the start of the function, `lvgl_port_lock(-1)` is called to lock LVGL. This is because LVGL may be accessed by different tasks in a multi-tasking environment such as ESP32's FreeRTOS, and locking ensures that the UI creation process is thread-safe. The parameter `-1` means to wait indefinitely until the lock is acquired; if the locking fails, an error message is printed via `MAIN_ERROR()` and the function returns directly.

```
100  /* Create LED control UI */
101  static void create_led_control_ui(void)
102  {
103      // Lock LVGL: ensure thread-safe operations
104      if (lvgl_port_lock(-1) != true) { // 0 means non-blocking wait for the lock (timeout = 0)
105          MAIN_ERROR("LVGL lock failed"); // Print error if lock fails
106          return; // Exit function
107      }
```

Subsequently, `"lv_scr_act()"` is called to get the current active screen object `"scr"`, and `"lv_obj_set_style_bg_color()"` is used to set the screen background color to white. Then a label object `"label"` is created as the interface title, which is added to the screen via `"lv_label_create(scr)"`, and `"lv_label_set_text()"` is used to set the text content to `"LED Controller"`. In addition, `"lv_obj_align()"` is used to align it to the center of the top of the screen, and `"lv_obj_set_style_text_font()"` is used to set the font to `"lv_font_montserrat_24"` for a larger display effect.

```

108 // Create main screen
109 lv_obj_t *scr = lv_scr_act();
110 lv_obj_set_style_bg_color(scr, lv_color_hex(0xFFFFFF), LV_PART_MAIN); // Set white background
111
112 // Create title label
113 lv_obj_t *label = lv_label_create(scr);
114 lv_label_set_text(label, "LED Controller");
115 lv_obj_align(label, LV_ALIGN_TOP_MID, 0, 50);
116 // Font size
117 lv_obj_set_style_text_font(label, &lv_font_montserrat_24, 0);
118

```

Afterwards, the program creates the first button "btn_on", sets its size to 120×50 , and places it at a position slightly above the center of the screen. Then "lv_obj_add_event_cb()" is used to bind the button click event "LV_EVENT_CLICKED" to the callback function "btn_on_click_event", so that the LED lighting operation will be executed when the user clicks this button.

```

119 // Create LED ON button
120 lv_obj_t *btn_on = lv_btn_create(scr);
121 lv_obj_set_size(btn_on, 120, 50);
122 lv_obj_align(btn_on, LV_ALIGN_CENTER, 0, -40);
123 lv_obj_add_event_cb(btn_on, btn_on_click_event, LV_EVENT_CLICKED, NULL);
124

```

A label object "label_on" is then created inside the button to display the button text "LED ON".

```

125 // ON button label
126 lv_obj_t *label_on = lv_label_create(btn_on);
127 lv_label_set_text(label_on, "LED ON");
128

```

Next, the same method is used to create the second button "btn_off", which is placed slightly below the center of the screen. Its click event is bound to "btn_off_click_event" to turn off the LED, and a text label "LED OFF" is added inside the button. Finally, "lvgl_port_unlock()" is called to release the previously acquired LVGL lock, allowing other tasks to access LVGL continuously.

```

129 // Create LED OFF button
130 lv_obj_t *btn_off = lv_btn_create(scr);
131 lv_obj_set_size(btn_off, 120, 50);
132 lv_obj_align(btn_off, LV_ALIGN_CENTER, 0, 40);
133 lv_obj_add_event_cb(btn_off, btn_off_click_event, LV_EVENT_CLICKED, NULL);
134
135 // OFF button label
136 lv_obj_t *label_off = lv_label_create(btn_off);
137 lv_label_set_text(label_off, "LED OFF");
138
139 lvgl_port_unlock();
140

```

3. Setup Section

This setup() function serves as the system initialization entry point for the entire program, and is executed only once after the device is powered on or reset. Its main tasks are to sequentially complete serial port debugging initialization, power supply

(LDO) configuration, display and touch screen driver initialization, LVGL graphics library startup, LED control GPIO initialization, and finally create the graphical user interface (UI).

The program first starts the default debugging serial port (UART0) via `Serial.begin(115200)` and sets the baud rate to 115200, so as to output running information and debugging logs in the serial monitor.

Subsequently, it starts configuring the power supply of the ESP32-P4: first, it configures the LDO3 voltage regulation channel, setting `chan_id = 3` and `voltage_mv = 2500` through the `esp_ldo_channel_config_t` structure, which means setting the output voltage of LDO3 to 2.5V—this voltage is typically used to power the MIPI D-PHY display interface.

Then it calls `esp_ldo_acquire_channel()` to apply for the LDO channel and enable the power supply; if it fails, an error message is printed, otherwise a prompt indicating successful power supply startup is output.

Next, the program configures the LDO4 voltage regulation channel in the same way, setting the voltage to 3.3V, which is usually used to power the I2C bus and touch screen pull-up resistors to ensure the normal operation of the touch controller.

```
142 void setup() {
143     // put your setup code here, to run once:
144
145     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
146     Serial.begin(115200);
147
148     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
149     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
150     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
151     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
152     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
153     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
154         .chan_id = 3,           // LDO Channel 3
155         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
156     };
157
158     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
159     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
160     if (err != ESP_OK) {
161         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
162     } else {
163         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
164     }
165
166     // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
167     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
168     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
169         .chan_id = 4,           // LDO Channel 4
170         .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
171     };
172
173     Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
174     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
175     if (err != ESP_OK) {
176         Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
177     } else {
178         Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
179     }
180 }
```

Upon power-on initialization completion, the program instantiates a "Board" object (designated as "board") to manage the hardware drivers for the display panel and touchscreen. It subsequently invokes "board->init()" to initialize the underlying MIPI-DSI communication bus, along with the device drivers for the EK79007 LCD controller and the GT911 touch controller.

```
181 // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
182 Board *board = new Board();
183 // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
184 Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
185 assert(board->init());
```

If the "LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE" (tear-free mode) is enabled, the code additionally retrieves the LCD object and configures the frame buffer count via "configFrameBufferNumber()" to mitigate image tearing issues during screen refresh cycles.

```
186 #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
187     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
188     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
189     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
190 #endif
```

Subsequently, "board->begin()" is invoked to boot up the entire display and touch system, followed by a console output of "Display and Touch system online." to indicate that both the screen and touch functionality are fully operational.

```
191 assert(board->begin());
192 Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
193
```

The program then proceeds to initialize the LVGL graphics library, binding it to the LCD display driver and touch input device through "lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch())", thereby enabling LVGL to handle screen rendering and touch event processing.

```
194 Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
195 lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
196
```

The program then initializes GPIO pin 48 for LED control: it configures the pin as output mode using "pinMode(PIN_LED, OUTPUT)", sets the LED default state to off via "digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LED_OFF)", and outputs a log message indicating the LED has been initialized.

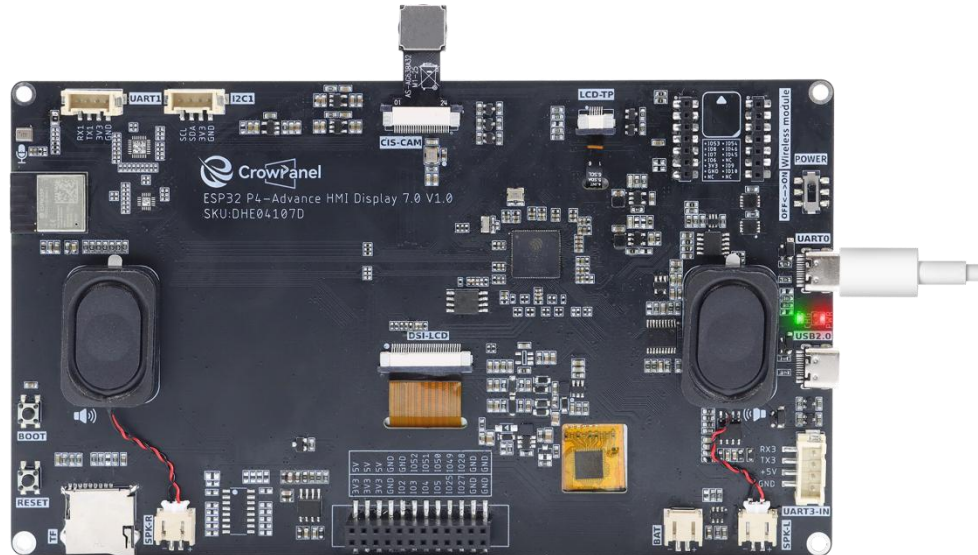
```
197 Serial.println("Creating UI");
198
199 // Initialize LED control GPIO (GPIO48)
200 MAIN_INFO("Initializing GPIO48 for LED...");
201
202 pinMode(PIN_LED, OUTPUT);
203 digitalWrite(PIN_LED, LED_OFF);
204 MAIN_INFO("LED initialized to OFF state");
205
206 create_led_control_ui();
207
208
```

Finally, "create_led_control_ui()" is invoked to construct the graphical interface, generating an LED control panel on the screen (comprising a title and ON/OFF buttons), thereby allowing users to control the onboard LED through touchscreen interactions.

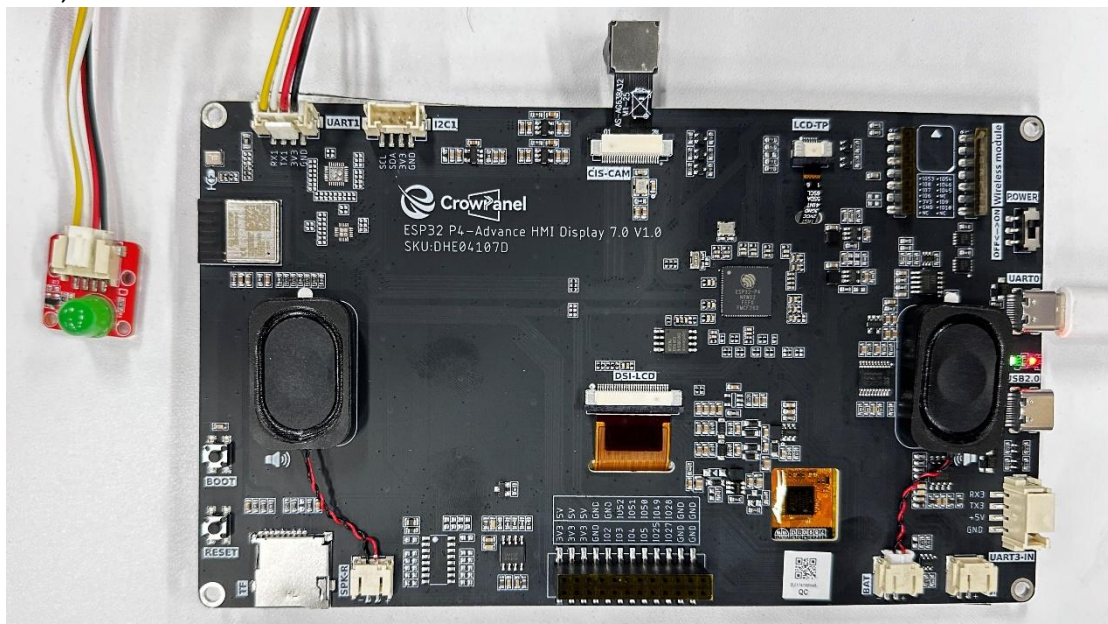
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

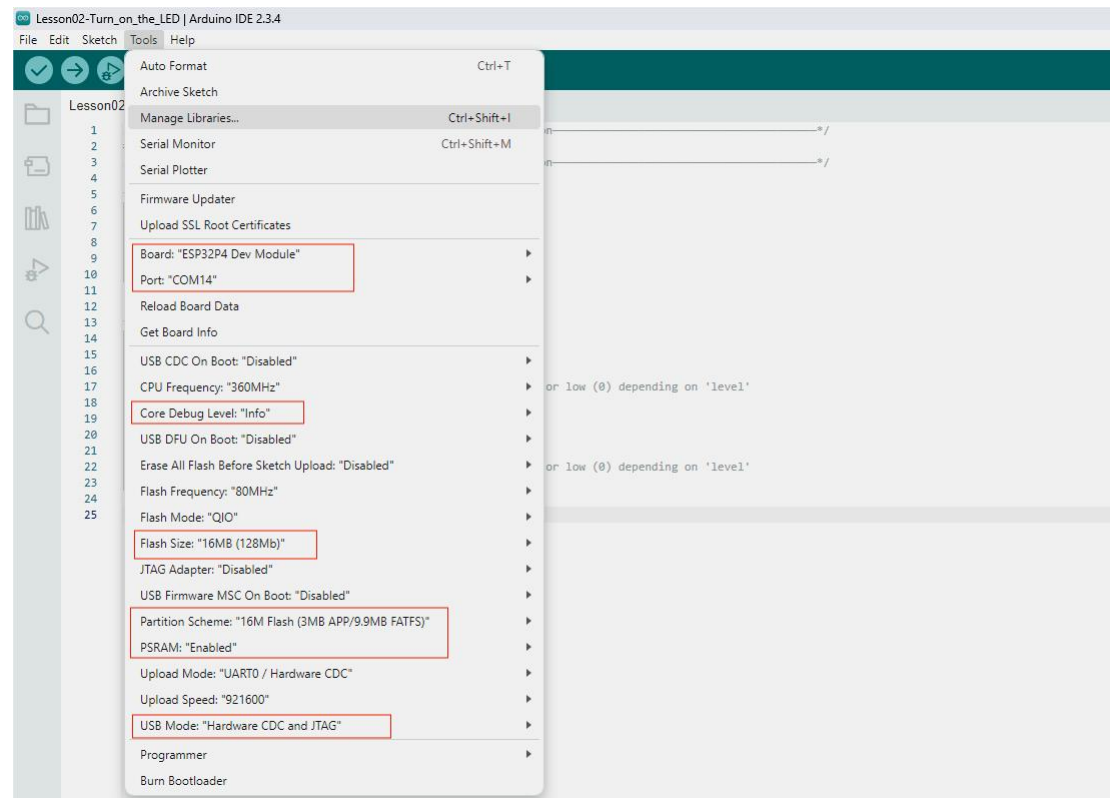
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



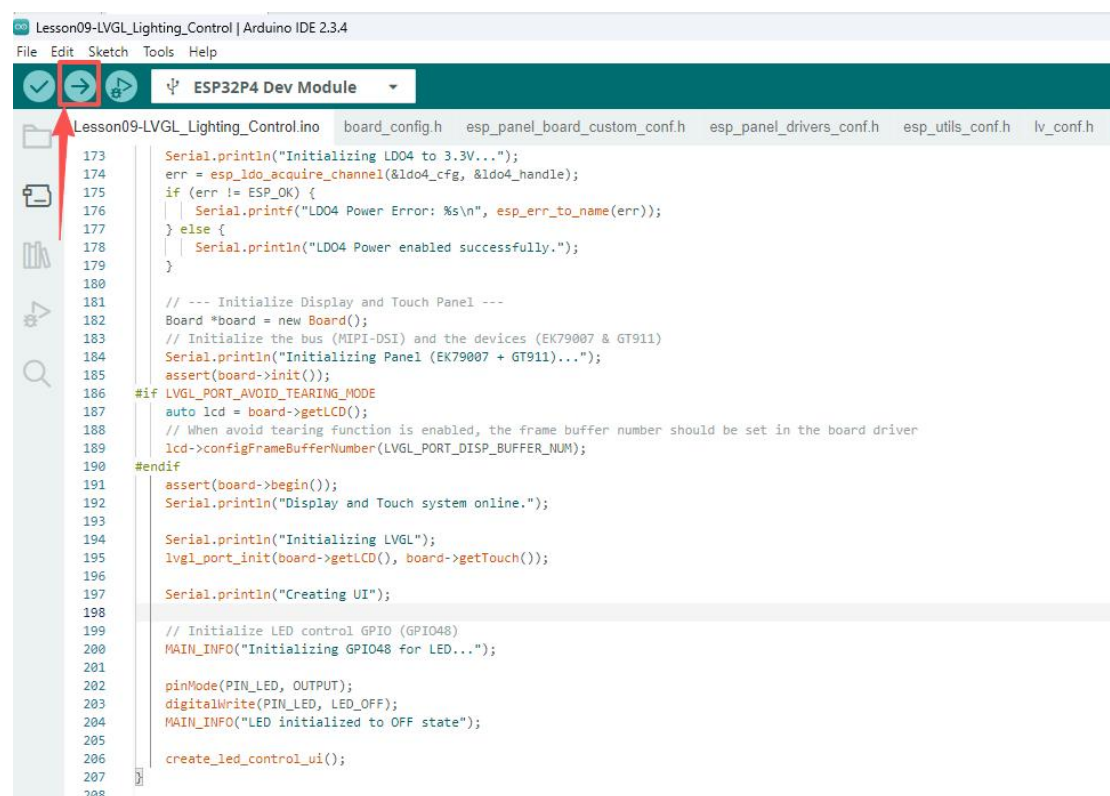
Also, remember to connect an LED to the UART1 interface.



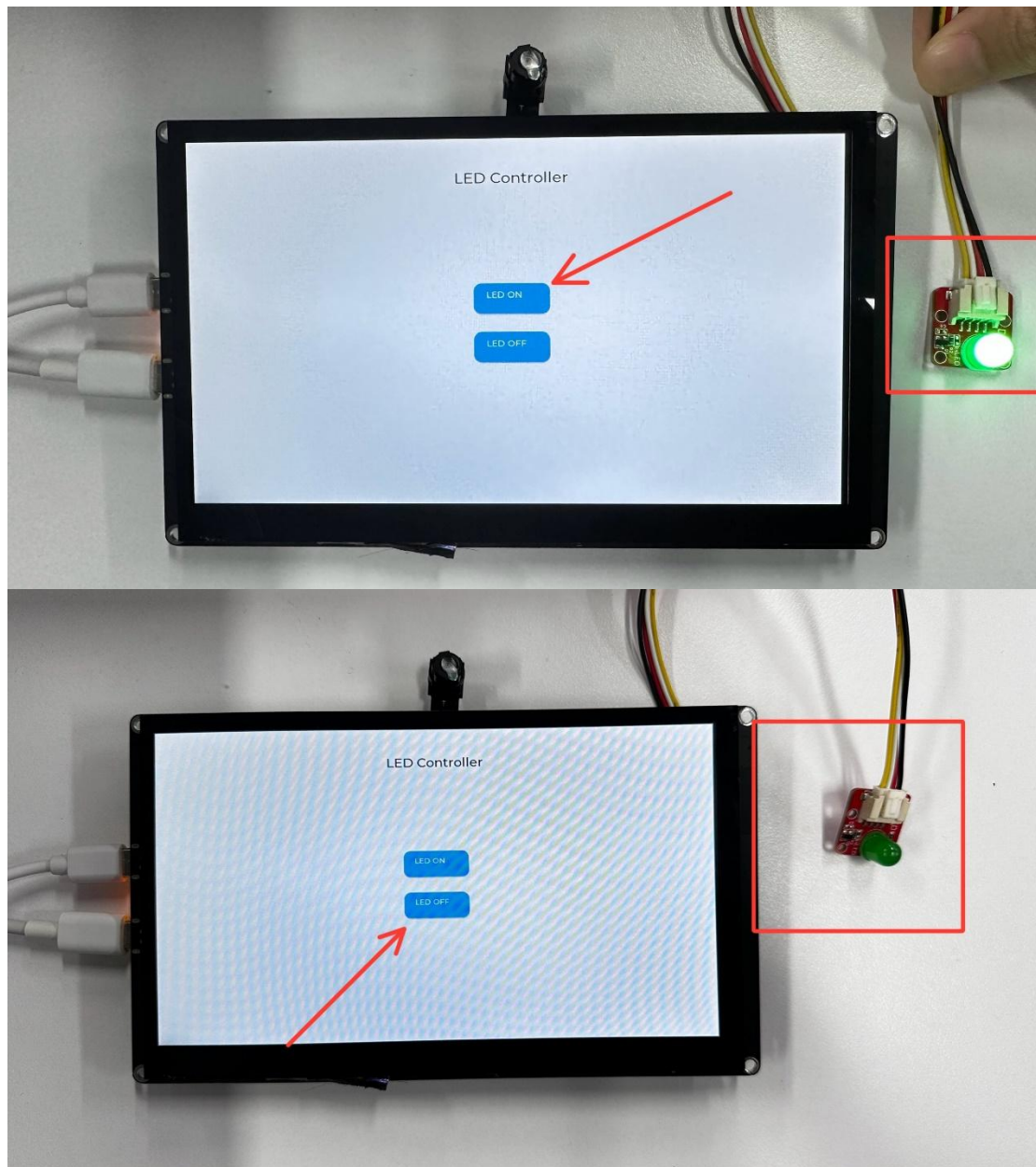
Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



After running the code, when you tap the "LED ON" button on the Advance-P4's touchscreen, you will be able to turn on the LED; tapping the "LED OFF" button will allow you to turn off the LED.



Lesson10---Temperature and Humidity

Introduction

In this lesson, we will guide you through using the I2C interface on the Advance-P4 development board. We will connect a temperature and humidity sensor to the I2C interface, then display the acquired sensor values on the screen.

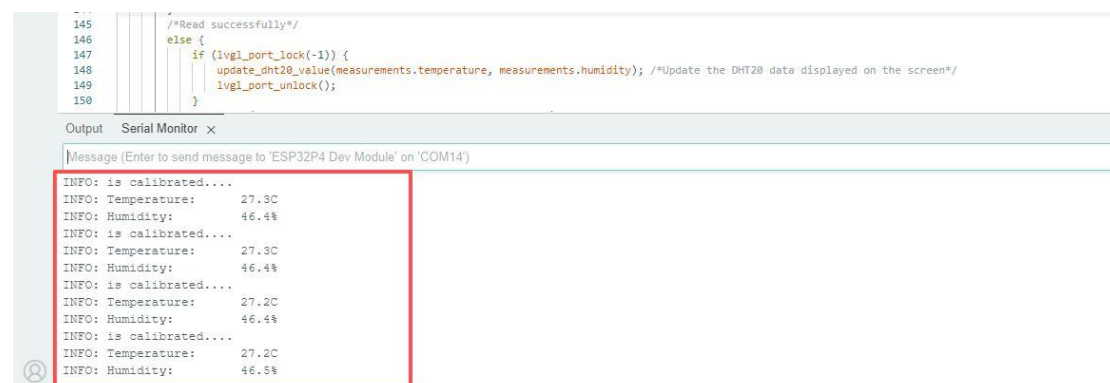
The key learning objective of this lesson is mastering the usage of the I2C interface.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the I2C bus communication principles of the ESP32-P4 development board and the operational mechanisms of the DHT20 temperature and humidity sensor (humidity/temperature detection principles).
2. Master the initialization and configuration of the I2C bus, as well as the methods for invoking the DHT20 sensor driver (initialization, calibration detection, data reading, and CRC verification).
3. Master the implementation of dynamic updates for LVGL text labels, completing the end-to-end workflow from sensor data acquisition to real-time on-screen display of temperature and humidity readings.

Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to visually see the real-time temperature and humidity collected by the temperature and humidity sensor displayed on the screen of the Advance-P4.



The screenshot shows an IDE with a code editor at the top and a serial monitor at the bottom. The code editor displays C++ code for reading sensor data. The serial monitor shows the output of the program, which includes calibration status and real-time temperature and humidity readings. A red box highlights the output data.

```
145     /*Read successfully*/
146     else {
147         if (lvgl_port_lock(-1)) {
148             update_dht20_value(measurements.temperature, measurements.humidity); /*Update the DHT20 data displayed on the screen*/
149             lvgl_port_unlock();
150         }
    }
```

Output Serial Monitor x

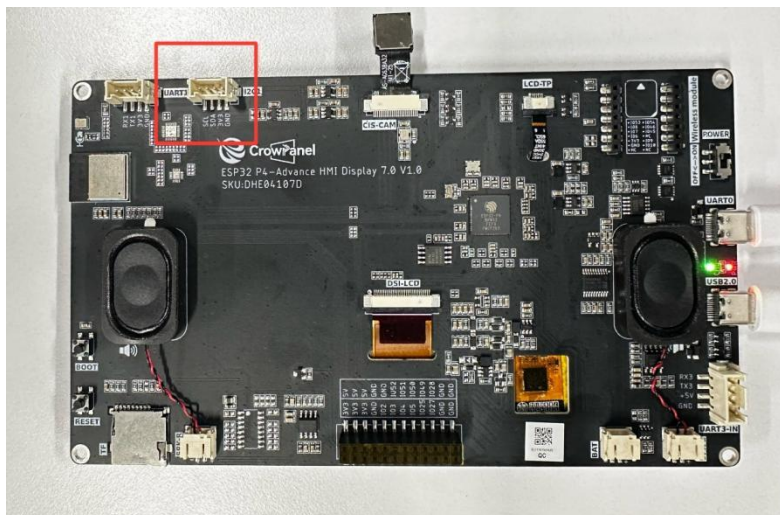
Message (Enter to send message to 'ESP32P4 Dev Module' on 'COM14')

```
INFO: is calibrated....
INFO: Temperature:    27.3C
INFO: Humidity:       46.4%
INFO: is calibrated....
INFO: Temperature:    27.3C
INFO: Humidity:       46.4%
INFO: is calibrated....
INFO: Temperature:    27.2C
INFO: Humidity:       46.4%
INFO: is calibrated....
INFO: Temperature:    27.2C
INFO: Humidity:       46.5%
```

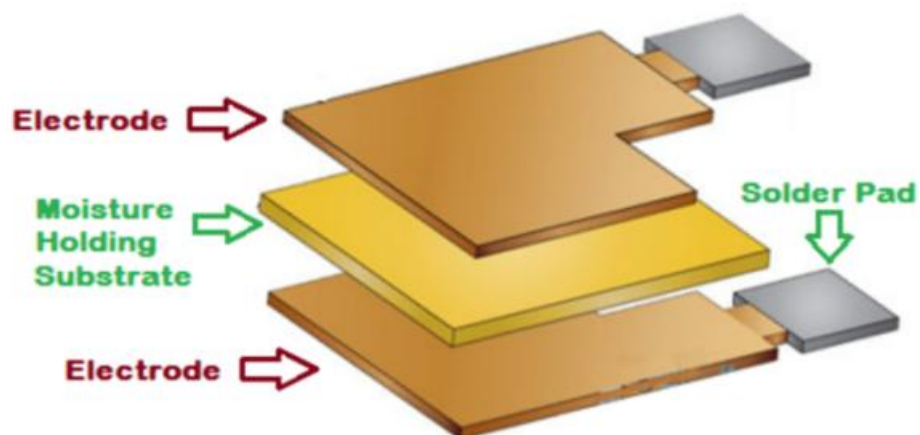


Hardware Used in This Lesson

I2C Interface on the Advance-P4



temperature and humidity sensor Schematic Diagram



In the temperature and humidity sensor, humidity detection relies on hygroscopic materials. These materials absorb or release water in response to changes in environmental humidity, thereby altering their own electrical properties (such as resistance, capacitance, etc.).

The sensor obtains humidity information by detecting the changes in the electrical signal between the material and the electrodes. Temperature detection typically uses thermal-sensitive elements (such as thermistors). When the temperature changes, the resistance value of the thermal-sensitive element changes. The sensor measures this resistance change and converts it to obtain the temperature value.

Finally, it combines the data from both to determine the temperature and humidity conditions.

If you want to purchase, you can click the link below to learn more about this module.

Purchase link: <https://www.electrow.com/crowtail-dht20.html>

Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Electrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson10-Temperature_and_Humidity

Key Explanations

How do we use the I2C protocol? And how do we read data from a temperature and humidity sensor via the I2C interface? Let's dive into the code implementation together.

Double-click to open the code for this lesson (the .ino file).

 libraries	2026/3/6 9:22	File folder	
 board_config.h	2026/3/5 12:15	C Header 源文件	2 KB
 bsp_dht20.c	2026/3/5 9:48	C 源文件	9 KB
 bsp_dht20.h	2026/3/5 10:48	C Header 源文件	3 KB
 bsp_i2c.c	2026/3/5 10:58	C 源文件	6 KB
 bsp_i2c.h	2026/3/5 10:58	C Header 源文件	3 KB
 esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
 esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
 esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
 Lesson10-Temperature_and_Humidity.ino	2026/3/5 12:16	INO File	12 KB
 lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
 lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
 lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

Once opened, you will see the project code along with the configuration file "board_config.h", as well as other relevant display driver files.

In the preface, we have already imported all the library files into the Arduino's "libraries" folder. If you haven't done so, please follow the instructions in the preface to import all the library files into the "libraries" folder of Arduino.

Compared to the pure text display framework from Lesson 7, this project's framework includes additional components for "bsp_dht20" and "bsp_i2c".

Temperature and Humidity Acquisition Code

The driver code for the temperature and humidity sensor consists of two files: "bsp_dht20.c" and "bsp_dht20.h".

Next, we will first analyze the "bsp_dht20.h" program.

"bsp_dht20.h" is the header file for the temperature and humidity acquisition module, and its main purposes are:

- To declare the functions, macros, and variables implemented in "bsp_dht20.c" for use by external programs. This allows other .c files to call functions from this module simply by adding #include "bsp_dht20.h".
- In other words, it acts as an interface layer — it exposes which functions and constants are available for external use while hiding the internal implementation details of the module.

In this component, all the libraries we need to use are included in the "bsp_dht20.h" file, enabling unified management.

```

4  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
5  #include <string.h>           //References for string Function-related API Functions
6  #include "freertos/FreeRTOS.h" //References for Freertos Function-related API Functions
7  #include "freertos/task.h"    //References for Freertos Task Function-related API Functions
8  #include "esp_log.h"          //References for LOG Printing Function-related API Functions
9  #include "esp_err.h"          //References for Error Type Function-related API Functions
10 #include "esp_timer.h"        //References for high-precision timers Function-related API Functions
11 #include "bsp_i2c.h"
12 /*-----Header file declaration end-----*/

```

Then, we declare the variables we need to use, as well as the functions—whose specific implementations are in "bsp_dht20.c".

Centralizing these declarations in "bsp_dht20.h" is for the convenience of calling and management. (We will understand their roles when they are used in "bsp_dht20.c".)

```

19 #define DHT20_TAG "DHT20"
20 #define DHT20_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(DHT20_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
21 #define DHT20_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(DHT20_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
22 #define DHT20_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(DHT20_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
23
24 #define DHT20_I2C_ADDRESS 0x38 // The 7-bit I2C address of DHT20
25
26 #define DHT20_MEASURE_TIMEOUT 1000 // Measurement timeout time of DHT20
27
28 typedef struct dht20_data
29 {
30     float temperature; // The measured temperature data
31     float humidity;    // the measured humidity data
32     uint32_t raw_humid; // Intermediate quantity for humidity data conversion
33     uint32_t raw_temp;  // Intermediate quantity for temperature data conversion
34 } dht20_data_t;
35
36 esp_err_t dht20_begin(void); // Initialization of DHT20 sensor
37 esp_err_t dht20_is_calibrated(void); // The function for determining whether the DHT20 sensor is ready or not
38 esp_err_t dht20_read_data(dht20_data_t *data); // DHT20 Sensor Temperature and Humidity Data Reading Function
39

```

Let's now examine the specific functions of each function in "bsp_dht20.c".

The bsp_dht20 component is primarily used to communicate with the DHT20 temperature and humidity sensor via the I2C bus. It implements functions such as sensor initialization, status detection, data reading, and verification to obtain environmental temperature and humidity data.

Then the following functions are the interfaces we call to initialize the temperature and humidity sensor and obtain its readings.

- The '[print_binary](#)' function: Its role is to convert a 16-bit integer 'value' into a corresponding binary string. It can be used in scenarios where data needs to be visually displayed in binary form, such as checking register values or the binary composition of sensor data.
- The '[print_byte](#)' function: This function splits an 8-bit byte 'byte' into high 4 bits and low 4 bits, then converts them into a binary string prefixed with '0b' to make the data more readable. It is useful when debugging I2C communication data that requires formatted printing of single-byte data, such as status bytes or data bytes returned by the sensor.
- The '[dht20_reset_register](#)' function: Its main function is to reset a specified register. The specific operation is to first read the current value of the register, then rewrite it according to the requirements of the DHT20 protocol. It can be used when sensor initialization fails or the status is abnormal, requiring resetting of key registers (such as calibration or configuration registers like '0x1B', '0x1C',

- '0x1E') to restore the sensor to normal working condition.
- The `dht20_status` function: Sends the 0x71 command via I2C and reads the value of DHT20's status register to obtain the sensor's current working status, such as whether calibration is completed or a measurement is in progress. It is used to check if the sensor status is normal before initialization, confirm if the sensor is ready before measurement, or troubleshoot to identify the cause of abnormal sensor status.
 - The `dht20_reset_sensor` function: Continuously detects the sensor's status. If the status does not meet expectations (status value does not match 0x18, where 0x18 typically indicates calibration completion and readiness), it repeatedly resets key registers until the status is normal or the retry limit of 255 times is reached. It is used during sensor initialization (e.g., called in `dht20_begin`) to ensure the sensor enters a working state, or to attempt recovery after sensor communication anomalies.
 - The `dht20_begin` function: Initializes the DHT20 sensor through a process that registers the sensor's device address via I2C to obtain a handle, then calls `dht20_reset_sensor` to check and reset the sensor. It returns an error code if initialization fails. This function must be called during system startup or before the first use of the sensor; otherwise, subsequent data reading may fail.
 - The `dht20_is_calibrated` function: Checks if the sensor has completed calibration by determining whether a specific bit in the status register is 0x18—calibration completion is a prerequisite for the sensor's normal operation. It is used to confirm sensor readiness after initialization, verify normal sensor status before measurement, and avoid reading invalid data.
 - The `dht20_crc8` function: Calculates the checksum of data using the CRC8 algorithm specified in the DHT20 protocol (polynomial 0x31) to verify the integrity of received data. It is used after reading sensor data (e.g., in `dht20_read_data`) to compare the calculated CRC value with the CRC byte returned by the sensor, determining if errors occurred during data transmission.
 - The `dht20_read_data` function: Fully implements the temperature and humidity data reading process, including sending measurement commands (0xAC, 0x33, 0x00), waiting for the sensor to complete measurement (with timeout detection), reading 7 bytes of data (including status, humidity, temperature, and CRC), and parsing raw data into actual temperature and humidity values (humidity in percentage, temperature in Celsius) after CRC verification. This core function of the component is called when environmental temperature and humidity need to be obtained, but it requires the sensor to be initialized and calibrated beforehand (confirmed via `dht20_begin` and `dht20_is_calibrated`).

That concludes our introduction to the `bsp_dht20` component—you only need to understand how to call these interfaces.

(The purpose and function of each file here have been covered in detail in Lesson 7, so we won't elaborate further. Should you have any questions, please refer back to

[the previous course content.](#))

Next, let's focus our attention on the ".ino" main code file to explore how real-time temperature and humidity values are displayed on the screen.

1. Header Files

The other library files were thoroughly explained in Lesson 7.

These two lines utilize the "#include" preprocessor directive to incorporate two hardware driver-related header files: "bsp_i2c.h" and "bsp_dht20.h". Their purpose is to provide the program with the I2C bus communication interface, as well as the driver functions and data structure definitions for the DHT20 temperature and humidity sensor.

```
14 #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15 #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17 #include <string.h>        // C string lib
18 #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
19 #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
20 #include <esp_ldo_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22 #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
23 #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
24 #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
25
26 #include <lvgl.h>
27 #include "lvgl_v8_port.h"
28
29 #include "bsp_i2c.h"
30 #include "bsp_dht20.h"
```

Specifically, bsp_i2c.h serves as a low-level I2C bus driver module that encapsulates I2C initialization functions (such as i2c_init()), read/write functions, and ESP32 I2C controller-related configurations. This enables developers to rapidly establish I2C communication channels by specifying SDA and SCL pins.

Meanwhile, bsp_dht20.h is a DHT20 sensor driver interface file implemented atop the I2C bus. It internally invokes the I2C driver to communicate with the DHT20 chip and provides a suite of operational functions: dht20_begin() for sensor initialization, dht20_is_calibrated() for checking calibration completion status, dht20_read_data() for retrieving temperature and humidity data, along with data structure definitions (such as dht20_data_t, comprising temperature and humidity members) for data storage.

2. Global Variables

The other macro definitions and global variables were thoroughly covered in Lesson 7.

The line static lv_obj_t *dht20_data = NULL; declares a static LVGL object pointer variable used to hold the text label object that displays DHT20 temperature and humidity data on the screen.

The function first invokes `"lvgl_port_lock(-1)"` to acquire the LVGL mutex lock, ensuring thread-safe operations on LVGL graphic objects in a multi-tasking environment. Upon successfully obtaining the lock, it proceeds to create interface elements.

The program creates a label object on the currently active screen via `"lv_label_create(lv_scr_act())"`, storing the returned object pointer in the global variable `"dht20_data"`. This label will subsequently be used to display temperature and humidity data from the DHT20 sensor.

Next, the code declares and initializes an `"lv_style_t"` style object named `"label_style"`, sets its background opacity to transparent using `"lv_style_set_bg_opa()"`, and applies this style to the label object.

It then configures the text color to white through `"lv_obj_set_style_text_color()"`, and sets the font to `"lv_font_montserrat_30"` via `"lv_obj_set_style_text_font()"` for clear on-screen visibility.

Afterwards, `"lv_obj_center()"` is employed to position the label at the screen's center, while `"lv_obj_set_style_bg_color()"` and `"lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa()"` are used to set the entire screen background to solid black — achieving a high-contrast black-background-with-white-text display effect.

Finally, `"lv_label_set_text()"` sets the initial display content to `"Temperature = 0.0 C Humidity = 0.0 %"` as placeholder text for the temperature and humidity data, followed by `"lvgl_port_unlock()"` to release the previously acquired LVGL lock.

4. void update_dht20_value(float temperature, float humidity):

This function is used to update the display content of temperature and humidity data on the LVGL interface:

First, it checks whether the temperature and humidity display label `dht20_data` is valid. If valid, it uses `snprintf` to format the incoming temperature (`temperature`) and humidity (`humidity`) values into a string in the format of `"Temperature = X.X C Humidity = X.X %"`.

Then, it calls the LVGL interface `lv_label_set_text` to update the formatted string to the label, realizing real-time refresh of data on the screen.

```
108 void update_dht20_value(float temperature, float humidity)
109 {
110     if (dht20_data)
111     {
112         char buffer[60];
113         snprintf(buffer, sizeof(buffer), "Temperature = %.1f C Humidity = %.1f %", temperature, humidity); /*Format the data into a string*/
114         lv_label_set_text(dht20_data, buffer); /*Set a new text for a label*/
115     }
116 }
117
```

5. void dht20_read_task(void *param):

This code defines a function "dht20_read_task(void *param)", whose purpose is to periodically read data from the temperature and humidity sensor and update the results to both the screen display and serial port logs.

```

118 void dht20_read_task(void *param)
119 {
120     static dht20_data_t measurements;
121     while (1)
122     {
123         /*The function for determining whether the DHT20 sensor is ready or not*/
124         if (dht20_is_calibrated() == ESP_OK) {
125             MAIN_INFO("is calibrated...");
126         } else {
127             MAIN_INFO("is NOT calibrated...");
128
129             /*Reinitialize the DHT20 sensor*/
130             if (dht20_begin() != ESP_OK) {
131                 MAIN_ERROR("dht20 init again false");
132                 vTaskDelay(100 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
133                 continue;
134             }
135         }
136
137         /*Read the temperature and humidity data from the DHT20 sensor*/
138         if (dht20_read_data(&measurements) != ESP_OK) {
139             if (lvgl_port_lock(-1)) {
140                 lv_label_set_text(dht20_data, "dht20 read data error"); /*Read failure message displayed*/
141                 lvgl_port_unlock();
142             }
143             MAIN_ERROR("dht20 read data error");
144         }
145         /*Read successfully*/
146         else {
147             if (lvgl_port_lock(-1)) {
148                 update_dht20_value(measurements.temperature, measurements.humidity); /*Update the DHT20 data displayed on the screen*/
149                 lvgl_port_unlock();
150             }
151             MAIN_INFO("Temperature: %t%.1fC", measurements.temperature);
152             MAIN_INFO("Humidity: %t%.1f%%", measurements.humidity);
153         }
154         vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
155     }
156 }

```

Within the function, a static structure variable "measurements" is first defined to store the temperature and humidity data read from the DHT20 sensor. The program then enters a "while(1)" infinite loop to continuously execute data acquisition tasks.

```

118 void dht20_read_task(void *param)
119 {
120     static dht20_data_t measurements;
121     while (1)
122     {

```

At the beginning of each loop iteration, the program first invokes "dht20_is_calibrated()" to verify whether the sensor has completed calibration. If it returns "ESP_OK", indicating normal sensor status, a log message "Calibrated" is printed.

If the sensor is not calibrated, a prompt message is output and "dht20_begin()" is called to reinitialize the sensor. Should the initialization fail, an error log is printed, followed by a 100ms delay before proceeding to the next loop iteration.

```

123     /*The function for determining whether the DHT20 sensor is ready or not*/
124     if (dht20_is_calibrated() == ESP_OK) {
125         MAIN_INFO("is calibrated....");
126     } else {
127         MAIN_INFO("is NOT calibrated....");
128
129         /*Reinitialize the DHT20 sensor*/
130         if (dht20_begin() != ESP_OK) {
131             MAIN_ERROR("dht20 init again false");
132             vTaskDelay(100 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
133             continue;
134         }
135     }

```

The program then retrieves temperature and humidity data from the sensor via "dht20_read_data(&measurements)". If the read operation fails, it first acquires the LVGL thread lock through "lvgl_port_lock(-1)", then invokes "lv_label_set_text()" to update the on-screen label content to "dht20 read data error" as a failure notification. Finally, it releases the LVGL lock and outputs an error log.

```

137     /*Read the temperature and humidity data from the DHT20 sensor*/
138     if (dht20_read_data(&measurements) != ESP_OK) {
139         if (lvgl_port_lock(-1)) {
140             lv_label_set_text(dht20_data, "dht20 read data error"); /*Read failure message displayed*/
141             lvgl_port_unlock();
142         }
143         MAIN_ERROR("dht20 read data error");
144     }

```

If the read operation succeeds, the program similarly acquires the LVGL lock first, then invokes the "update_dht20_value()" function to update the screen's text label with the retrieved "measurements.temperature" and "measurements.humidity" values, before releasing the lock.

```

145     /*Read successfully*/
146     else {
147         if (lvgl_port_lock(-1)) {
148             update_dht20_value(measurements.temperature, measurements.humidity); /*Update the DHT20 data displayed on the screen*/
149             lvgl_port_unlock();
150         }

```

Simultaneously, the program outputs the current temperature and humidity as formatted strings to the serial port via "MAIN_INFO()"—for instance, "Temperature: 25.3C" and "Humidity: 60.5%"—facilitating debugging and monitoring. Finally, "vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS)" is invoked to delay the task for 1 second, thereby achieving a 1-second interval for temperature and humidity data acquisition and display refresh.

```

151         MAIN_INFO("Temperature:\t%.1fC", measurements.temperature);
152         MAIN_INFO("Humidity: \t%.1f%%", measurements.humidity);
153     }
154     vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
155 }
156 }

```

6. ldo_init

This code defines a function "ldo_init()", whose primary purpose is to configure and enable two LDO (Low Dropout Regulator) power channels for critical hardware modules on the development board, thereby providing stable voltage to the display

interface and touch/I2C circuits.

```

158 void ldo_init()
159 {
160     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
161     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
162     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
163     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
164     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
165     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
166         .chan_id = 3,          // LDO Channel 3
167         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
168     };
169
170     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
171     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
172     if (err != ESP_OK) {
173         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
174     } else {
175         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
176     }
177
178     // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
179     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
180     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
181         .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
182         .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
183     };
184
185     Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
186     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
187     if (err != ESP_OK) {
188         Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
189     } else {
190         Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
191     }
192 }

```

The function begins by declaring an error status variable "esp_err_t err" and LDO handle variables. It then proceeds to configure LDO3: through the "esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg" structure, it specifies "chan_id = 3" and sets the output voltage to 2500mV (2.5V)—the required supply voltage for the ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY display interface.

```

158 void ldo_init()
159 {
160     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
161     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
162     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
163     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
164     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
165     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
166         .chan_id = 3,          // LDO Channel 3
167         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
168     };

```

The program acquires and enables this LDO channel via "esp_ldo_acquire_channel()". If the return value is not "ESP_OK", indicating power initialization failure, the program outputs an error message using "Serial.printf()". Upon success, a confirmation message is printed to the serial port indicating that LDO3 has been successfully activated.

```

170     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
171     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
172     if (err != ESP_OK) {
173         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
174     } else {
175         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
176     }

```

Subsequently, the program configures LDO4 in the same manner: setting "chan_id" to 4 and the output voltage to 3300mV (3.3V)—a voltage level typically used for I2C bus pull-up resistors and touch chip power supply (such as the GT911 touch controller).

It again invokes "esp_ldo_acquire_channel()" to enable this power channel, printing success or failure messages based on the returned status.

```

178 // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
179 esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
180 esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
181     .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
182     .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
183 };
184
185 Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
186 err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
187 if (err != ESP_OK) {
188     Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
189 } else {
190     Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
191 }
192 }
193

```

7. display_touch_lvgl_init

This code defines a function "display_touch_lvgl_init()", whose primary purpose is to complete the comprehensive initialization of the display panel, touchscreen, and graphics library—enabling the system to properly render graphical interfaces and respond to touch operations.

```

194 void display_touch_lvgl_init()
195 {
196     // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
197     Board *board = new Board();
198     // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
199     Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
200     assert(board->init());
201     #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
202     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
203     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
204     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
205     #endif
206     assert(board->begin());
207     Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
208
209     Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
210     lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
211 }
212

```

The function first instantiates a development board control object "board" through "new Board()", which typically encapsulates underlying hardware interfaces including the display bus, LCD driver, and touch driver.

The program then outputs debug information "Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)..." and invokes "board->init()" to initialize the display hardware bus and devices—comprising the EK79007 LCD controller driven via the MIPI-DSI bus, and the capacitive touch control chip GT911 communicating over I2C.

"assert()" is employed to immediately terminate the program upon initialization failure, preventing the system from continuing operation when hardware has not been properly initialized.

```
194 void display_touch_lvgl_init()
195 {
196     // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
197     Board *board = new Board();
198     // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
199     Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
200     assert(board->init());
```

Subsequently, when the conditional compilation flag "LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE" is enabled, the program retrieves the LCD object via "board->getLCD()" and invokes "configFrameBufferNumber()" to configure the frame buffer count—thereby reducing potential screen tearing artifacts during display refresh cycles.

```
201 #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
202     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
203     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
204     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
205 #endif
```

The system then calls "board->begin()" to boot up the entire display and touch subsystem, bringing the hardware into normal operating state, and prints the message "Display and Touch system online." to the serial port.

```
206     assert(board->begin());
207     Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
208
209     Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
210     lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
211 }
212 |
```

Finally, the program outputs "Initializing LVGL" and invokes "lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch())" to initialize the LVGL graphics library, simultaneously registering the LCD display driver and touch input device with the LVGL system—enabling LVGL to handle interface rendering and receive touch events.

8. Setup Section

This code defines the "setup()" function in the Arduino program, whose role is to complete the initialization of the entire hardware system and graphical interface after system power-on or reset, preparing the groundwork for subsequent operation.

```

213 void setup() {
214     // put your setup code here, to run once:
215
216     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
217     Serial.begin(115200);
218
219     ldo_init();
220
221     #if (1 == ESP_PANEL_BOARD_TOUCH_BUS_SKIP_INIT_HOST)
222     | i2c_init(I2C_GPIO_SCL, I2C_GPIO_SDA);
223     #endif
224
225     //Since the display library automatically initializes the I2C bus for touch, there is no need to initialize the i2c bus again
226     //If you want to cancel the i2c bus initialization of the display library, modify the macro definition in the file esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h
227     /**
228     * If set to 1, the bus will skip to initialize the corresponding host. Users need to initialize the host in advance.
229     *
230     * For drivers which created by this library, even if they use the same host, the host will be initialized only once.
231     * So it is not necessary to set the macro to '1'. For other drivers (like 'Wire'), please set the macro to '1'
232     * ensure that the host is initialized only once.
233     */
234     // #define ESP_PANEL_BOARD_TOUCH_BUS_SKIP_INIT_HOST      (0)    // 0/1. Typically set to 0
235     display_touch_lvgl_init();
236
237     dht20_begin();
238
239     Serial.println("Creating UI");
240
241     dht20_display();
242 }

```

The function first initializes serial communication (UART0) via "Serial.begin(115200)" for outputting debug information. It then invokes "ldo_init()" to initialize the LDO power modules on the development board, providing stable voltage to critical hardware—such as powering the ESP32-P4's display interface.

```

213 void setup() {
214     // put your setup code here, to run once:
215
216     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
217     Serial.begin(115200);
218
219     ldo_init();
220 }

```

The code then employs conditional compilation to check whether the macro "ESP_PANEL_BOARD_TOUCH_BUS_SKIP_INIT_HOST" is defined as 1. If so, it manually initializes the I2C bus by calling "i2c_init(I2C_GPIO_SCL, I2C_GPIO_SDA)".

```

221 #if (1 == ESP_PANEL_BOARD_TOUCH_BUS_SKIP_INIT_HOST)
222 | i2c_init(I2C_GPIO_SCL, I2C_GPIO_SDA);
223 #endif

```

The code comments explain that, by default, the display driver library automatically initializes the I2C bus used by the touchscreen—therefore manual re-initialization is typically unnecessary. Should users wish to manually control the I2C initialization flow, they must modify this macro definition in the configuration file "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h".

The program subsequently invokes "display_touch_lvgl_init()" to initialize the display and touch system. This function boots the LCD display driver (such as EK79007), the GT911 touch controller, and initializes the LVGL graphics library—endowing the system with graphical display and touch interaction capabilities.

```
235     display_touch_lvgl_init();
236
237     dht20_begin();
238
239     Serial.println("Creating UI");
240
241     dht20_display();
242 }
```

The program then invokes "dht20_begin()" to initialize the DHT20 temperature and humidity sensor, preparing it for subsequent environmental data acquisition. Finally, it outputs the prompt message via "Serial.println("Creating UI")" and calls "dht20_display()" to create the temperature and humidity display label in the LVGL interface—thereby establishing a UI element on screen for presenting temperature and humidity data.

9. Loop Section

This code defines the "loop()" function in the Arduino program, which serves as the main execution loop that runs continuously after system startup. Within this function, the program invokes "dht20_read_task(nullptr)" to continuously read data from the temperature and humidity sensor and update the display interface.

```
244 void loop() {
245     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
246
247     dht20_read_task(nullptr);
248 }
```

The "nullptr" is passed as an argument because this function was originally designed as a task function (typically used in operating system tasks or threads), requiring a "void *" type parameter. Since it is not actually utilized here, passing a null pointer suffices.

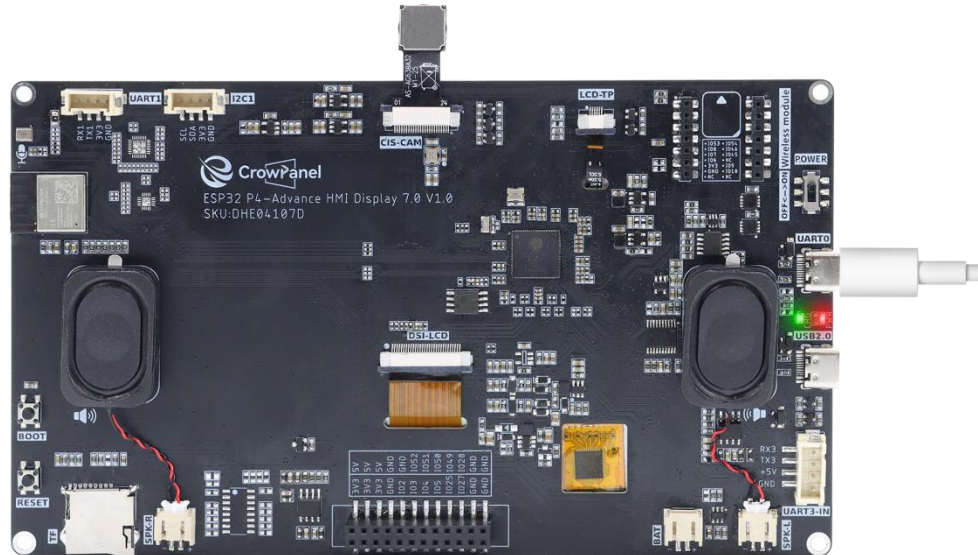
The function "dht20_read_task()" continuously detects and reads temperature and humidity data from the DHT20, outputs the results to the serial port log, and updates the on-screen text label through LVGL—achieving real-time display of temperature and humidity information.

As "dht20_read_task()" internally contains a "while(1)" infinite loop with timed delay logic, once this function is invoked within "loop()", the program remains inside this task indefinitely, continuously executing sensor reading and interface update operations. This implements a continuous monitoring function that reads temperature and humidity at fixed intervals and refreshes the screen display accordingly.

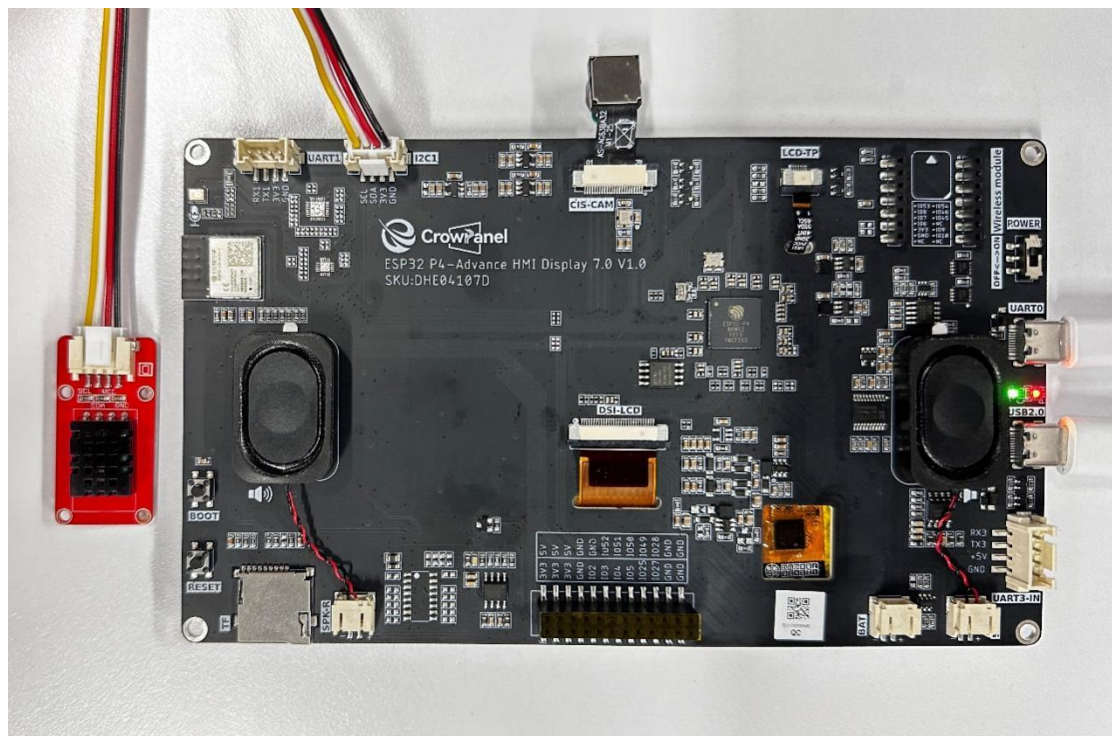
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

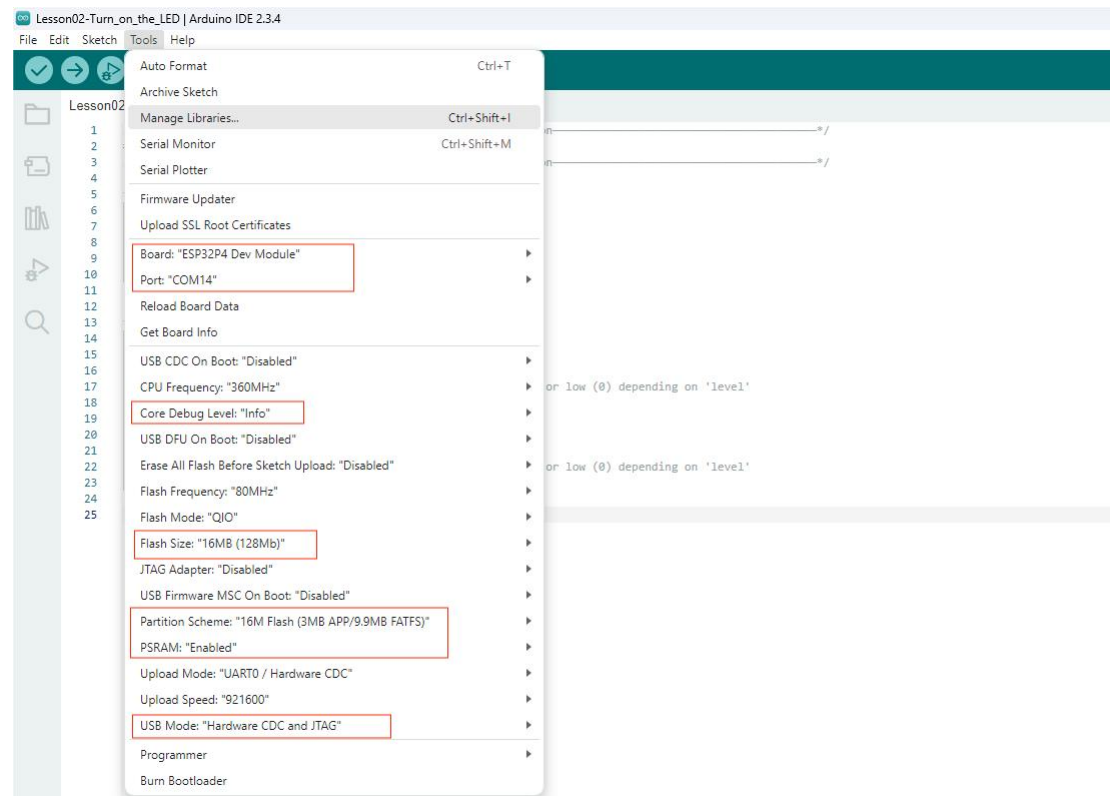
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



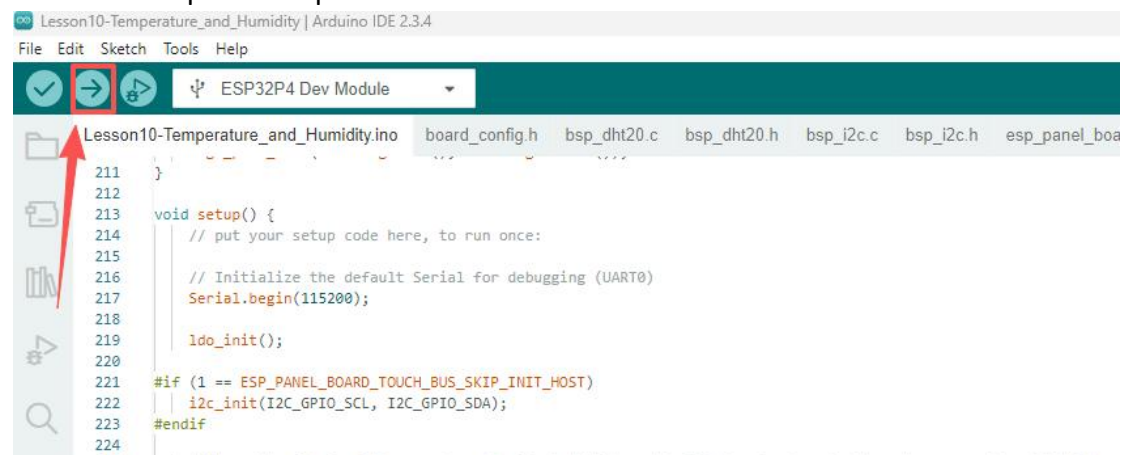
After connecting the Advance-P4 board, connect the temperature and humidity sensor to the I2C interface.



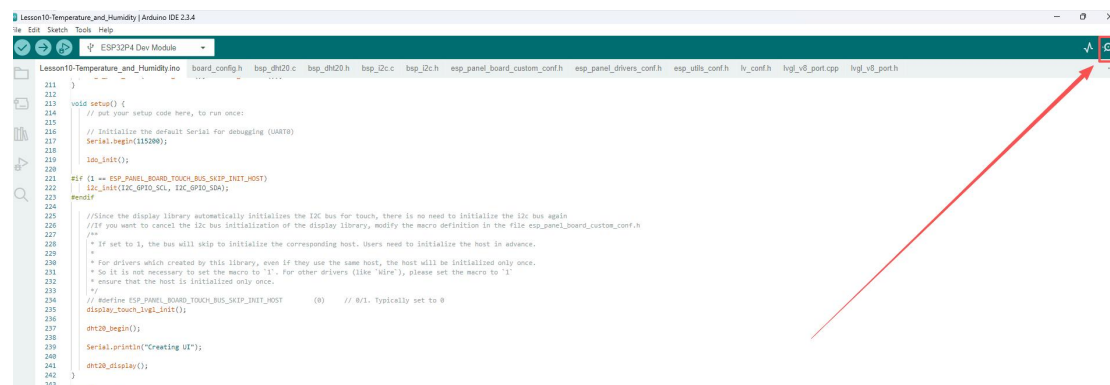
Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



Wait for the compilation to complete, then open the Serial Monitor built into the Arduino IDE.



Configure the baud rate in your code, and you'll see the temperature and humidity readings being printed.

```

211 }
212
213 void setup() {
214   // put your setup code here, to run once:
215   // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
216   Serial.begin(115200);
217   l6e_init();
218   l6e_init();
219   l6e_init();
220   // Since the display library automatically initializes the I2C bus for touch, there is no need to initialize the I2C bus again
221   // If you want to cancel the I2C bus initialization of the display library, modify the macro definition in the file esp_pamel_board_custom_conf.h
222   // If set to 1, the bus will skip to initialize the corresponding host. Users need to initialize the host in advance.
223   #define I2C_HOST_SKIP 1
224   #endif
225
226   // Since the display library automatically initializes the I2C bus for touch, there is no need to initialize the I2C bus again
227   // If you want to cancel the I2C bus initialization of the display library, modify the macro definition in the file esp_pamel_board_custom_conf.h
228   // If set to 1, the bus will skip to initialize the corresponding host. Users need to initialize the host in advance.
229   #define I2C_HOST_SKIP 1
230   #endif
231 }
232
233 void loop() {
234   // Read the temperature and humidity data from the sensor
235   // Update the DHT20 data displayed on the screen
236   // Print the temperature and humidity data to the Serial Monitor
237   // ...
238 }
239
240 // ...
241
242 // ...
243
244 // ...
245
246 // ...
247
248 // ...
249
250 // ...
251
252 // ...
253
254 // ...
255
256 // ...
257
258 // ...
259
260 // ...
261
262 // ...
263
264 // ...
265
266 // ...
267
268 // ...
269
270 // ...
271
272 // ...
273
274 // ...
275
276 // ...
277
278 // ...
279
280 // ...
281
282 // ...
283
284 // ...
285
286 // ...
287
288 // ...
289
290 // ...
291
292 // ...
293
294 // ...
295
296 // ...
297
298 // ...
299
300 // ...
301
302 // ...
303
304 // ...
305
306 // ...
307
308 // ...
309
310 // ...
311
312 // ...
313
314 // ...
315
316 // ...
317
318 // ...
319
320 // ...
321
322 // ...
323
324 // ...
325
326 // ...
327
328 // ...
329
330 // ...
331
332 // ...
333
334 // ...
335
336 // ...
337
338 // ...
339
340 // ...
341
342 // ...
343
344 // ...
345
346 // ...
347
348 // ...
349
350 // ...
351
352 // ...
353
354 // ...
355
356 // ...
357
358 // ...
359
360 // ...
361
362 // ...
363
364 // ...
365
366 // ...
367
368 // ...
369
370 // ...
371
372 // ...
373
374 // ...
375
376 // ...
377
378 // ...
379
380 // ...
381
382 // ...
383
384 // ...
385
386 // ...
387
388 // ...
389
390 // ...
391
392 // ...
393
394 // ...
395
396 // ...
397
398 // ...
399
400 // ...
401
402 // ...
403
404 // ...
405
406 // ...
407
408 // ...
409
410 // ...
411
412 // ...
413
414 // ...
415
416 // ...
417
418 // ...
419
420 // ...
421
422 // ...
423
424 // ...
425
426 // ...
427
428 // ...
429
430 // ...
431
432 // ...
433
434 // ...
435
436 // ...
437
438 // ...
439
440 // ...
441
442 // ...
443
444 // ...
445
446 // ...
447
448 // ...
449
450 // ...
451
452 // ...
453
454 // ...
455
456 // ...
457
458 // ...
459
460 // ...
461
462 // ...
463
464 // ...
465
466 // ...
467
468 // ...
469
470 // ...
471
472 // ...
473
474 // ...
475
476 // ...
477
478 // ...
479
480 // ...
481
482 // ...
483
484 // ...
485
486 // ...
487
488 // ...
489
490 // ...
491
492 // ...
493
494 // ...
495
496 // ...
497
498 // ...
499
500 // ...
501
502 // ...
503
504 // ...
505
506 // ...
507
508 // ...
509
510 // ...
511
512 // ...
513
514 // ...
515
516 // ...
517
518 // ...
519
520 // ...
521
522 // ...
523
524 // ...
525
526 // ...
527
528 // ...
529
530 // ...
531
532 // ...
533
534 // ...
535
536 // ...
537
538 // ...
539
540 // ...
541
542 // ...
543
544 // ...
545
546 // ...
547
548 // ...
549
550 // ...
551
552 // ...
553
554 // ...
555
556 // ...
557
558 // ...
559
560 // ...
561
562 // ...
563
564 // ...
565
566 // ...
567
568 // ...
569
570 // ...
571
572 // ...
573
574 // ...
575
576 // ...
577
578 // ...
579
580 // ...
581
582 // ...
583
584 // ...
585
586 // ...
587
588 // ...
589
590 // ...
591
592 // ...
593
594 // ...
595
596 // ...
597
598 // ...
599
600 // ...
601
602 // ...
603
604 // ...
605
606 // ...
607
608 // ...
609
610 // ...
611
612 // ...
613
614 // ...
615
616 // ...
617
618 // ...
619
620 // ...
621
622 // ...
623
624 // ...
625
626 // ...
627
628 // ...
629
630 // ...
631
632 // ...
633
634 // ...
635
636 // ...
637
638 // ...
639
640 // ...
641
642 // ...
643
644 // ...
645
646 // ...
647
648 // ...
649
650 // ...
651
652 // ...
653
654 // ...
655
656 // ...
657
658 // ...
659
660 // ...
661
662 // ...
663
664 // ...
665
666 // ...
667
668 // ...
669
670 // ...
671
672 // ...
673
674 // ...
675
676 // ...
677
678 // ...
679
680 // ...
681
682 // ...
683
684 // ...
685
686 // ...
687
688 // ...
689
690 // ...
691
692 // ...
693
694 // ...
695
696 // ...
697
698 // ...
699
700 // ...
701
702 // ...
703
704 // ...
705
706 // ...
707
708 // ...
709
710 // ...
711
712 // ...
713
714 // ...
715
716 // ...
717
718 // ...
719
720 // ...
721
722 // ...
723
724 // ...
725
726 // ...
727
728 // ...
729
730 // ...
731
732 // ...
733
734 // ...
735
736 // ...
737
738 // ...
739
740 // ...
741
742 // ...
743
744 // ...
745
746 // ...
747
748 // ...
749
750 // ...
751
752 // ...
753
754 // ...
755
756 // ...
757
758 // ...
759
760 // ...
761
762 // ...
763
764 // ...
765
766 // ...
767
768 // ...
769
770 // ...
771
772 // ...
773
774 // ...
775
776 // ...
777
778 // ...
779
780 // ...
781
782 // ...
783
784 // ...
785
786 // ...
787
788 // ...
789
790 // ...
791
792 // ...
793
794 // ...
795
796 // ...
797
798 // ...
799
800 // ...
801
802 // ...
803
804 // ...
805
806 // ...
807
808 // ...
809
810 // ...
811
812 // ...
813
814 // ...
815
816 // ...
817
818 // ...
819
820 // ...
821
822 // ...
823
824 // ...
825
826 // ...
827
828 // ...
829
830 // ...
831
832 // ...
833
834 // ...
835
836 // ...
837
838 // ...
839
840 // ...
841
842 // ...
843
844 // ...
845
846 // ...
847
848 // ...
849
850 // ...
851
852 // ...
853
854 // ...
855
856 // ...
857
858 // ...
859
860 // ...
861
862 // ...
863
864 // ...
865
866 // ...
867
868 // ...
869
870 // ...
871
872 // ...
873
874 // ...
875
876 // ...
877
878 // ...
879
880 // ...
881
882 // ...
883
884 // ...
885
886 // ...
887
888 // ...
889
890 // ...
891
892 // ...
893
894 // ...
895
896 // ...
897
898 // ...
899
900 // ...
901
902 // ...
903
904 // ...
905
906 // ...
907
908 // ...
909
910 // ...
911
912 // ...
913
914 // ...
915
916 // ...
917
918 // ...
919
920 // ...
921
922 // ...
923
924 // ...
925
926 // ...
927
928 // ...
929
930 // ...
931
932 // ...
933
934 // ...
935
936 // ...
937
938 // ...
939
940 // ...
941
942 // ...
943
944 // ...
945
946 // ...
947
948 // ...
949
950 // ...
951
952 // ...
953
954 // ...
955
956 // ...
957
958 // ...
959
960 // ...
961
962 // ...
963
964 // ...
965
966 // ...
967
968 // ...
969
970 // ...
971
972 // ...
973
974 // ...
975
976 // ...
977
978 // ...
979
980 // ...
981
982 // ...
983
984 // ...
985
986 // ...
987
988 // ...
989
990 // ...
991
992 // ...
993
994 // ...
995
996 // ...
997
998 // ...
999
1000 // ...

```

After successful flashing, you will see that the screen of your Advance-P4 lights up, and the data collected by the temperature and humidity sensor is displayed on the screen in real time.

```

145 //Read successfully*/
146 else {
147   if (lvgl_port_lock(-1)) {
148     update_dht20_value(measurements.temperature, measurements.humidity); /*Update the DHT20 data displayed on the screen*/
149     lvgl_port_unlock();
150   }
151 }
152
153 // ...
154
155 // ...
156
157 // ...
158
159 // ...
160
161 // ...
162
163 // ...
164
165 // ...
166
167 // ...
168
169 // ...
170
171 // ...
172
173 // ...
174
175 // ...
176
177 // ...
178
179 // ...
180
181 // ...
182
183 // ...
184
185 // ...
186
187 // ...
188
189 // ...
190
191 // ...
192
193 // ...
194
195 // ...
196
197 // ...
198
199 // ...
200
201 // ...
202
203 // ...
204
205 // ...
206
207 // ...
208
209 // ...
210
211 // ...
212
213 // ...
214
215 // ...
216
217 // ...
218
219 // ...
220
221 // ...
222
223 // ...
224
225 // ...
226
227 // ...
228
229 // ...
230
231 // ...
232
233 // ...
234
235 // ...
236
237 // ...
238
239 // ...
240
241 // ...
242
243 // ...
244
245 // ...
246
247 // ...
248
249 // ...
250
251 // ...
252
253 // ...
254
255 // ...
256
257 // ...
258
259 // ...
260
261 // ...
262
263 // ...
264
265 // ...
266
267 // ...
268
269 // ...
270
271 // ...
272
273 // ...
274
275 // ...
276
277 // ...
278
279 // ...
280
281 // ...
282
283 // ...
284
285 // ...
286
287 // ...
288
289 // ...
290
291 // ...
292
293 // ...
294
295 // ...
296
297 // ...
298
299 // ...
300
301 // ...
302
303 // ...
304
305 // ...
306
307 // ...
308
309 // ...
310
311 // ...
312
313 // ...
314
315 // ...
316
317 // ...
318
319 // ...
320
321 // ...
322
323 // ...
324
325 // ...
326
327 // ...
328
329 // ...
330
331 // ...
332
333 // ...
334
335 // ...
336
337 // ...
338
339 // ...
340
341 // ...
342
343 // ...
344
345 // ...
346
347 // ...
348
349 // ...
350
351 // ...
352
353 // ...
354
355 // ...
356
357 // ...
358
359 // ...
360
361 // ...
362
363 // ...
364
365 // ...
366
367 // ...
368
369 // ...
370
371 // ...
372
373 // ...
374
375 // ...
376
377 // ...
378
379 // ...
380
381 // ...
382
383 // ...
384
385 // ...
386
387 // ...
388
389 // ...
390
391 // ...
392
393 // ...
394
395 // ...
396
397 // ...
398
399 // ...
400
401 // ...
402
403 // ...
404
405 // ...
406
407 // ...
408
409 // ...
410
411 // ...
412
413 // ...
414
415 // ...
416
417 // ...
418
419 // ...
420
421 // ...
422
423 // ...
424
425 // ...
426
427 // ...
428
429 // ...
430
431 // ...
432
433 // ...
434
435 // ...
436
437 // ...
438
439 // ...
440
441 // ...
442
443 // ...
444
445 // ...
446
447 // ...
448
449 // ...
450
451 // ...
452
453 // ...
454
455 // ...
456
457 // ...
458
459 // ...
460
461 // ...
462
463 // ...
464
465 // ...
466
467 // ...
468
469 // ...
470
471 // ...
472
473 // ...
474
475 // ...
476
477 // ...
478
479 // ...
480
481 // ...
482
483 // ...
484
485 // ...
486
487 // ...
488
489 // ...
490
491 // ...
492
493 // ...
494
495 // ...
496
497 // ...
498
499 // ...
500
501 // ...
502
503 // ...
504
505 // ...
506
507 // ...
508
509 // ...
510
511 // ...
512
513 // ...
514
515 // ...
516
517 // ...
518
519 // ...
520
521 // ...
522
523 // ...
524
525 // ...
526
527 // ...
528
529 // ...
530
531 // ...
532
533 // ...
534
535 // ...
536
537 // ...
538
539 // ...
540
541 // ...
542
543 // ...
544
545 // ...
546
547 // ...
548
549 // ...
550
551 // ...
552
553 // ...
554
555 // ...
556
557 // ...
558
559 // ...
560
561 // ...
562
563 // ...
564
565 // ...
566
567 // ...
568
569 // ...
570
571 // ...
572
573 // ...
574
575 // ...
576
577 // ...
578
579 // ...
580
581 // ...
582
583 // ...
584
585 // ...
586
587 // ...
588
589 // ...
590
591 // ...
592
593 // ...
594
595 // ...
596
597 // ...
598
599 // ...
600
601 // ...
602
603 // ...
604
605 // ...
606
607 // ...
608
609 // ...
610
611 // ...
612
613 // ...
614
615 // ...
616
617 // ...
618
619 // ...
620
621 // ...
622
623 // ...
624
625 // ...
626
627 // ...
628
629 // ...
630
631 // ...
632
633 // ...
634
635 // ...
636
637 // ...
638
639 // ...
640
641 // ...
642
643 // ...
644
645 // ...
646
647 // ...
648
649 // ...
650
651 // ...
652
653 // ...
654
655 // ...
656
657 // ...
658
659 // ...
660
661 // ...
662
663 // ...
664
665 // ...
666
667 // ...
668
669 // ...
670
671 // ...
672
673 // ...
674
675 // ...
676
677 // ...
678
679 // ...
680
681 // ...
682
683 // ...
684
685 // ...
686
687 // ...
688
689 // ...
690
691 // ...
692
693 // ...
694
695 // ...
696
697 // ...
698
699 // ...
700
701 // ...
702
703 // ...
704
705 // ...
706
707 // ...
708
709 // ...
710
711 // ...
712
713 // ...
714
715 // ...
716
717 // ...
718
719 // ...
720
721 // ...
722
723 // ...
724
725 // ...
726
727 // ...
728
729 // ...
730
731 // ...
732
733 // ...
734
735 // ...
736
737 // ...
738
739 // ...
740
741 // ...
742
743 // ...
744
745 // ...
746
747 // ...
748
749 // ...
750
751 // ...
752
753 // ...
754
755 // ...
756
757 // ...
758
759 // ...
760
761 // ...
762
763 // ...
764
765 // ...
766
767 // ...
768
769 // ...
770
771 // ...
772
773 // ...
774
775 // ...
776
777 // ...
778
779 // ...
780
781 // ...
782
783 // ...
784
785 // ...
786
787 // ...
788
789 // ...
790
791 // ...
792
793 // ...
794
795 // ...
796
797 // ...
798
799 // ...
800
801 // ...
802
803 // ...
804
805 // ...
806
807 // ...
808
809 // ...
810
811 // ...
812
813 // ...
814
815 // ...
816
817 // ...
818
819 // ...
820
821 // ...
822
823 // ...
824
825 // ...
826
827 // ...
828
829 // ...
830
831 // ...
832
833 // ...
834
835 // ...
836
837 // ...
838
839 // ...
840
841 // ...
842
843 // ...
844
845 // ...
846
847 // ...
848
849 // ...
850
851 // ...
852
853 // ...
854
855 // ...
856
857 // ...
858
859 // ...
860
861 // ...
862
863 // ...
864
865 // ...
866
867 // ...
868
869 // ...
870
871 // ...
872
873 // ...
874
875 // ...
876
877 // ...
878
879 // ...
880
881 // ...
882
883 // ...
884
885 // ...
886
887 // ...
888
889 // ...
890
891 // ...
892
893 // ...
894
895 // ...
896
897 // ...
898
899 // ...
900
901 // ...
902
903 // ...
904
905 // ...
906
907 // ...
908
909 // ...
910
911 // ...
912
913 // ...
914
915 // ...
916
917 // ...
918
919 // ...
920
921 // ...
922
923 // ...
924
925 // ...
926
927 // ...
928
929 // ...
930
931 // ...
932
933 // ...
934
935 // ...
936
937 // ...
938
939 // ...
940
941 // ...
942
943 // ...
944
945 // ...
946
947 // ...
948
949 // ...
950
951 // ...
952
953 // ...
954
955 // ...
956
957 // ...
958
959 // ...
960
961 // ...
962
963 // ...
964
965 // ...
966
967 // ...
968
969 // ...
970
971 // ...
972
973 // ...
974
975 // ...
976
977 // ...
978
979 // ...
980
981 // ...
982
983 // ...
984
985 // ...
986
987 // ...
988
989 // ...
990
991 // ...
992
993 // ...
994
995 // ...
996
997 // ...
998
999 // ...
1000 // ...

```



Lesson11---Playback After Recording

Introduction

In this lesson, we will teach you how to use the microphone and speaker on the Advance-P4 board. We will complete a project: record audio for 5 seconds, then automatically play back the 5-second audio clip.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the principles of the I2S/PDM audio interface on the ESP32-P4 development board, as well as the working mechanisms of microphones (acoustic-to-electrical conversion) and speakers (electrical-to-acoustic conversion).
2. Master the initialization and configuration of the I2S audio interface (PDM input for microphone, I2S output for speaker), along with the implementation methods for 5-second audio recording (WAV format) and playback.
3. Grasp the core logic of audio data processing (WAV header removal, volume gain control, anti-clipping distortion), completing the full closed-loop workflow of recording, processing, and playback.

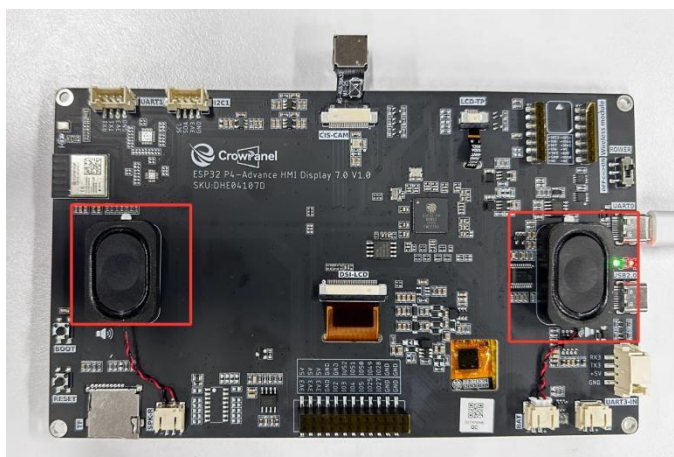
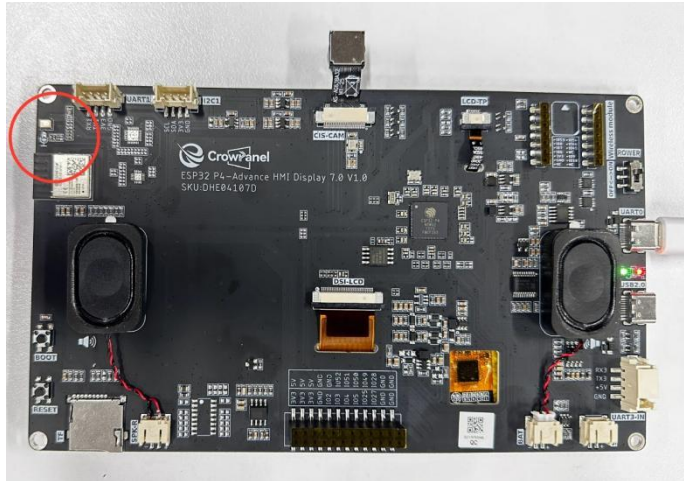
Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to speak near the Advance-P4. The Advance-P4 will use its microphone to record the current sound within 5 seconds, then play it back automatically.

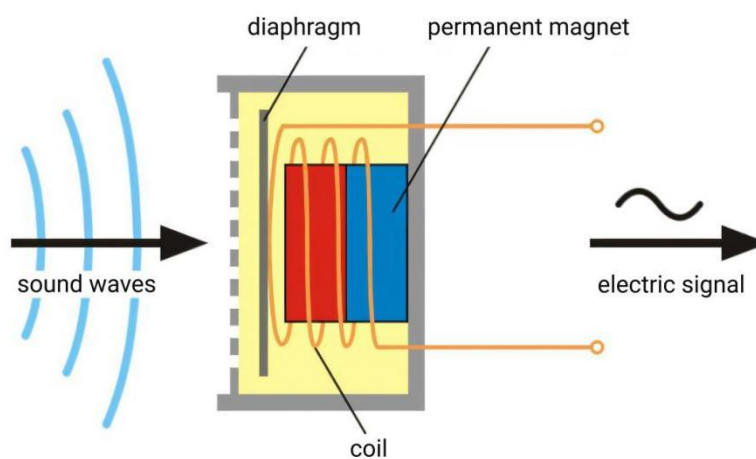


Hardware Used in This Lesson

Microphone and Speaker on the Advance-P4



Microphone and Speaker Schematic Diagrams



When an audio signal enters in the form of sound waves, it causes the diaphragm to vibrate. The diaphragm is connected to a coil, which is sleeved around a magnetic core (located in a magnetic field). The vibration makes the coil move in the magnetic field, cutting through the magnetic field lines. According to the law of electromagnetic induction, an electrical signal corresponding to the variation pattern of the audio signal is generated in the coil, thereby realizing the conversion of sound signals to electrical signals. (For a speaker, this is the reverse process of converting electrical signals to sound signals: an energized coil is forced to vibrate in a magnetic field, which drives the diaphragm to vibrate and produce sound.)

Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson11-Playback_After_Recording

Key Explanations

How exactly is the 5-second audio recording implemented, and how is the recorded audio subsequently played back? Let's examine the code implementation together.

Double-click to open the code for this lesson (the .ino file).

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
board_config.h	2026/3/2 14:30	C Header 源文件	1 KB
Lesson11-Playback_After_Recording.ino	2026/3/11 10:35	INO File	9 KB

Once opened, you will see the project code along with the configuration file "board_config.h".

The "board_config.h" file serves to centrally define all GPIO pins and control parameters related to the audio system on the development board. This allows the main program to reference macro names when using hardware, rather than directly writing specific pin numbers—thereby enhancing code readability, maintainability, and hardware portability.

Lesson11-Playback_After_Recording.ino	board_config.h
<pre> 1 #pragma once 2 3 /***** Pin define *****/ 4 #define AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL (30) // GPIO pin number for audio power 5 #define AUDIO_POWER_ENABLE (LOW) // GPIO set low level to enable audio power 6 #define AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE (HIGH) // GPIO set high level to disable audio power 7 8 #define AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK (21) // GPIO pin number for LRCLK (Left-Right Clock of I2S) 9 #define AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK (22) // GPIO pin number for BCLK (Bit Clock of I2S) 10 #define AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA (23) // GPIO pin number for SDATA (Serial Data of I2S) 11 12 #define MIC_GPIO_CLK (24) // GPIO pin number for microphone BCLK (Bit Clock of PDM) 13 #define MIC_GPIO_SDIN (26) // GPIO pin number for microphone SDIN (Serial Data of PDM) 14 /***** Pin define *****/ 15 </pre>	

The file begins with `#pragma once` to prevent duplicate header file inclusion.

The code is then organized into a Pin define (pin definition) section:

First, `AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL` (GPIO30) is defined as the audio power control pin, with two macros `AUDIO_POWER_ENABLE` and `AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE` specifying the power control logic—where setting LOW enables audio power and HIGH disables it. This allows the program to control the audio module's power supply state simply by invoking these macros.

Next, the I2S speaker interface pins are defined: `AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK` (GPIO21) as the left-right channel clock LRCLK, `AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK` (GPIO22) as the bit clock BCLK, and `AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA` (GPIO23) as the serial audio data output line SDATA. These pins are used to transmit digital audio data to the speaker or amplifier module via I2S.

Finally, the microphone input pins are defined: `MIC_GPIO_CLK` (GPIO24) as the microphone clock signal line, and `MIC_GPIO_SDIN` (GPIO26) as the microphone data input line. These two pins connect to the PDM digital microphone, transferring captured audio data to the ESP32-P4's audio interface for processing.

Now let's focus on the implementation in the main .ino code file to understand how this lesson's functionality is achieved.

1. Header Files

This code serves to include the necessary header files at the program's outset, providing essential functional support for subsequent audio processing, log output, and hardware control.

```
4  #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
5  #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
6
7  #include <string.h>        // Include standard string manipulation functions
8  #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
9  #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
10
11 #include <ESP_I2S.h>        // ESP32 I2S Library
```

First, `#include "board_config.h"` introduces the custom development board configuration file, which defines GPIO pins related to the audio system (such as speaker, microphone, and audio power control pins). This allows the main program to use macro names directly without writing specific pin numbers.

Next, `<Arduino.h>` is included—this is the Arduino core library providing foundational functions and interfaces such as `pinMode()`, `digitalWrite()`, `Serial.begin()`, etc. It must be placed early to ensure proper recognition of Arduino APIs.

The code then introduces `<string.h>`, a standard C library providing string manipulation functions such as `memcpy()`, `strlen()`, etc., facilitating character data processing in the program.

Subsequently, `<esp_log.h>` and `<esp_err.h>` are included—both libraries from ESP-IDF, serving the logging output system and error code definitions respectively. These enable the program to output debug information and determine function execution status.

Finally, `<ESP_I2S.h>` is included—this is the Arduino audio library for controlling I2S, providing the I2S class and related functions. It enables the program to implement digital audio functionalities such as microphone recording and speaker playback on the ESP32-P4.

2. Global Variables

This code section primarily defines global objects and task handles related to audio input and output, preparing the groundwork for subsequent recording and playback functionality.

```
54  /*microphone*/
55  static I2SClass i2s_mic; // Create an I2SClass microphone instance
56  /*loudspeaker*/
57  static I2SClass i2s_spk; // Create an I2SClass speaker instance
58
59  static TaskHandle_t mic_task_handle = NULL;
```

First, `static I2SClass i2s_mic;` creates an object of type `I2SClass` named `i2s_mic` for controlling microphone data input. This object receives audio data from the digital microphone via the I2S interface. The preceding `static` keyword restricts the variable's visibility to within the current source file, preventing access from other files and thereby enhancing code encapsulation.

Next, `static I2SClass i2s_spk;` creates another `I2SClass` object named `i2s_spk` for controlling speaker audio output—sending processed digital audio data to the speaker or amplifier module for playback. These two objects respectively handle audio input (recording) and audio output (playback) functionalities.

The final line `static TaskHandle_t mic_task_handle = NULL;` defines a task handle variable for storing the audio acquisition task handle. This type is typically used for FreeRTOS task management, such as creating, suspending, or deleting tasks. Here it is initialized to `NULL`, indicating that no related task has been created yet.

3. recording

This code defines a function `recording()`, whose primary role is to complete a full workflow of audio acquisition, volume processing, and speaker playback.

The function first declares multiple buffer pointer variables, then allocates a buffer `out_buffer` in external memory via `heap_caps_malloc()` for storing processed audio data. This function allows specifying memory attributes (such as SPIRAM, DMA accessibility, etc.) to ensure audio data can be efficiently read by hardware interfaces.

```

61 void recording()
62 {
63     uint8_t *origin_buffer;
64     int16_t *read_buffer;
65     size_t read_bytes;
66     int16_t *out_buffer;
67     out_buffer = (int16_t*)heap_caps_malloc((16000 * 2 * 5), MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM | MALLOC_CAP_DMA | MALLOC_CAP_32BIT);
68     if (out_buffer==NULL) {
69         Serial.println("Memory allocation failure!");
70     }

```

The program then invokes "i2s_mic.recordWAV(5, &read_bytes)" on the microphone object to begin recording—capturing 5 seconds of audio data and returning the raw data buffer "origin_buffer" in WAV format, while simultaneously obtaining the total number of bytes read.

```

71
72     Serial.println("Recording 5 seconds of audio data...");
73     origin_buffer = i2s_mic.recordWAV(5, &read_bytes);
74

```

Since the first 44 bytes of a WAV file constitute the header information, the code removes this header length via "read_bytes -= 44", repositions "read_buffer" to point to the actual 16-bit audio sample data, and calculates the sample count "num_samples".

```

74     read_bytes -= 44;
75     read_buffer = (int16_t*)(44 + origin_buffer);
76     size_t num_samples = read_bytes / 2; // Number of samples
77

```

The program then iterates through all sample values, calculating the absolute value of each sample point via "abs()" to determine the maximum amplitude "max_val" across the entire audio segment.

```

78     Serial.printf("read_bytes = %d\n", read_bytes);
79     Serial.println("Recording end");
80
81     // Find the maximum absolute value (peak) in the raw data
82     int32_t max_val = 0;
83     for (size_t i = 0; i < num_samples; i++) {
84         // Use abs() function to ensure absolute value is taken
85         int32_t current_val = abs(read_buffer[i]);
86         if (current_val > max_val) {
87             max_val = current_val;
88         }
89     }

```

The program then calculates a safe gain "safe_gain" based on this maximum value, ensuring that audio amplification does not exceed the 16-bit audio range (-32768 to 32767).

This is compared against the desired amplification factor "desired_amplification" (20x), yielding the "final_gain"—thereby achieving automatic volume gain control while preventing clipping distortion.

```

91      /* Simply calculate the volume gain to prevent popping sounds */
92      float safe_gain = 1.0f;
93      if (max_val > 0) {
94          safe_gain = 32767.0f / max_val;
95      }
96      |
97      float desired_amplification = 20.0f; // Maximum amplification factor
98      float final_gain = desired_amplification;
99      if (final_gain > safe_gain) {
100          final_gain = safe_gain * 1.5f;
101          Serial.printf("Warning: Clipping prevented. Max safe gain used: %.2f\n", final_gain);
102      } else {
103          Serial.printf("Applying desired gain: %.2f\n", final_gain);
104      }
105  }

```

The program then iterates through all sample points once more, multiplying the raw audio data by "final_gain" and writing the results to "out_buffer", while employing conditional checks to constrain the value range—ensuring no overflow occurs.

```

106      // Multiply the original data by the gain coefficient
107      for (size_t i=0; i<num_samples; i+=1) {
108          if (read_buffer[i] < 0) {
109              if (-32768 / final_gain < read_buffer[i]) {
110                  out_buffer[i] = (read_buffer[i]) * final_gain;
111              } else {
112                  out_buffer[i] = -32768;
113              }
114          } else {
115              if (read_buffer[i] < 32767 / final_gain) {
116                  out_buffer[i] = (read_buffer[i]) * final_gain;
117              } else {
118                  out_buffer[i] = 32767;
119              }
120          }
121      }

```

Upon processing completion, the program initiates audio playback: it first enables the audio power via "digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_ENABLE)", then utilizes the speaker object "i2s_spk.write()" to transmit the processed audio data to the speaker through I2S for playback.

```

122      Serial.println("Playing the recorded audio...");
123      digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_ENABLE); // Enable audio power
124      /* Skip the 4000 bytes of audio data because the first few microphone audio data |
125      i2s_spk.write((uint8_t*)out_buffer + 4000, read_bytes - 4000);
126      digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE); // Disable audio power
127
128      free(origin_buffer);
129
130      free(out_buffer);
131  }

```

The code deliberately skips the first 4000 bytes of data, as the ESP32-P4 may produce popping noises at the beginning when using the Arduino audio library for recording—necessitating the discarding of a small audio segment.

Upon playback completion, the audio power is disabled, and the memory occupied by origin_buffer and out_buffer is released.

4. mic_loudspeaker_init

This code defines the function `mic_loudspeaker_init()`, whose primary role is to initialize the microphone input and speaker output interfaces in the audio system, enabling the device to perform recording and playback operations.

```

133 void mic_loudspeaker_init()
134 {
135     pinMode(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, OUTPUT);
136     digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE); // Disable audio power
137
138     i2s_mic.setPinsPdmRx(MIC_GPIO_CLK, MIC_GPIO_SDIN); // Configure pins for microphone input
139     // Start I2S at 16 kHz frequency, 16-bit depth, mono
140     if (!i2s_mic.begin(I2S_MODE_PDM_RX, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO, I2S_STD_SLOT_LEFT)) {
141         Serial.println("PDM input initialization failed!");
142         while (1) delay(1000); // Halt execution
143     }
144
145     i2s_spk.setPins(AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA); // BCLK, LRCLK, DOUT
146     // Start I2S with the same parameters, but in output mode, using mono
147     if (!i2s_spk.begin(I2S_MODE_STD, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO, I2S_STD_SLOT_BOTH)) {
148         Serial.println("I2S output mode initialization failed!");
149         while (1) delay(1000);
150     }
151 }

```

The function first configures the audio power control pin as output mode via `"pinMode(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, OUTPUT)"`, and ensures the audio module is in a safe state at system startup by disabling the audio power through `"digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE)"`.

```

133 void mic_loudspeaker_init()
134 {
135     pinMode(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, OUTPUT);
136     digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE);

```

The program then invokes `"i2s_mic.setPinsPdmRx(MIC_GPIO_CLK, MIC_GPIO_SDIN)"` to configure the microphone input pins—where `"MIC_GPIO_CLK"` serves as the microphone clock signal line and `"MIC_GPIO_SDIN"` as the data input line. These two pins are used to receive audio data from the PDM digital microphone.

```

138     i2s_mic.setPinsPdmRx(MIC_GPIO_CLK, MIC_GPIO_SDIN);

```

The program then launches the microphone's audio acquisition interface via `"i2s_mic.begin()"`, configuring the operating mode as `"I2S_MODE_PDM_RX"` (PDM receive mode), sample rate at 16kHz, data bit width of 16 bits, channel mode as mono, and specifying the use of left channel data. Should initialization fail, the program prints an error message and enters a `"while(1)"` infinite loop to halt execution.

```

139     // Start I2S at 16 kHz frequency, 16-bit depth, mono
140     if (!i2s_mic.begin(I2S_MODE_PDM_RX, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO, I2S_STD_SLOT_LEFT)) {
141         Serial.println("PDM input initialization failed!");
142         while (1) delay(1000); // Halt execution
143     }

```

The program then proceeds to configure the speaker output interface. It sets the I2S output pins via `"i2s_spk.setPins(AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA)"`—where BCLK serves as the bit clock, LRCLK as the left-right channel clock, and SDATA as the serial audio data line.

```

145     i2s_spk.setPins(AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA); // BCLK, LRCLK, DOUT

```

The program then invokes "i2s_spk.begin()" to launch the speaker audio output interface, operating in standard I2S output mode with a sample rate of 16kHz, 16-bit width, mono output, and simultaneous duplication to both left and right channels. Should initialization fail, it similarly outputs an error message and halts program execution.

```
146 // Start I2S with the same parameters, but in output mode, using mono
147 if (!i2s_spk.begin(I2S_MODE_STD, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO, I2S_STD_SLOT_BOTH)) {
148     Serial.println("I2S output mode initialization failed!");
149     while (1) delay(1000);
150 }
151 }
```

5. Setup Section

This code defines the "setup()" function in the Arduino program, which executes only once after system power-on or reset to complete initialization work before the program begins running.

```
154 void setup() {
155     // put your setup code here, to run once:
156
157     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
158     Serial.begin(115200);
159
160     mic_loudspeaker_init();
161 }
```

The function first initializes the serial communication interface (UART0) via Serial.begin(115200), setting the baud rate to 115200. This enables the program to output debug information to the computer through the serial port, such as device status, error prompts, or runtime logs.

The program then invokes the mic_loudspeaker_init() function to initialize the audio system. This function completes the configuration of microphone input and speaker output interfaces—including setting the audio power control pin, configuring the microphone's PDM input pins, initializing the digital audio interface, and launching the audio output channel—thereby endowing the development board with audio recording and playback capabilities.

The entire initialization process primarily prepares the groundwork for subsequent I2S-based audio acquisition and playback on the ESP32-P4.

6. Loop Section

This code defines the loop() function in the Arduino program, which serves as the main execution loop that runs continuously after initialization is complete.

```
162  
163 void loop() {  
164     // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:  
165  
166     recording();  
167 }
```

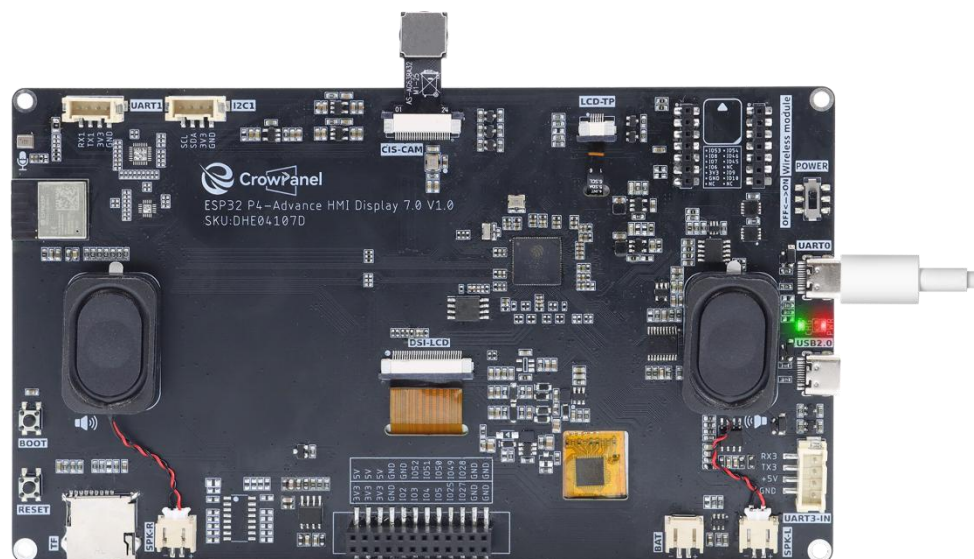
Within this function, the program invokes the "recording()" function once per loop iteration, thereby triggering the complete audio processing workflow: first capturing a segment of audio data through the microphone, then performing simple volume gain calculation and amplification on the acquired audio, and finally playing back the processed audio through the speaker.

Since "loop()" executes continuously throughout program runtime, the system repeatedly performs the recording → audio processing → speaker playback sequence—forming a real-time audio monitoring system that enables the device to continuously perform audio acquisition and playback operations via I2S on the ESP32-P4.

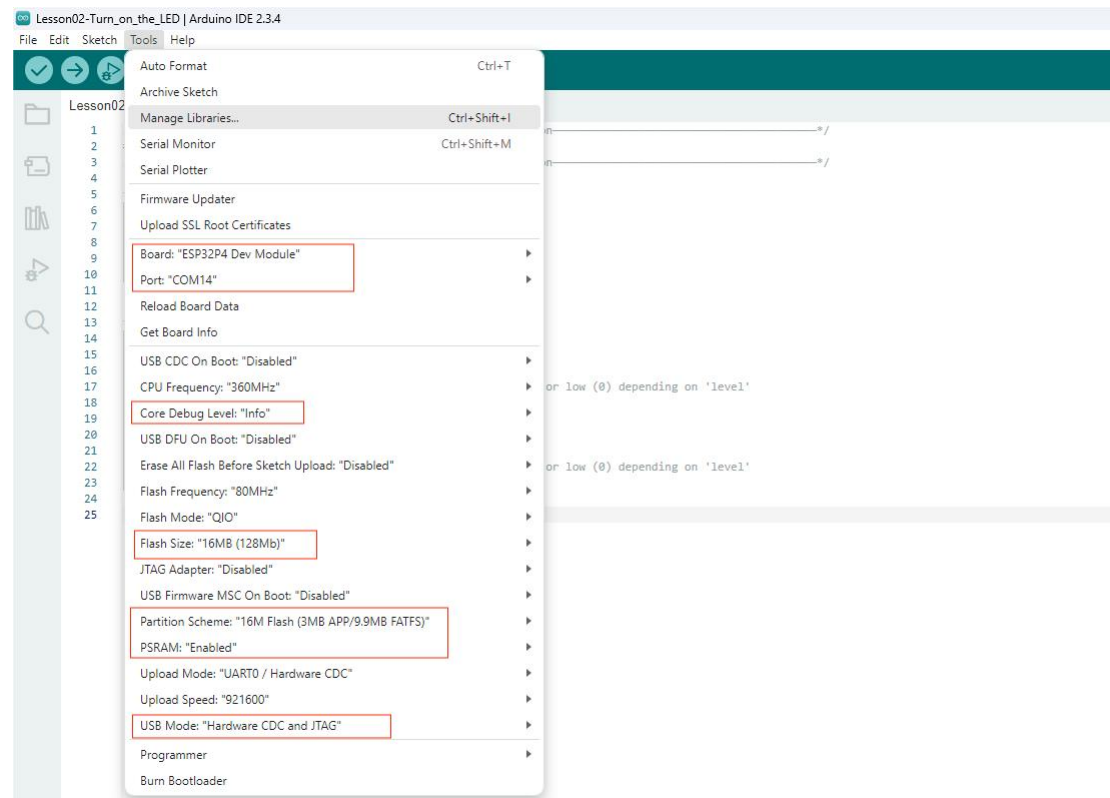
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



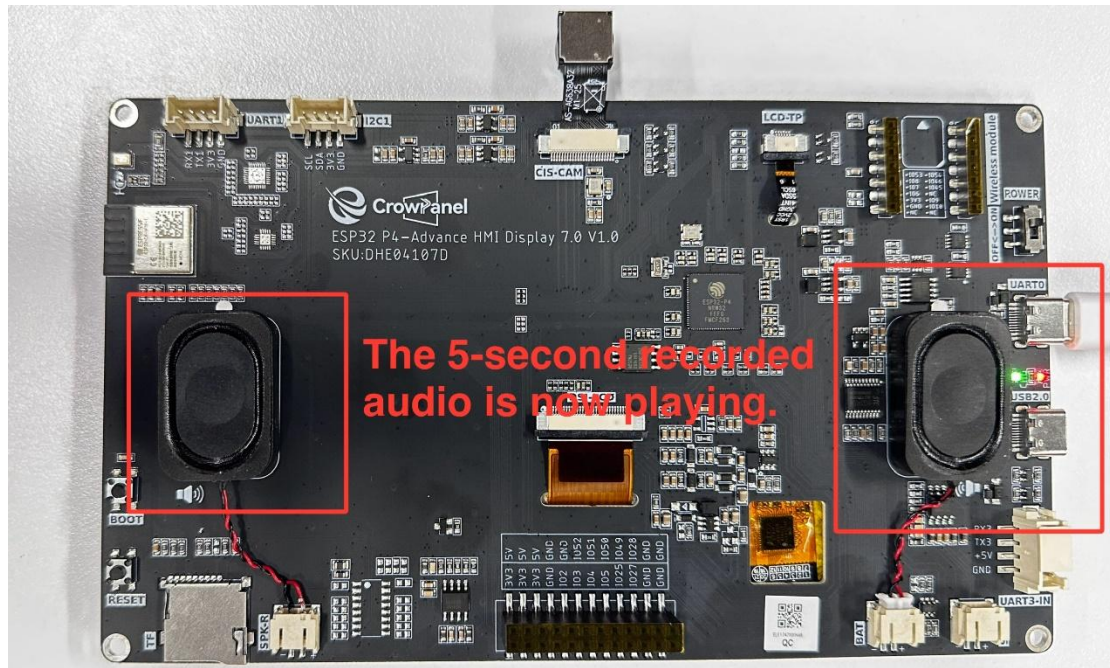
Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



Once the flashing is successful, you can speak near the Advance-P4 device. The Advance-P4 will use its microphone to record the current sound within 5 seconds, and then play it back automatically.



Lesson12--- Playing Local Music from SD Card

Introduction

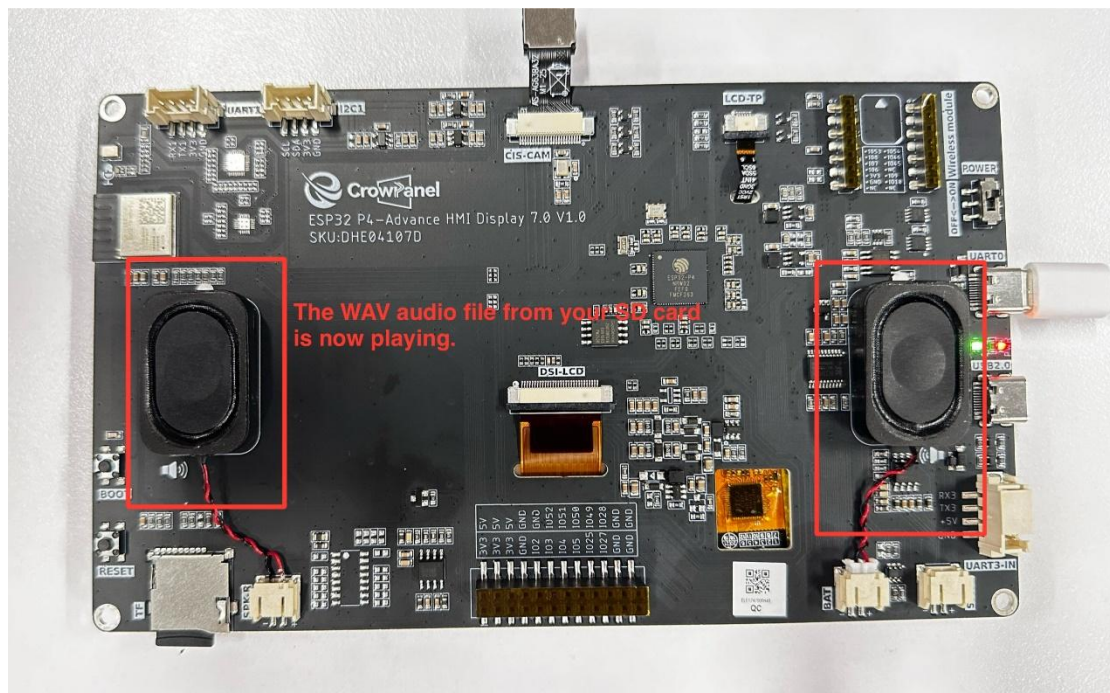
This lesson will integrate previous coursework by combining SD card reading with speaker output to implement playback of WAV music files stored on the SD card.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the collaborative working principles of SD card file reading and I2S audio playback on the ESP32-P4 development board, and master the structure and validation rules of standard WAV file headers.
2. Master the implementation methods for reading WAV audio files from the SD card (skipping file headers, chunked data reading) and outputting to the speaker via the I2S interface.
3. Master the operation of FFmpeg tool to convert MP3 to WAV files with specified parameters (16kHz, 16-bit, stereo), adapting to the development board's audio playback requirements.

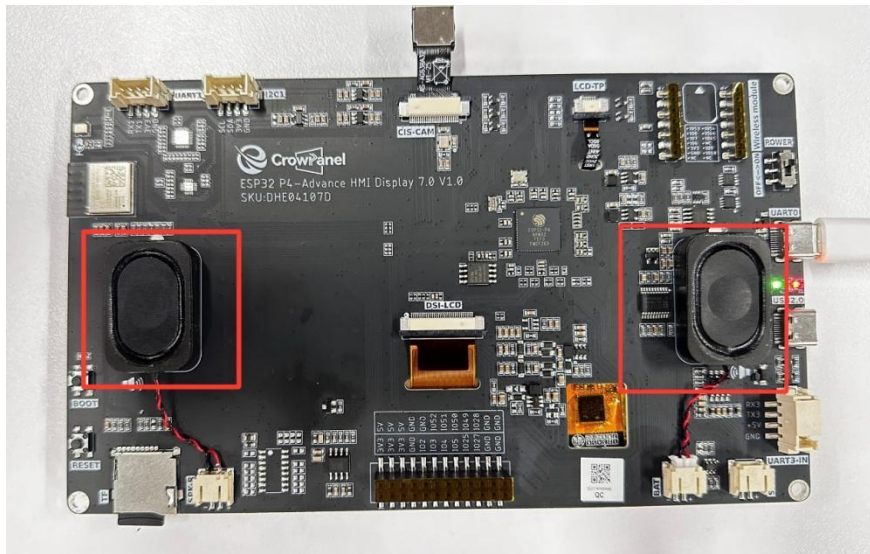
Preview of the Result

After running the code, you will be able to hear the WAV audio saved in your SD card playing through the speaker on the Advance-P4.

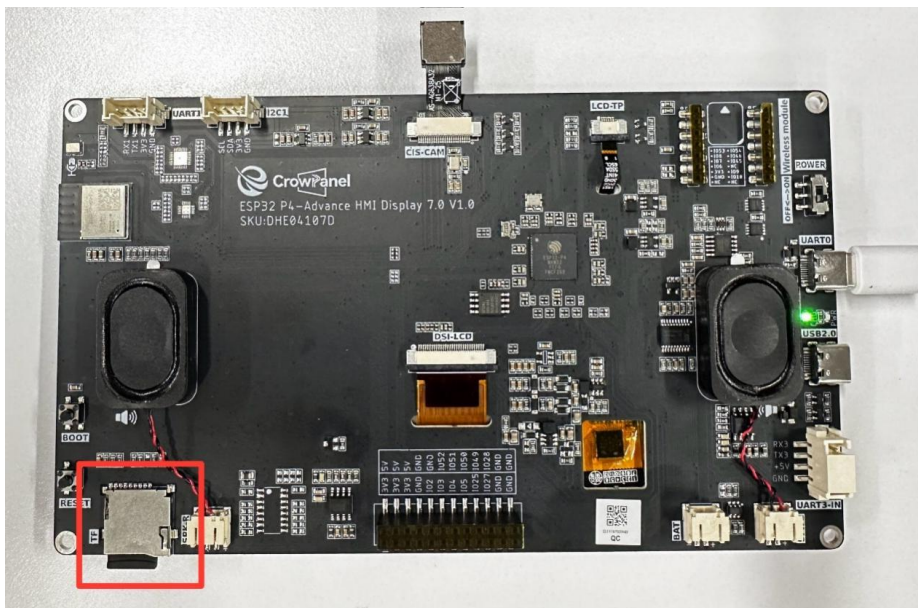


Hardware Used in This Lesson

Speaker on the Advance-P4



SD Card on the Advance-P4



Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

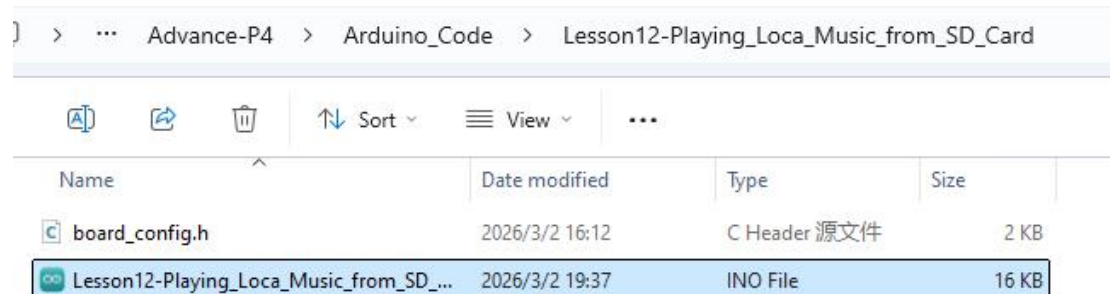
(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson12-P_Laying_Loca_Music_from_SD_Card

Key Explanations

Now let's examine how to integrate SD card reading functionality with speaker playback capabilities.

Double-click to open the code for this lesson (the .ino file).



Once opened, you will see the project code along with the configuration file `board_config.h`.

In this project, `board_config.h` contains the pin definitions and configurations for both the SD card and speaker.

We will primarily examine how the functionality is implemented in the main .ino code file.

Much of the code here has been covered in previous lessons—for example, SD card reading-related code was explained in detail in [Lesson 8](#), and speaker playback initialization code was thoroughly covered in [Lesson 11](#).

Therefore, moving forward, we will only explain code that hasn't been previously covered, helping you learn with greater precision.

1. validate_wav_header

This code implements a function `validate_wav_header(FILE *file)` for detecting whether a WAV audio file header conforms to standard format. Its primary role is to perform comprehensive format validation on WAV files from the SD card before playback begins—ensuring the file is a standard PCM WAV audio file that can be correctly parsed and played by the system, thereby avoiding playback failures or program exceptions due to file corruption or format incompatibility.

At the start of the function, it first checks whether the passed file pointer `file` is null. If null, this indicates the file was not properly opened; the function then outputs an error message via the logging macro and returns false to terminate the check.

```

126 bool validate_wav_header(FILE *file)
127 {
128     if (file == NULL)
129     {
130         AUDIO_ERROR("File pointer is NULL");
131         return false;
132     }

```

If the file pointer is valid, the function retrieves the current file pointer position via

"ftell(file)" and saves it to the variable "original_position". This allows the file pointer to be restored to its original position after the check completes, preventing interference with subsequent file reading operations.

```
133     long original_position = ftell(file); /*Store current file
134     if (original_position == -1)
135     {
136         AUDIO_ERROR("Cannot get current file position");
137         return false;
138     }
```

The program then uses "fseek(file, 0, SEEK_SET)" to move the file pointer to the beginning of the file, since the WAV file header is located at the very start. It then defines a buffer "uint8_t header[44]" and reads 44 bytes of header data from the file via "fread()"—the standard length of a PCM WAV file header.

```
139     if (fseek(file, 0, SEEK_SET) != 0) /*Rewind to beginning of file*/
140     {
141         AUDIO_ERROR("Cannot seek to file beginning");
142         return false;
143     }
```

If the number of bytes read is less than 44, this indicates the file is incomplete or has an abnormal format. The program will output an error message, restore the file pointer position, and return "false".

```
144     uint8_t header[44]; /*Read and validate WAV header*/
145     size_t bytes_read = fread(header, 1, 44, file);
146     if (bytes_read != 44)
147     {
148         AUDIO_ERROR("Cannot read complete WAV header (%d bytes)", bytes_read);
149         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
150         return false;
151     }
```

After successfully reading the header data, the function proceeds to check the WAV file structure item by item: it first uses "memcmp(header, "RIFF", 4)" to verify whether the file begins with the "RIFF" identifier—the RIFF chunk signature of WAV files.

```
152     if (memcmp(header, "RIFF", 4) != 0) /*Validate RIFF chunk descriptor*/
153     {
154         AUDIO_ERROR("Invalid RIFF header");
155         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
156         return false;
157     }
```

It then checks whether the bytes at offset 8 contain "WAVE" to confirm that the file type is indeed in WAV format.

```
158     if (memcmp(header + 8, "WAVE", 4) != 0) /*Validate WAVE format*/
159     {
160         AUDIO_ERROR("Invalid WAVE format");
161         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
162         return false;
163     }
```

It then checks for the "fmt " sub-chunk identifier at offset 12 bytes, indicating the

presence of the format information block in the file.

```

164     if (memcmp(header + 12, "fmt ", 4) != 0) /*Validate fmt subchunk*/
165     {
166         AUDIO_ERROR("Invalid fmt subchunk");
167         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
168         return false;
169     }

```

The program then parses key audio parameters from the header data—for instance, reading the audio format "audio_format" via "(uint16_t*)(header + 20)" and verifying that it equals 1, since 1 represents PCM (Pulse Code Modulation) uncompressed audio format—the most common and readily playable format.

```

170     uint16_t audio_format = *(uint16_t*)(header + 20); /*Check audio format (should be 1 for PCM)*/
171     if (audio_format != 1)
172     {
173         AUDIO_ERROR("Unsupported audio format: %d (only PCM supported)", audio_format);
174         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
175         return false;
176     }

```

It then reads "(header + 22)" to obtain the number of channels "num_channels", verifying that it is either 1 (mono) or 2 (stereo).

```

177     uint16_t num_channels = *(uint16_t*)(header + 22); /*Check number of c
178     if (num_channels != 1 && num_channels != 2)
179     {
180         AUDIO_ERROR("Unsupported number of channels: %d", num_channels);
181         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
182         return false;
183     }

```

It then reads "(header + 24)" to obtain the sample rate "sample_rate", verifying that it belongs to common sampling rates (8000, 16000, 22050, 44100, 48000 Hz).

```

184     uint32_t sample_rate = *(uint32_t*)(header + 24); /*Check sample rate (support common rates)*/
185     if (sample_rate != 8000 && sample_rate != 16000 && sample_rate != 22050 && sample_rate != 44100 && sample_rate != 48000)
186     {
187         AUDIO_ERROR("Uncommon sample rate: %lu Hz", sample_rate);
188         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
189         return false;
190     }

```

It then reads "(header + 34)" to obtain the bits per sample "bits_per_sample", permitting only 8, 16, 24, or 32 bits.

```

191     uint16_t bits_per_sample = *(uint16_t*)(header + 34); /*Check bits per sample (support 8, 16, 24, 32)*/
192     if (bits_per_sample != 8 && bits_per_sample != 16 && bits_per_sample != 24 && bits_per_sample != 32)
193     {
194         AUDIO_ERROR("Unsupported bits per sample: %d", bits_per_sample);
195         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
196         return false;
197     }

```

Upon completing these parameter checks, the program further verifies the presence of the "data" identifier at offset 36 bytes to confirm that the audio data chunk actually exists.

```

198     if (memcmp(header + 36, "data", 4) != 0) /*Validate data subchunk*/
199     {
200         AUDIO_ERROR("Invalid data subchunk");
201         fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
202         return false;
203     }

```

Should any of these verification steps fail, the function prints the corresponding error message, restores the file pointer to its original position, and returns "false" to indicate invalid file format. If all checks pass, the function proceeds to read the RIFF chunk size "(header+4)" and data chunk size "(header+40)" from the header to calculate the total file size and audio data size. It then outputs detailed WAV file information via logs—including number of channels, sample rate, bit depth, data size, and total file size—facilitating debugging and audio parameter verification for developers.

```

204     /*Get file size from RIFF header for additional validation*/
205     uint32_t file_size = *(uint32_t*)(header + 4) + 8; // RIFF block size + 8-byte header
206     uint32_t data_size = *(uint32_t*)(header + 40);
207
208     AUDIO_INFO("WAV File Info: %d channels, %lu Hz, %d bits, %lu bytes data, %lu bytes total",
209               num_channels, sample_rate, bits_per_sample, data_size, file_size);
210     /*Restore original file position*/
211     fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET);
212     return true;
213 }

```

Finally, the function restores the file pointer to its position prior to the function call via `fseek(file, original_position, SEEK_SET)` to ensure subsequent file reading operations are not affected, and returns true—indicating the WAV file header has passed validation and can be safely processed or played.

2.Audio_play_wav_sd

This code implements a function `Audio_play_wav_sd(const char *filename)` that reads a WAV audio file from the SD card and plays it through the I2S interface to the speaker. The core function of this entire routine is to complete the full workflow of audio file opening, format validation, audio data reading, data processing, and I2S output playback.

At the start of the function, it first declares an `esp_err_t err` variable initialized to `ESP_OK` for tracking execution status. It then checks whether the passed file path parameter `filename` is null; if so, it immediately returns `ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG` indicating invalid parameters.

```

215     esp_err_t Audio_play_wav_sd(const char *filename)
216     {
217         esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
218         if (filename == NULL)
219             return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG;

```

It then uses "`fopen(filename, "rb")`" to open the audio file from the SD card in binary read mode. If the file fails to open, it outputs an error log and returns the corresponding error code.

```

221 FILE *fh = fopen(filename, "rb");
222 if (fh == NULL)
223 {
224     AUDIO_ERROR("Failed to open file");
225     return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG;
226 }

```

Once the file is successfully opened, the function invokes "validate_wav_header(fh)" to validate the WAV file header—confirming whether the file conforms to the required PCM WAV audio format. If validation fails, indicating incorrect file format, the program closes the file and returns an error.

```

227 if (!validate_wav_header(fh)) /*Validate WAV header*/
228 {
229     AUDIO_ERROR("Invalid WAV file format: %s", filename);
230     fclose(fh);
231     return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG;
232 }

```

Upon successful validation, the function uses "fseek(fh, 44, SEEK_SET)" to move the file pointer to byte position 44, since the first 44 bytes of a standard WAV file constitute the header information—the actual audio sample data begins after byte 44.

```

233 if (fseek(fh, 44, SEEK_SET) != 0) /*Skip 44-byte WAV header*/
234 {
235     AUDIO_ERROR("Failed to seek file");
236     fclose(fh);
237     return ESP_FAIL;
238 }

```

The program then configures the audio buffer size, defining 512 samples per read ("SAMPLES_PER_BUFFER"), and calculates the sizes for the input buffer "INPUT_BUFFER_SIZE" and output buffer "OUTPUT_BUFFER_SIZE". It then dynamically allocates two buffers "input_buf" and "output_buf" via "heap_caps_malloc()" in memory regions supporting DMA and external PSRAM—ensuring efficient data access during I2S transmission. Should memory allocation fail, it releases already allocated resources and returns an out-of-memory error.

```

239 /*Buffer configuration*/
240 const size_t SAMPLES_PER_BUFFER = 512;
241 const size_t INPUT_BUFFER_SIZE = SAMPLES_PER_BUFFER * sizeof(int16_t);
242 const size_t OUTPUT_BUFFER_SIZE = SAMPLES_PER_BUFFER * 2 * sizeof(int16_t);
243 /* Allocate buffers*/
244 int16_t *input_buf = (int16_t*)heap_caps_malloc(INPUT_BUFFER_SIZE, MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM | MALLOC_CAP_DMA | MALLOC_CAP_32BIT);
245 int16_t *output_buf = (int16_t*)heap_caps_malloc(OUTPUT_BUFFER_SIZE, MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM | MALLOC_CAP_DMA | MALLOC_CAP_32BIT);

```

Upon successful buffer creation, the program initializes multiple variables for tracking read sample count, written byte count, and total playback sample count.

```

247     if (input_buf == NULL || output_buf == NULL)
248     {
249         AUDIO_ERROR("Failed to allocate audio buffers");
250         if (input_buf)
251             free(input_buf);
252         if (output_buf)
253             free(output_buf);
254         fclose(fh);
255         return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM;
256     }

```

It then enables the audio power via "digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_ENABLE)", bringing the amplifier or audio circuitry into operational state.

```

257     size_t samples_read = 0;
258     size_t bytes_to_write = 0;
259     size_t bytes_written = 0;
260     size_t total_samples = 0;
261     int32_t volume_data = 0;
262     digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_ENABLE); // Enable audio power

```

The program then enters a "while(1)" loop, continuously reading 512 "int16_t" audio samples from the file into "input_buf" using "fread()". If the number of samples read is 0, indicating end-of-file has been reached, the loop exits.

```

263     while (1)
264     {
265         samples_read = fread(input_buf, sizeof(int16_t), SAMPLES_PER_BUFFER, fh);
266         if (samples_read == 0)
267             break;
268         for (size_t i = 0; i < samples_read; i++) /*convert mono to stereo*/
269         {
270             volume_data = input_buf[i] * 1; /*Linear multiplication*/
271             if (volume_data > 32767)
272                 volume_data = 32767;
273             else if (volume_data < -32768)
274                 volume_data = -32768;
275             output_buf[i] = (int16_t)volume_data; /*Left channel*/
276         }

```

For each sample value read, the program performs simple volume processing within a "for" loop—applying linear gain amplification via "volume_data = input_buf[i] * 1" (current gain factor is 1, indicating no volume change). The result is then constrained within upper and lower bounds to ensure the data remains within the 16-bit audio permitted range (-32768 to 32767), preventing overflow. The processed data is then written to "output_buf" (the current code only writes left channel data).

Upon completing data processing, the program calculates the number of bytes to be written to I2S, and invokes "i2s_spk.write((uint8_t*)output_buf, bytes_to_write)" to transmit the audio data to the speaker via the I2S interface. If the actual number of bytes written does not match the expected value, this indicates an I2S write issue—the program prints an error log and exits the loop.

```

278     bytes_to_write = samples_read * sizeof(int16_t);
279     bytes_written = 0;
280
281     bytes_written = i2s_spk.write((uint8_t*)output_buf, bytes_to_write); /*I2S write data*/
282     if (bytes_written != bytes_to_write)
283     {
284         AUDIO_ERROR("I2S write failed: %s, written: %d/%d", esp_err_to_name(err), bytes_written, bytes_to_write);
285         break;
286     }

```

After each successful data transmission, the program accumulates `total_samples` to track the number of audio samples played.

```

286     }
287     total_samples += samples_read;
288 }

```

Upon loop termination, the function enters the cleanup phase: it disables the audio power via `digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE)`, releases the previously allocated memory for `input_buf` and `output_buf`, and closes the file handle `fh`.

```

289     /*Cleanup*/
290     digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE); // Disable audio power
291     free(input_buf);
292     free(output_buf);
293     fclose(fh);
294     AUDIO_INFO("Audio playback completed: %d samples", total_samples);
295     return err;
296 }

```

Finally, it outputs a log message indicating audio playback completion and the total sample count played, then returns the function execution result `err`—signifying that the entire WAV audio file has been successfully read from the SD card and played back through the I2S interface.

3.mic_loudspeaker_init

This code implements an audio device initialization function `"mic_loudspeaker_init()"`, whose primary role is to complete I2S audio initialization for both microphone input and speaker output interfaces at system startup, while controlling the audio power state—preparing the groundwork for subsequent audio acquisition or playback functionality.

```

312 void mic_loudspeaker_init()
313 {
314     pinMode(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, OUTPUT);
315     digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE); // Disable audio power
316
317     i2s_mic.setPinsPdmRx(MIC_GPIO_CLK, MIC_GPIO_SDIN); // Configure pins for microphone input
318     // Start I2S at 16 kHz frequency, 16-bit depth, mono
319     if (!i2s_mic.begin(I2S_MODE_PDM_RX, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO, I2S_STD_SLOT_LEFT)) {
320         Serial.println("PDM input initialization failed!");
321         while (1) delay(1000); // Halt execution
322     }
323
324     i2s_spk.setPins(AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_SDOUT); // BCLK, LRCLK, DOUT
325     // Start I2S with the same parameters, but in output mode, using mono
326     if (!i2s_spk.begin(I2S_MODE_STD, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_STEREO, I2S_STD_SLOT_BOTH)) {
327         Serial.println("I2S output mode initialization failed!");
328         while (1) delay(1000);
329     }
330 }

```

The function begins by configuring the `AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL` pin as output mode via

pinMode(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, OUTPUT). This pin is typically used to control the power switch of the audio amplifier or audio circuitry. It then sets this pin to the disabled state through digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE)—turning off the audio power during the initialization phase to prevent the speaker from producing noise or abnormal signals during startup.

```
312 void mic_loudspeaker_init()
313 {
314     pinMode(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, OUTPUT);
315     digitalWrite(AUDIO_GPIO_CTRL, AUDIO_POWER_DISABLE); // Disable audio power
```

The program then proceeds to initialize the microphone interface. It first invokes "i2s mic.setPinsPdmRx(MIC_GPIO_CLK, MIC_GPIO_SDIN)" to configure the I2S receive pins used by the PDM microphone—where "MIC_GPIO_CLK" outputs the PDM clock signal and "MIC_GPIO_SDIN" receives the microphone's data input signal.

```
317 i2s_mic.setPinsPdmRx(MIC_GPIO_CLK, MIC_GPIO_SDIN); //
```

It subsequently calls i2s_mic.begin() to launch the I2S receive module and configure audio parameters: I2S_MODE_PDM_RX indicates PDM (Pulse Density Modulation) mode for audio acquisition, sample rate set to 16000 Hz (16 kHz), data bit width of 16 bits, channel mode as mono (I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO), with I2S_STD_SLOT_LEFT specifying left channel data usage.

```
319 if (!i2s_mic.begin(I2S_MODE_PDM_RX, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_MONO, I2S_STD_SLOT_LEFT)) {
320     Serial.println("PDM input initialization failed!");
321     while (1) delay(1000); // Halt execution
322 }
323
```

Should the microphone I2S initialization fail, the program prints the error message "PDM input initialization failed!" via the serial port and enters a "while(1)" infinite loop with "delay(1000)"—halting program execution for one-second intervals to facilitate troubleshooting by the developer.

Upon completing microphone initialization, the function continues with speaker output interface initialization. It first invokes "i2s_spk.setPins(AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA)" to configure the three critical pins for I2S audio output—where "AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK" is the Bit Clock, "AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK" is the Left/Right Clock (also known as WS), and "AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA" is the audio data output pin.

```
324 i2s_spk.setPins(AUDIO_GPIO_BCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_LRCLK, AUDIO_GPIO_SDATA); //
```

It then calls "i2s_spk.begin()" to launch the I2S output module with audio parameters similar to the input: sample rate likewise at 16000 Hz, bit width of 16 bits, but channel mode set to stereo ("I2S_SLOT_MODE_STEREO"), with "I2S_STD_SLOT_BOTH" indicating simultaneous use of both left and right channels for audio output.

```
326 if (!i2s_spk.begin(I2S_MODE_STD, 16000, I2S_DATA_BIT_WIDTH_16BIT, I2S_SLOT_MODE_STEREO, I2S_STD_SLOT_BOTH)) {
327     Serial.println("I2S output mode initialization failed!");
328     while (1) delay(1000);
329 }
330
331
```

Should the I2S speaker initialization fail, the program similarly prints the error message "I2S output mode initialization failed!" and enters an infinite loop to halt program execution.

4. setup

This code implements the Arduino program's "setup()" initialization function, whose primary role is to execute system initialization once upon device power-on or reset—completing initialization of the serial debugging interface, SD card storage system, and audio input/output devices, while simultaneously reading and playing a WAV audio file from the SD card.

```
333 void setup() {  
334     // put your setup code here, to run once:  
335  
336     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)  
337     Serial.begin(115200);  
338  
339     // Initialize sd card  
340     sd_card_init(); // Call initialization function to set up SD card and other components  
341  
342     mic_loudspeaker_init();  
343  
344     Audio_play_wav_sd(SD_MOUNT_POINT"/huahai.wav");  
345 }
```

The function begins by invoking "Serial.begin(115200)" to initialize the default serial port (UART0) with a baud rate of 115200. This enables developers to view debug information, error prompts, and log outputs during program execution through the serial monitor—facilitating development and troubleshooting.

The program then calls `sd_card_init()` to initialize the SD card module. This function completes SD card interface configuration, SDMMC communication initialization, and FAT file system mounting—enabling the system to access files on the SD card. Should SD card initialization fail, the function typically continues attempting reinitialization internally to ensure proper recognition and mounting of the SD card storage device.

Subsequently, the program invokes `mic_loudspeaker_init()` to initialize the audio hardware devices. This function is primarily responsible for configuring the I2S interfaces used by the microphone and speaker—including setting corresponding GPIO pins, configuring audio sample rate (such as 16 kHz), data bit width (16 bits), and channel mode (mono or stereo), while also initializing the audio power control pin—thereby ensuring the system can properly perform audio acquisition and output.

Upon completing these foundational hardware initializations, the program finally calls `Audio_play_wav_sd(SD_MOUNT_POINT"/huahai.wav")` to read a WAV audio file named `huahai.wav` (with full path `/sdcard/huahai.wav`) from the mounted SD card file system, and transmits the audio data to the speaker via the I2S interface for playback.

5. Converting MP3 to WAV

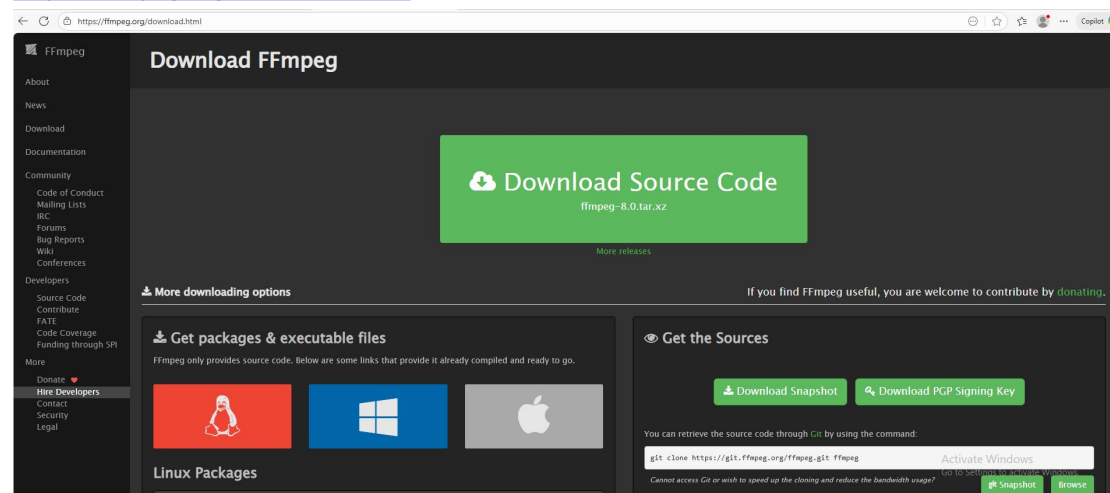
As mentioned above, if you want to play audio based on the code of this lesson, the audio must meet the requirement of being a WAV file with 16kHz sampling rate, 16-bit bit depth, and stereo format (i.e., dual-channel).

Next, I will show you how to convert an MP3 audio file to a WAV audio file that meets the specifications of 16kHz, 16-bit, and stereo (dual-channel).

FFmpeg is an open-source toolkit for processing multimedia files such as video and audio. It supports conversion, cutting, and editing of almost all multimedia formats, making it an essential tool for developers and multimedia professionals.

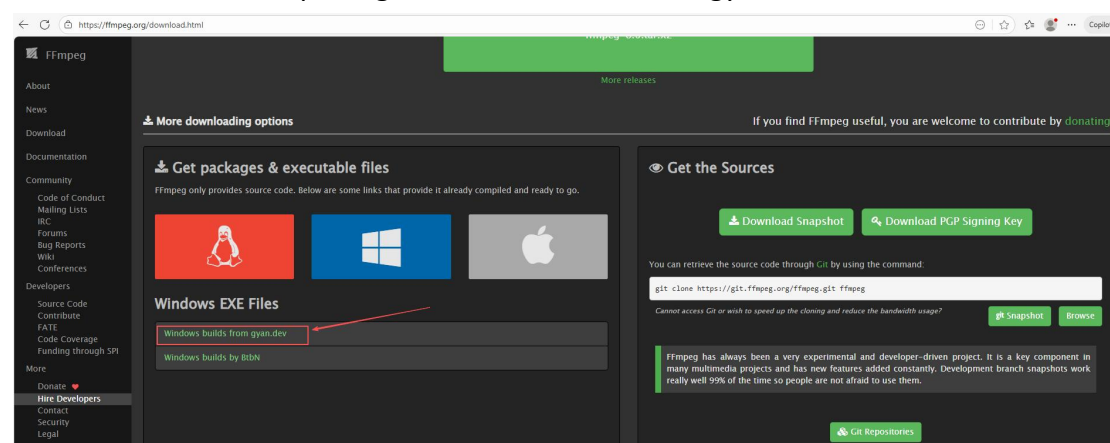
Open the following link to download FFmpeg:

<https://ffmpeg.org/download.html>

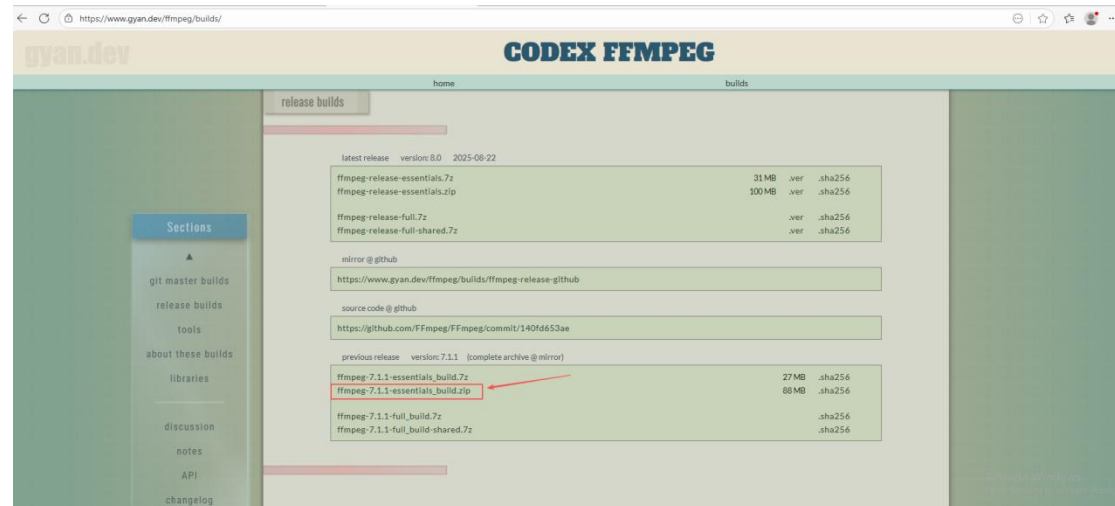


Taking Windows as an Example:

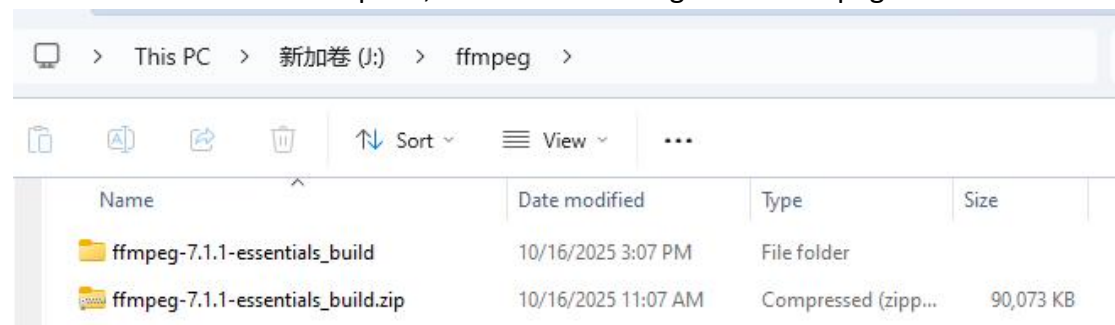
Select the installation package "Windows builds from gyan.dev".



Scroll down to find the "release builds" section, then select "ffmpeg-7.1.1-essentials_build.zip".

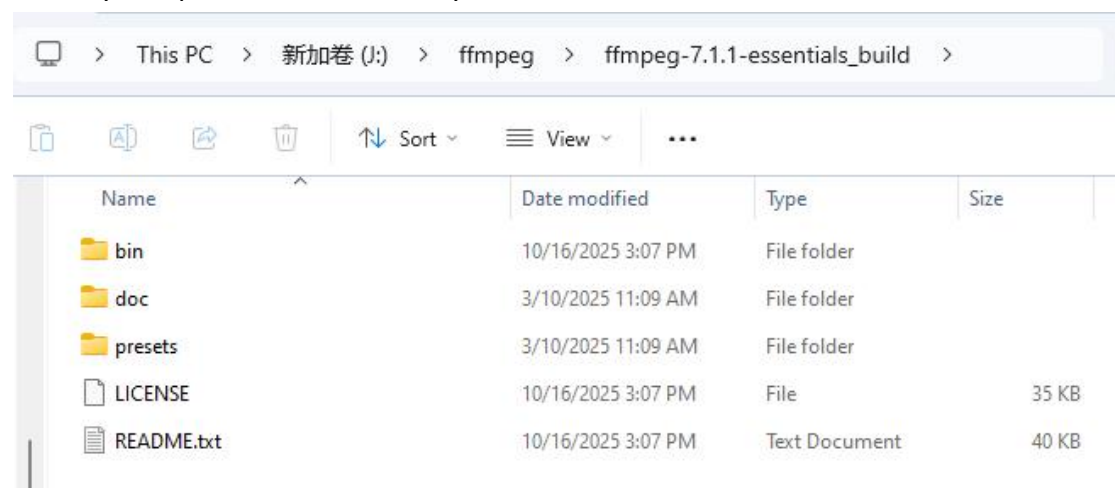


Once the download is complete, extract the file to get the "FFmpeg" folder.



Recommended Saving Path

It is recommended to extract and save the folder to a non-system drive (not the C drive). This avoids occupying space on the C drive (system drive), ensuring the stability and performance of the system.



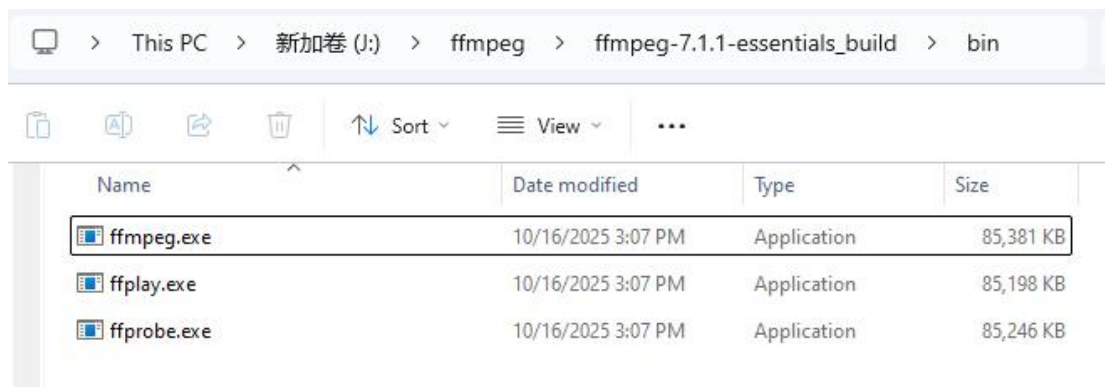
Directory Structure of the Extracted Folder

The extracted folder should contain the following directories:

- **"bin"**: The folder containing FFmpeg executable files. All commands to run FFmpeg must be executed via the files in this directory.
- **"doc"**: Documentation and reference materials.

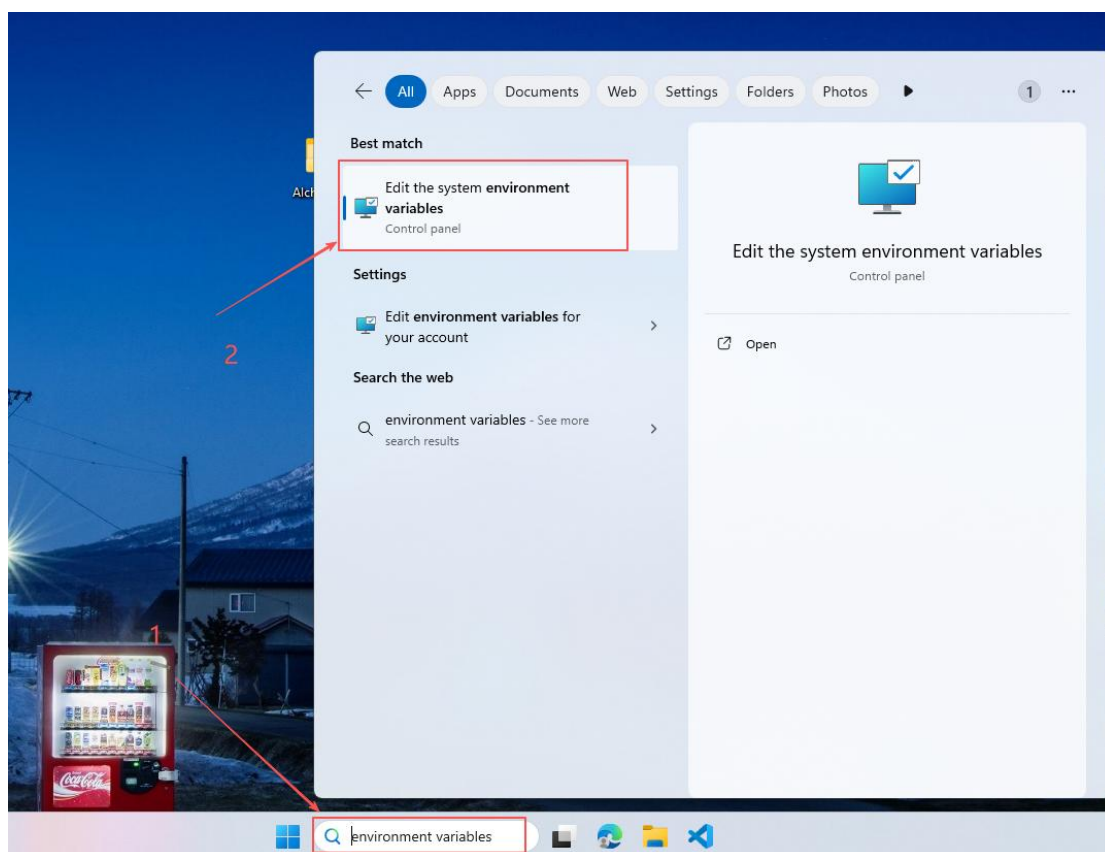
- **"presets"**: Preconfigured formats and encoding schemes.

Navigate to the **"bin"** directory, and you will see three core executable files of FFmpeg: **"ffmpeg.exe"**, **"ffplay.exe"**, and **"ffprobe.exe"**.

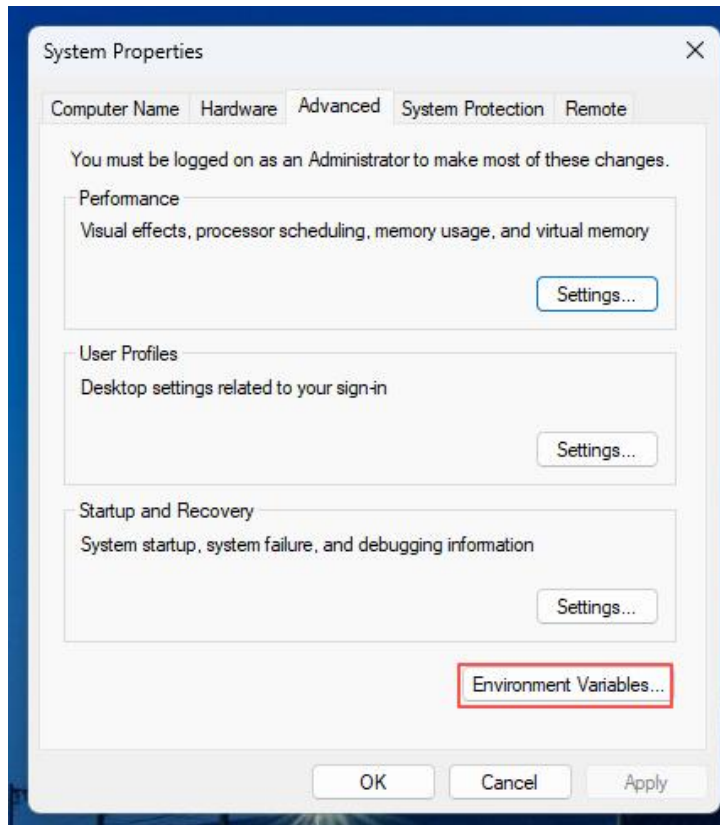


To conveniently call FFmpeg directly in the command line, you need to add it to the system's environment variables.

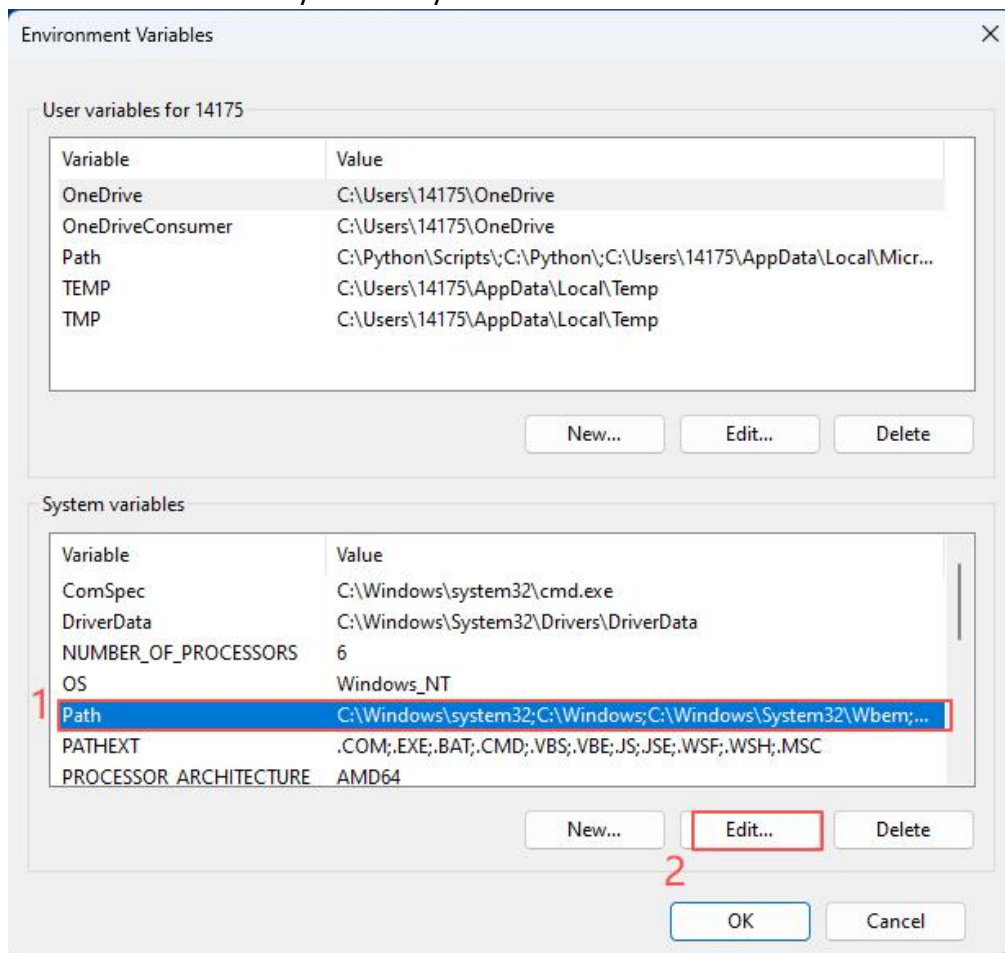
Search for "Environment Variables" in the Start Menu at the bottom left of the desktop, find "Edit the system environment variables", and click to open it.



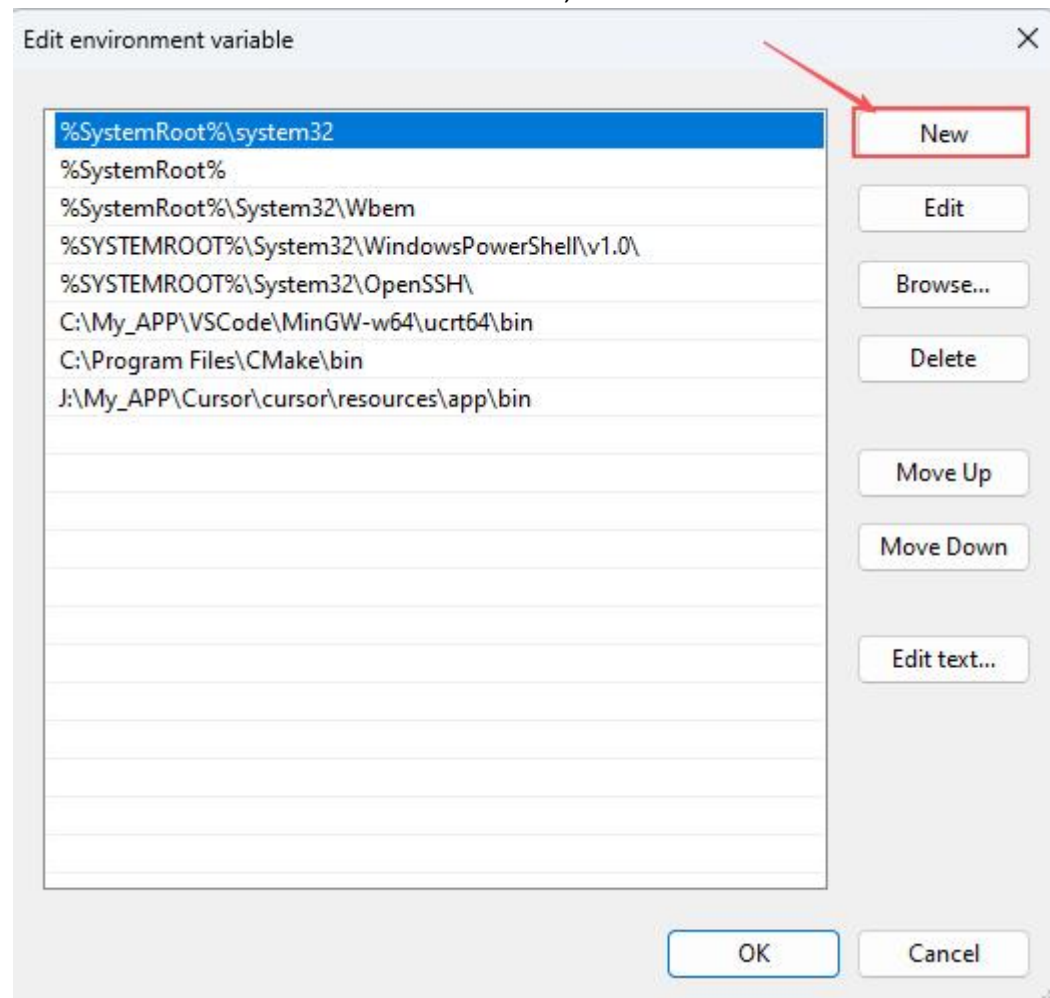
Click the "Environment Variables" button.



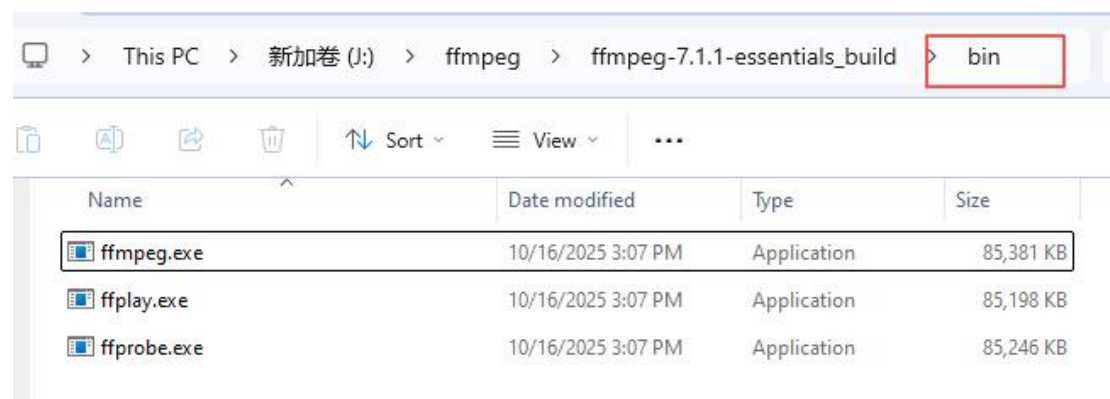
Locate the "Path" entry under "System Variables" and click "Edit".

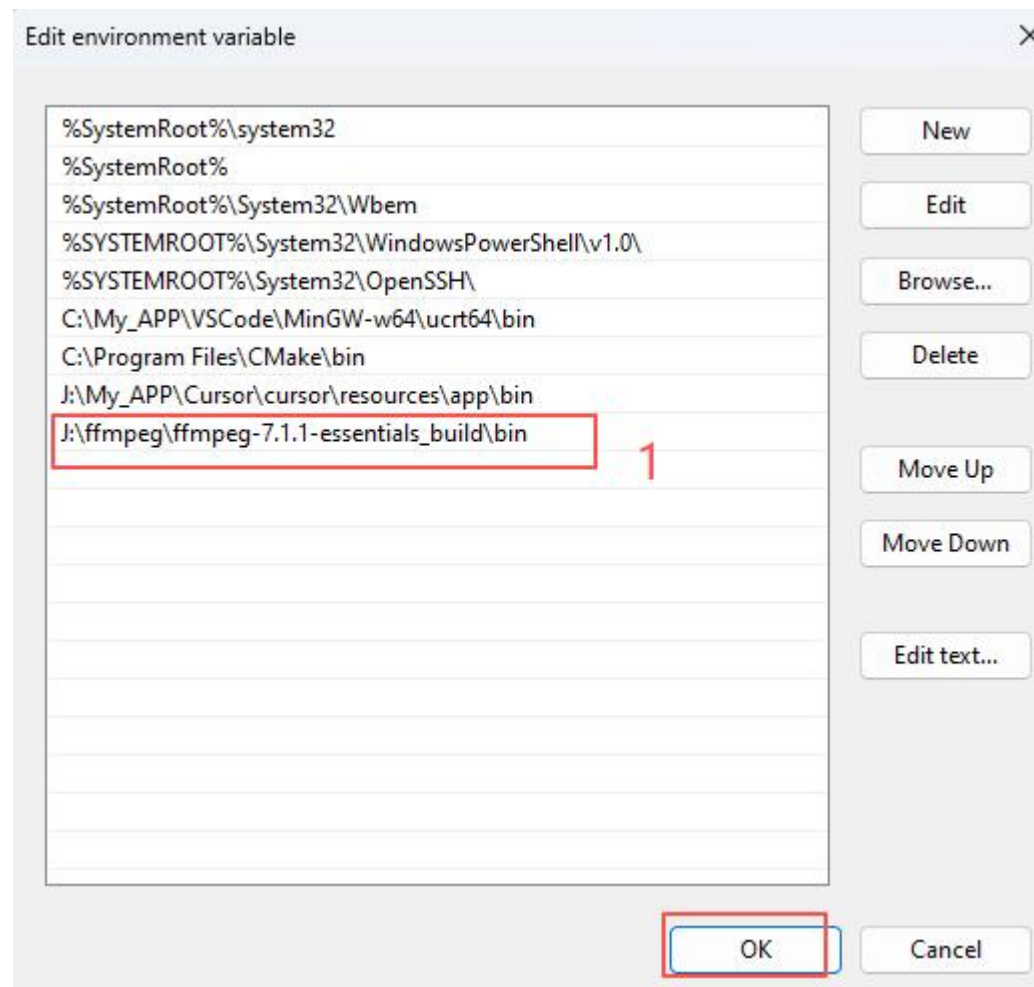


In the "Edit environment variable" window, click "New".



Enter the path to the "bin" folder of FFmpeg (use your own FFmpeg path)



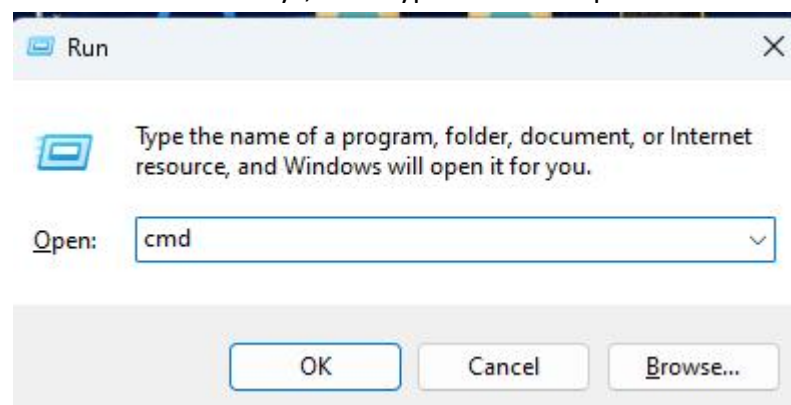


Remember to save the settings after entering the path.

Note: Ensure the path is accurate so the system can correctly locate the FFmpeg files.

Verifying Successful FFmpeg Installation

Press the **Win + R** keys, then type "cmd" to open the command line window.



Type the following command in the command line to check the FFmpeg version:

`ffmpeg -version`

If the FFmpeg version number and related information are displayed correctly, it indicates that the installation is successful (as shown in the figure below).

```

C:\Windows\system32\cmd.e. X + -
Microsoft Windows [Version 10.0.22631.6060]
(c) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Users\14175>ffmpeg -version
ffmpeg version 7.1.1-essentials_build-www.gyan.dev Copyright (c) 2000-2025 the FFmpeg developers
built with gcc 14.2.0 (Rev1, Built by MSYS2 project)
configuration: --enable-gpl --enable-version3 --enable-static --disable-w32threads --disable-autodetect --enable-fontcon
fig --enable-iconv --enable-gnutls --enable-libxml2 --enable-gmp --enable-bzlib --enable-lzma --enable-zlib --enable-lib
srt --enable-libssh --enable-libzmq --enable-avisynth --enable-sdl2 --enable-libwebp --enable-libx264 --enable-libx265 -
--enable-libxvid --enable-libaom --enable-libopenjpeg --enable-libvpx --enable-mediafoundation --enable-libass --enable-l
ibfreetype --enable-libfribidi --enable-libharfbuzz --enable-libvidstab --enable-libvmaf --enable-libzimg --enable-amf -
--enable-cuda-llvm --enable-cuvid --enable-dxva2 --enable-d3d11va --enable-d3d12va --enable-ffnvcodec --enable-libvpl --e
nable-nvdec --enable-nvenc --enable-vaapi --enable-libgme --enable-libopenmpt --enable-libopencore-amrwb --enable-libmp3
lame --enable-libtheora --enable-libvo-amrwbenc --enable-libgsm --enable-libopencore-amrnb --enable-libopus --enable-lib
speex --enable-libvorbis --enable-librubberband
libavutil      59. 39.100 / 59. 39.100
libavcodec     61. 19.101 / 61. 19.101
libavformat    61.  7.100 / 61.  7.100
libavdevice    61.  3.100 / 61.  3.100
libavfilter    10.  4.100 / 10.  4.100
libswscale     8.  3.100 /  8.  3.100
libswresample  5.  3.100 /  5.  3.100
libpostproc   58.  3.100 / 58.  3.100

C:\Users\14175>

```

Then, still in the command window, install the dependency by running:
 pip install pydub

```

C:\Users\14175>pip install pydub
Collecting pydub
  Downloading pydub-0.25.1-py2.py3-none-any.whl.metadata (1.4 kB)
  Downloading pydub-0.25.1-py2.py3-none-any.whl (32 kB)
Installing collected packages: pydub
Successfully installed pydub-0.25.1

C:\Users\14175>

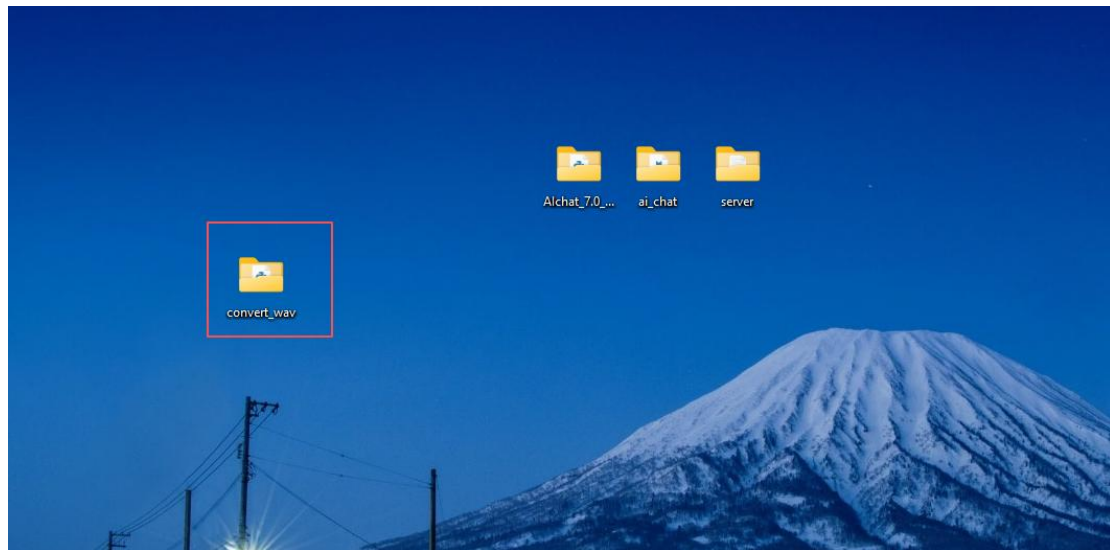
```

After installation, open the script code we prepared for converting MP3 to WAV format (meeting the specifications of 16kHz, 16-bit, and stereo/dual-channel) in the provided code package.

Click the link below to open the script code:

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/convert_wav

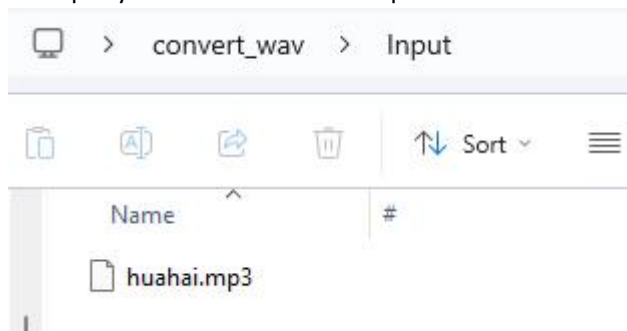
Now I have placed this script on my desktop.



In the command window, I navigate to this path.

```
C:\Users\14175>cd Desktop/  
C:\Users\14175\Desktop>cd convert_wav  
C:\Users\14175\Desktop\convert_wav>
```

Then put your MP3 files in the "Input" folder.



Run this script code. (Ensure your Python environment is Python 3.11.2.)

```
C:\Users\14175\Desktop\convert_wav>python --version  
Python 3.11.2
```

Starting from Python 3.13: The official team removed the audioop module (which pydub depends on). Some third-party libraries (such as pyaudio, pygame, pydub) are not yet fully compatible.

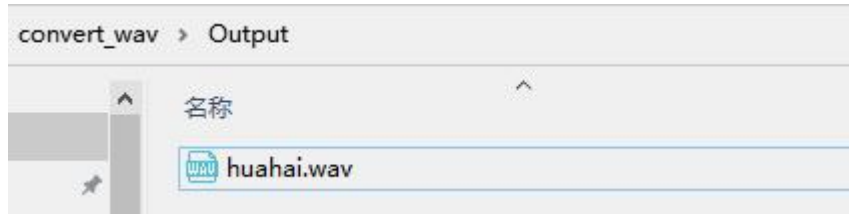
For Python 3.11.x:

- ✓ Stable, mature, and highly compatible;
- ✓ Includes audioop;
- ✓ Perfectly compatible with most AI, audio, and data analysis libraries.

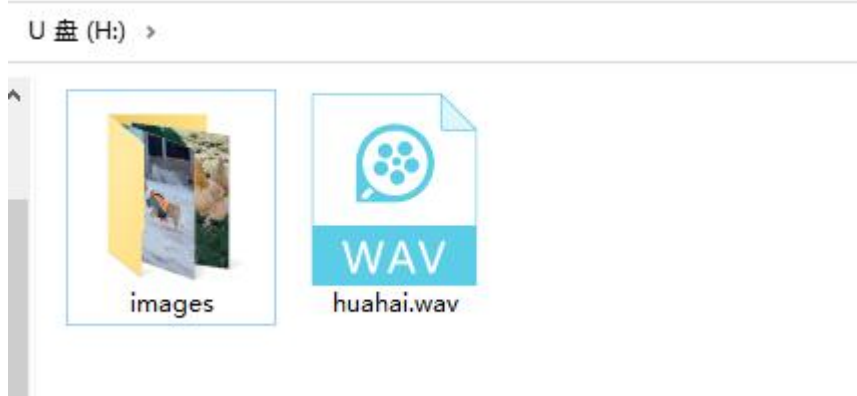
Run our script:

```
C:\> Desktop\convert_wav>python mp3_to_wav.py
[OK] huanai.mp3 -> C:\Users\admin\Desktop\convert_wav\Output\huahai.wav (Conversion: Yes)
☐ Batch conversion completed. All files meet ESP32 I2S requirements.
```

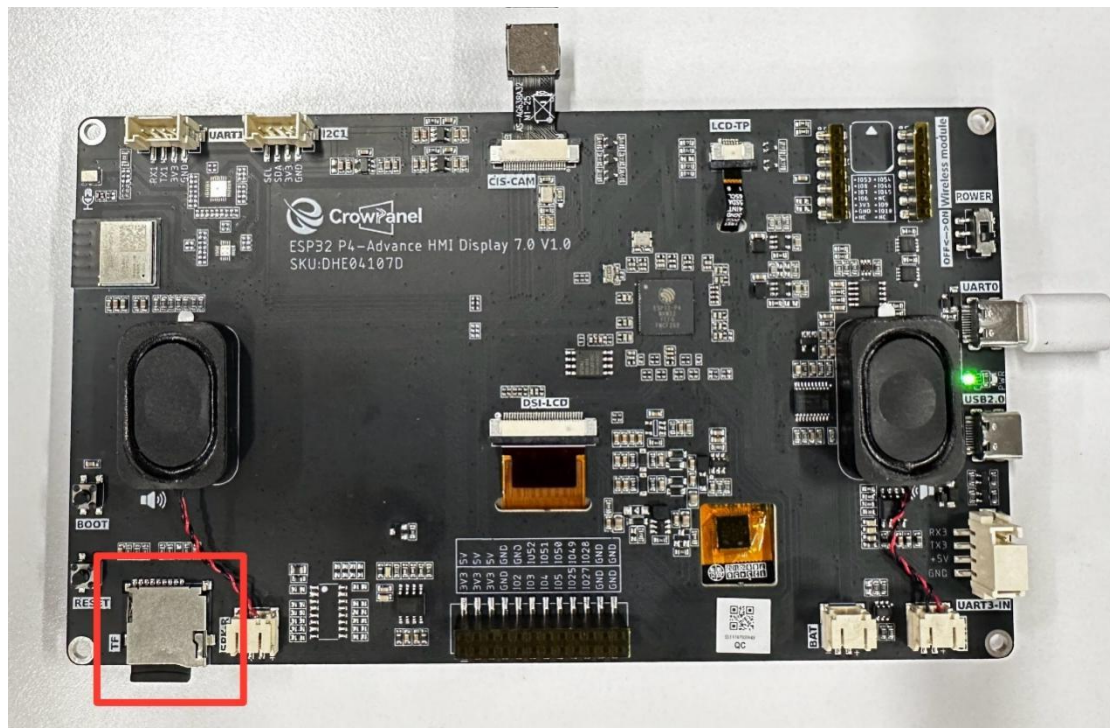
You will find the generated WAV files in the "Output" folder.



Then move this file to a USB flash drive.



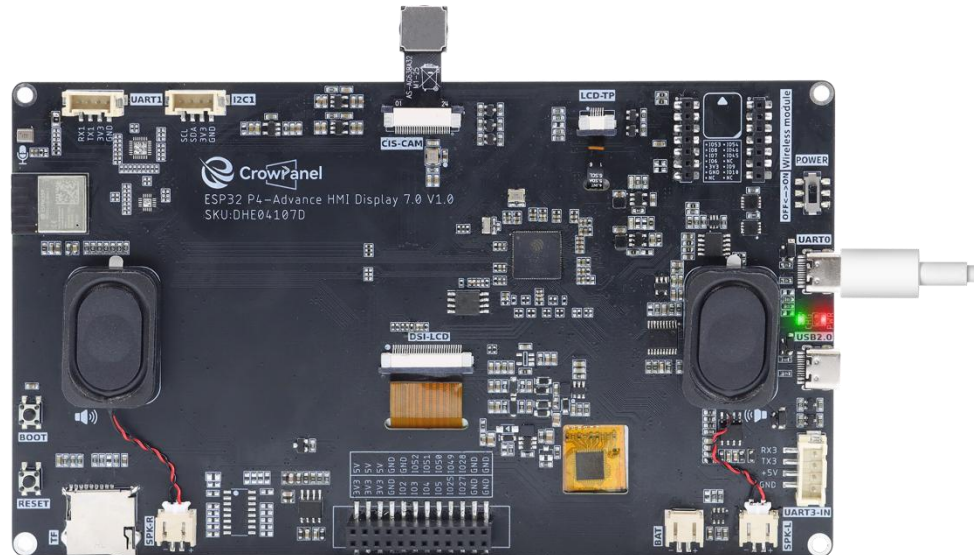
Finally, remove the SD card and insert it into the **Advance-P4** board.



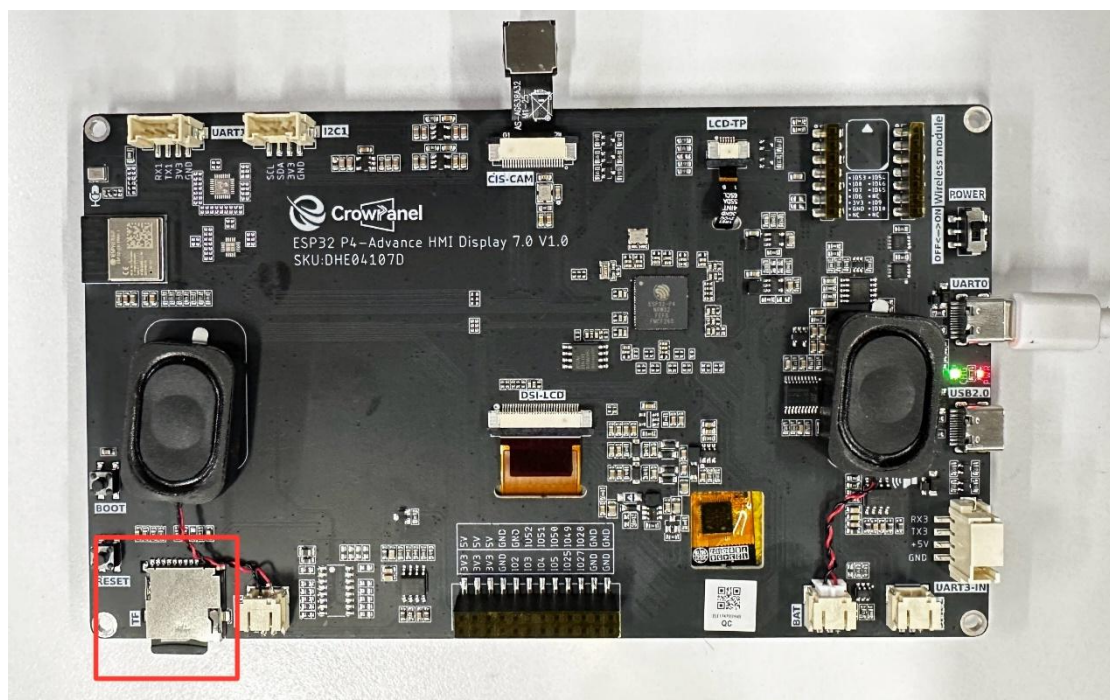
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

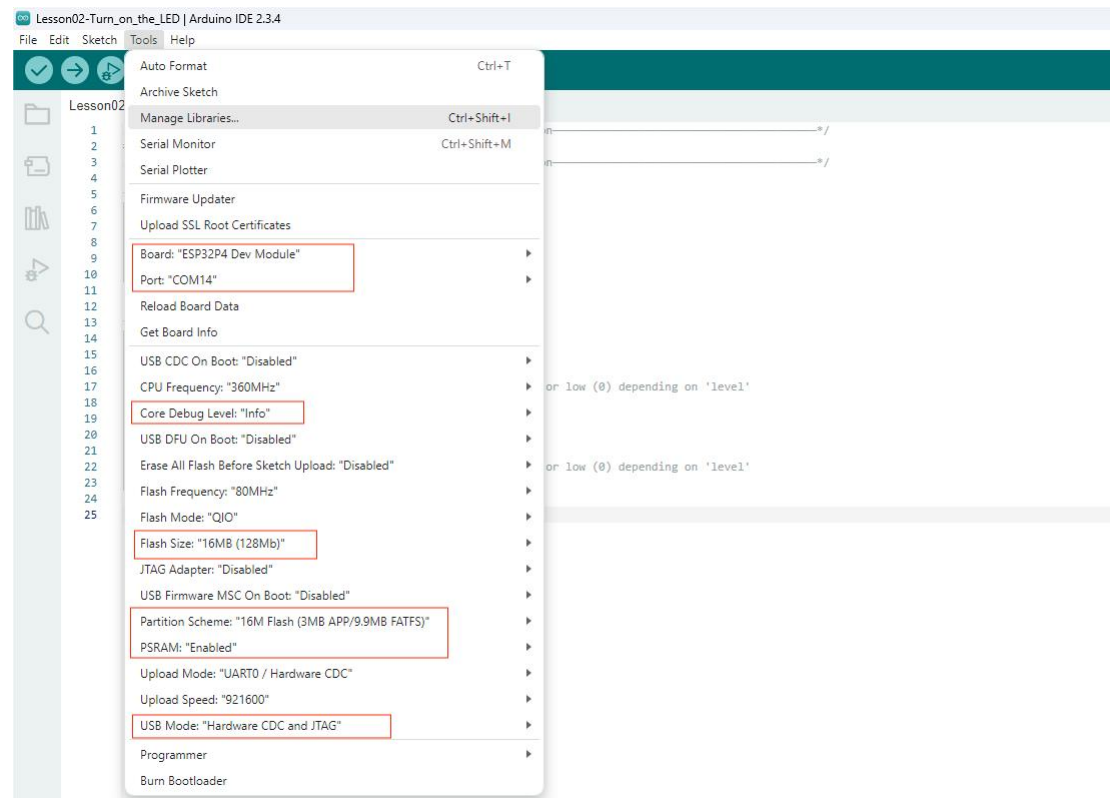
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



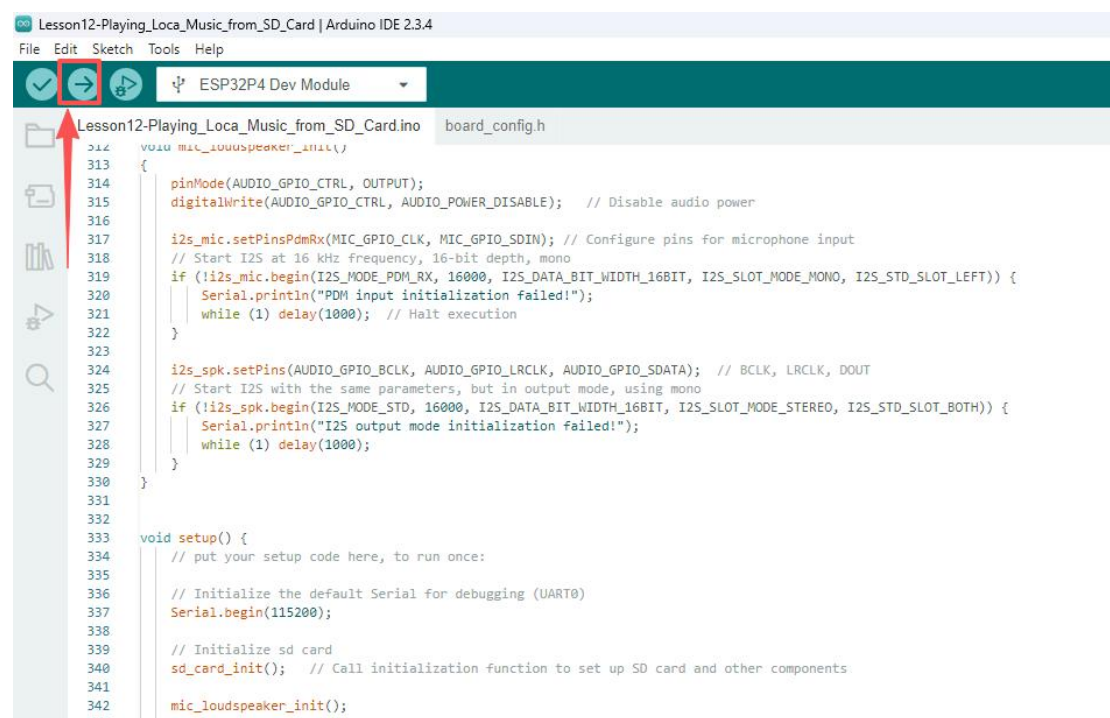
First, double-check two things: whether the converted WAV audio file has been placed in the SD card, and whether the SD card is inserted into the SD card slot of the **Advance-P4**.



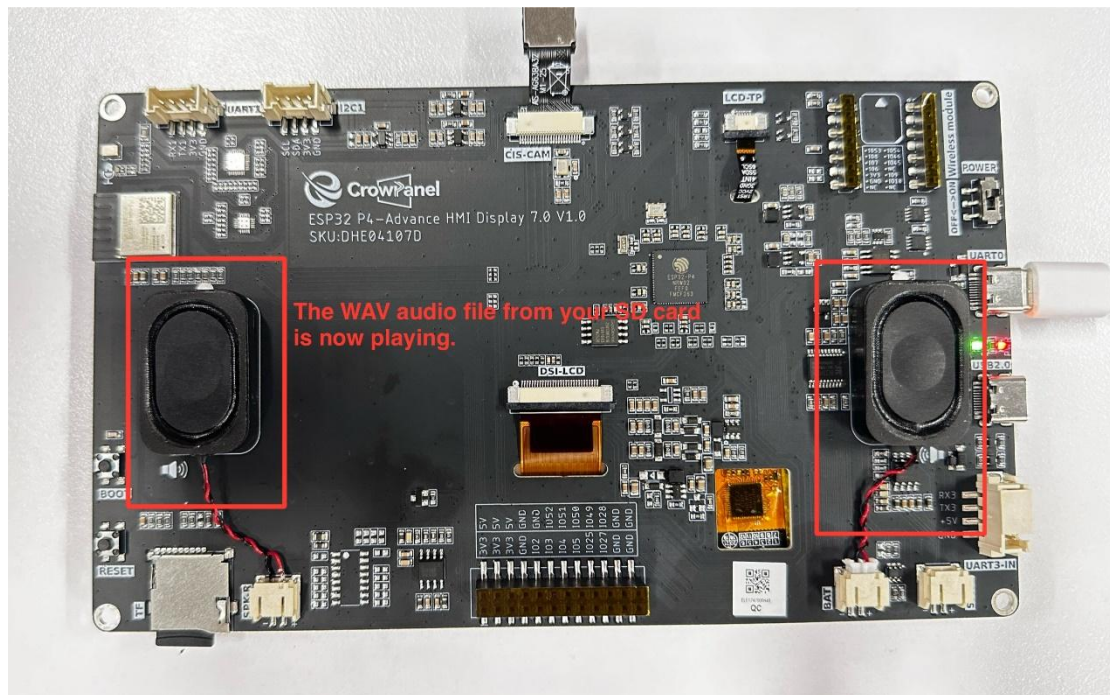
Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



Then we compile and upload the code.



Once the code runs, you will hear the speaker on the **Advance-P4** playing the WAV audio stored in your SD card.



Lesson13--- SX1262 Wireless Module

Introduction

In this lesson, we will begin exploring the use of wireless modules. Since the SX1262 LoRa module supports both transmission and reception, two Advance-P4 development boards and two SX1262 LoRa communication modules are required. The objective of this lesson is to implement a case study where, when an SX1262 LoRa module is connected to the wireless module slot of the Advance-P4 board, the transmitting board displays **"TX_Hello World:i"** on its screen, while the receiving board displays **"RX_Hello World:i"** along with related LoRa signal information.

Learning Goals

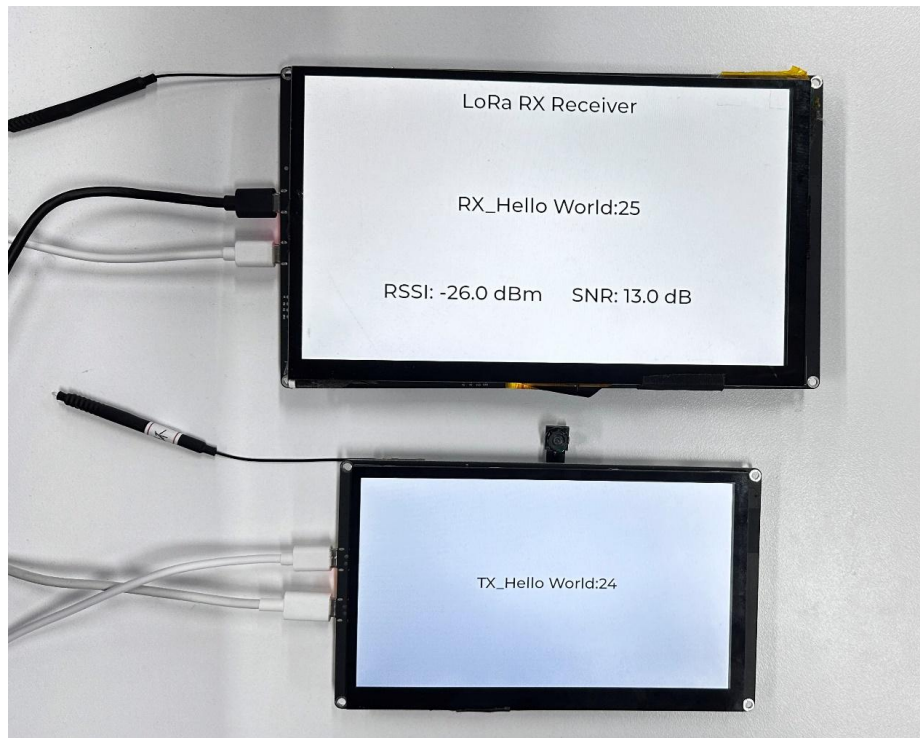
1. Understand the working principles of the SX1262 LoRa module (SPI communication, wireless transceiver mechanism), as well as the hardware pin adaptation rules between ESP32-P4 and the LoRa module (reset, DIO interrupt, SPI chip select, etc.).
2. Master the core implementation methods for SX1262 module initialization configuration (frequency, bandwidth, spreading factor, etc.), data transmission (timed packet sending, transmission status detection), and reception (interrupt callbacks, RSSI/SNR parsing).
3. Master the design of LoRa transceiver logic based on FreeRTOS multi-tasking (separation of transmission task, reception task, and UI update task), as well as the implementation of dynamic LVGL interface updates (transmission/reception counters, signal parameter display).

Preview of the Result

After inserting the SX1262 LoRa modules into both Advance-P4 development boards and running the respective codes, you will observe the following behavior:

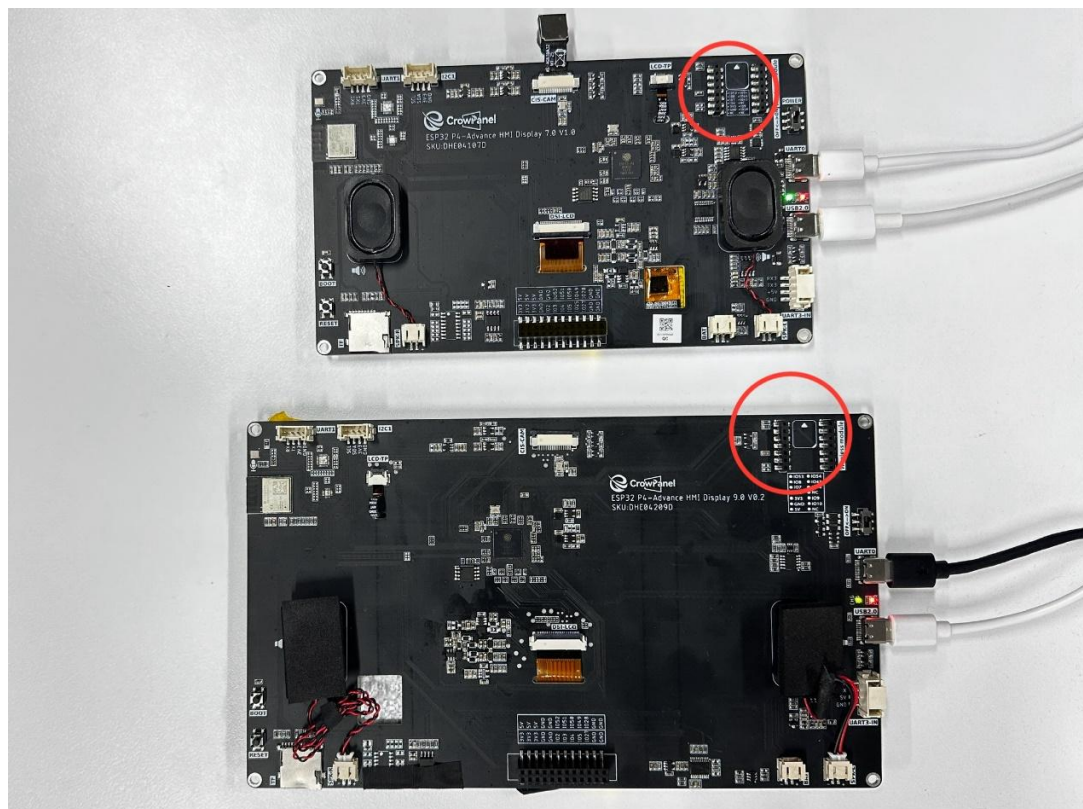
On the transmitting Advance-P4 board, the screen will display the message **TX_Hello World:i**, with the value of *i* increasing by 1 every second.

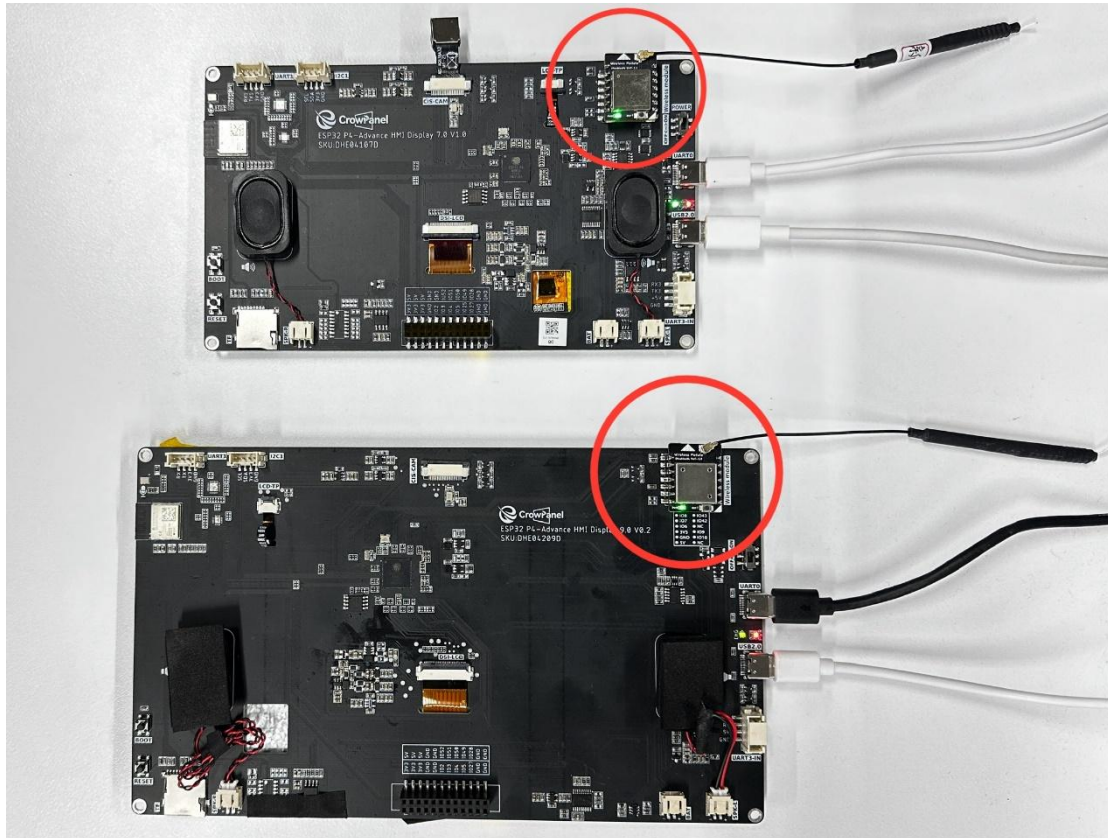
Similarly, on the receiving Advance-P4 board, the screen will display **RX_Hello World:i** whenever a message is received, with *i* also incrementing by 1 each second. In addition, the screen will show relevant reception signal information such as RSSI and SNR.



Hardware Used in This Lesson

SX1262 Wireless Module on the Advance-P4





Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

Kindly click the link below to view the full code implementation.

Transmitting end code:

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module

Receiving end code:

https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino_Code/Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module

Key Explanations

The main focus of this lesson is to learn how to use the wireless module, including how to initialize the SX1262 LoRa module and send or receive data.

Double-click to open the code for this lesson (the .ino file).

The code for this lesson includes both the transmitter and receiver sides.

Transmitter:

	libraries	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder	
	board_config.h	2026/3/5 20:52	C Header 源文件	2 KB
	bsp_wireless.cpp	2026/3/5 21:09	C++ 源文件	16 KB
	bsp_wireless.h	2026/3/11 16:29	C Header 源文件	4 KB
	esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
	esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
	esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
	EspHal.h	2026/2/24 16:58	C Header 源文件	5 KB
	Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino	2026/3/12 9:51	INO File	11 KB
	lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
	lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
	lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

Receiver:

	libraries	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder	
	board_config.h	2026/3/11 16:26	C Header 源文件	2 KB
	bsp_wireless.cpp	2026/2/24 16:58	C++ 源文件	16 KB
	bsp_wireless.h	2026/3/11 16:40	C Header 源文件	4 KB
	esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
	esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
	esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
	EspHal.h	2026/2/24 16:58	C Header 源文件	5 KB
	Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino	2026/3/5 21:08	INO File	15 KB
	lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
	lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
	lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

In this section, we will introduce a new component called `bsp_wireless`.

The main functions of this component are as follows:

- It encodes and modulates the data (such as strings or sensor information) sent from the main controller and transmits it wirelessly.
- It also receives wireless data packets sent from other devices via LoRa.
- Through a callback mechanism, it passes the received data back to the upper-layer application.

In addition to the above functions, this component also integrates the experimental functionalities for the remaining three wireless modules: nRF2401, ESP32-C6, and ESP32-H2.

Since the functions of each wireless module in the code are encapsulated within `#ifdef` and `#endif` directives, and in this lesson we are using the SX1262 module, we only need to enable the SX1262-related configurations.

How to enable it:

Open the `bsp_wireless.h` file.



```
Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h  esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h
26  #define WIRELESS_UART_TAG "WIRELESS_UART"
27  #define WIRELESS_UART_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
28  #define WIRELESS_UART_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
29  #define WIRELESS_UART_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
30
31  #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32  #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33  #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35  #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 1
36  #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 0
37  #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38  //-----
39  #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41  #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42  #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43  #define SX1262_GPIO_NRST 54
44  #define SX1262_GPIO_MISO 10
45
46  #ifdef __cplusplus
47  extern "C"
48  {
49  #endif
50  esp_err_t sx1262_tx_init();
51  void sx1262_tx_deinit();
```

Here, enable the macro definition for the SX1262 wireless module by setting it to 1. The code you will subsequently use will be SX1262-related, while other wireless modules will remain commented out by default—that is, we set other wireless modules to 0.

```

Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h  esp_panel_bc
26  #define WIRELESS_UART_TAG "WIRELESS_UART"
27  #define WIRELESS_UART_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
28  #define WIRELESS_UART_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
29  #define WIRELESS_UART_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
30
31  #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32  #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33  #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35  #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 1
36  #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 0
37  #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38  //
39  #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41  #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42  #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43  #define SX1262_GPIO_N_RST 54
44  #define SX1262_GPIO_N_SS 10
45
46  #ifdef __cplusplus

```

(Enable the one that corresponds to the wireless module you are using.)

```

32  #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33  #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35  #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 1
36  #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 0
37  #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38  //
39  #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41  #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42  #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43  #define SX1262_GPIO_N_RST 54
44  #define SX1262_GPIO_N_SS 10
45
46  #ifdef __cplusplus
47  extern "C"
48  {
49  #endif
50      esp_err_t sx1262_tx_init();
51      void sx1262_tx_deinit();
52      bool send_lora_pack_radio();
53
54      uint32_t sx1262_get_tx_counter();
55
56      esp_err_t sx1262_rx_init();
57      void sx1262_rx_deinit();
58      void received_lora_pack_radio(size_t len);
59      void sx1262_set_rx_callback(void (*callback)(const char* data, size_t len, float rssi, float snr));
60      size_t sx1262_get_received_len(void);
61      bool sx1262_is_data_received(void);
62  #ifdef __cplusplus
63  }
64  #endif
65
66  #endif
67  //
68
69  #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
70
71  #define NRF24_GPIO_IRQ 9
72  #define NRF24_GPIO_CE 53
73  #define NRF24_GPIO_CS 54
74

```

As shown in the figure, we have enabled the SX1262-related configuration, so the other wireless modules are currently disabled and not in use.

Within the bsp_wireless component, you only need to know when to call the provided interfaces that we have written.

Next, let's focus on understanding the bsp_wireless component itself.

The following section shows the transmitter (TX) side of the project:

```

10  //
11  /*
12  |-----| INCLUDES
13  |-----|
14  #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15  #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17  #include <string.h>        // C string lib
18  #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
19  #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
20  #include <esp_ldo_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22  /* panel driver */
23  #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
24  #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
25  #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
26
27  /* LVGL and driver */
28  #include <lvgl.h>
29  #include "lvgl_v8_port.h"
30
31  /* LoRa */
32  #include "bsp_wireless.h"
33
34  using namespace esp_panel::drivers;
35  using namespace esp_panel::board;
36
37  /*
38  |-----| DEFINITIONS
39  |-----|
40  #define PRINTF_ORIGINAL(fmt, ...) Serial.printf(fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__);
41  #define PRINTF_PRINT(fmt, ...)   Serial.print(fmt);
42  #define PRINTF_LN(fmt, ...)      Serial.println(fmt);
  
```

The following section shows the receiver (RX) side of the project:

```

1  /**
2  * IMPORTANT:
3  * This code requires the "ESP32_Display_Panel" library.
4  * Before uploading, you MUST configure the following file in your libraries folder:
5  * [Arduino_Library_Path]/ESP32_Display_Panel/esp_panel_drivers_conf.h
6  *
7  * 1. Enable MIPI-DSI: #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_BUS_USE_MIPI_DSI (1)
8  * 2. Set LCD Driver:  #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_LCD_USE_EK79007 (1)
9  * 3. Set Touch:      #define ESP_PANEL_DRIVERS_TOUCH_USE_GT911 (1)
10 */
11 /*
12 |-----| INCLUDES
13 |-----|
14 #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15 #include <Arduino.h>      // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17 #include <string.h>        // C string lib
18 #include <esp_log.h>       // ESP-IDF logging library
19 #include <esp_err.h>       // ESP-IDF error codes
20 #include <esp_ldo_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22 /* panel driver */
23 #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
24 #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
25 #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
26
  
```

In these two projects, the only difference lies in the main functions:

[Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino](#) for the transmitter and

[Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino](#) for the receiver.

All other code files are identical. (For convenience, we have prepared both main functions for you to use separately.)

You can see in this folder there are "bsp_wireless.h", "bsp_wireless.cpp", and "EspHal.h".

libraries	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder	
board_config.h	2026/3/5 20:52	C Header 源文件	2 KB
bsp_wireless.cpp	2026/3/5 21:09	C++ 源文件	16 KB
bsp_wireless.h	2026/3/11 16:29	C Header 源文件	4 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
EspHal.h	2026/2/24 16:58	C Header 源文件	5 KB
Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino	2026/3/12 9:51	INO File	11 KB
lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

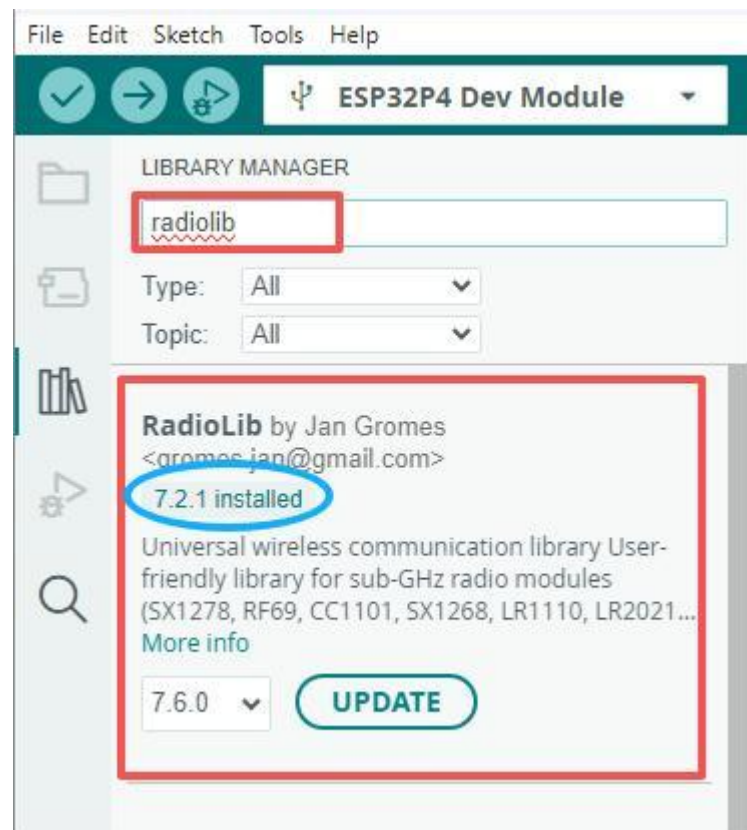
The purpose of [EspHal.h](#) is to convert C code from ESP-IDF into the Arduino-style C++ code required by the [RadioLib](#) component library.

And RadioLib is already prepared in the libraries folder.

Since this is an official library, we need to rely on it to implement the SX1262 LoRa wireless transmission or reception functionality on our Advance-P4.

ESP32_Display_Panel	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder
ESP32_IO_Expander	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder
esp-lib-utils	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder
lvgl	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder
RadioLib	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder

You can also download version [7.2.1](#) of the RadioLib library in the Arduino IDE.



The other code files are display-related driver code that was covered in detail in [Lesson 7](#).

libraries	2026/3/11 15:54	File folder	
board_config.h	2026/3/5 20:52	C Header 源文件	2 KB
bsp_wireless.cpp	2026/3/5 21:09	C++ 源文件	16 KB
bsp_wireless.h	2026/3/11 16:29	C Header 源文件	4 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
EspHal.h	2026/2/24 16:58	C Header 源文件	5 KB
Lesson13_TX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino	2026/3/12 9:51	INO File	11 KB
lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

Looking at the board_config.h file:

This code serves as the board-level hardware configuration file board_config.h in the project. Its primary role is to centrally define the GPIO pin numbers used by various peripherals on the development board, along with certain hardware parameters—thereby providing unified hardware interface configuration throughout the entire project. This prevents repetition of pin numbers across different source files, enhancing code readability, maintainability, and portability.

```

Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h  esp_pa
1  #pragma once
2
3  /***** Pin define *****/
4  // GPIO pins for GT911 touch panel
5  #define Touch_GPIO_RST      (40)    // Reset pin
6  #define Touch_GPIO_INT      (42)    // Interrupt pin
7
8  // GPIO pins for I2C, has touch chip GT911
9  #define I2C_GPIO_SCL        (46)    // GPIO number used for I2C SCL (clock) line
10 #define I2C_GPIO_SDA        (45)    // GPIO number used for I2C SDA (data) line
11
12 // GPIO pins for display backlight
13 #define LCD_GPIO_BLIGHT     (31)    // LCD Blight GPIO
14 #define BLIGHT_PWM_Hz       (30000) // LCD Blight PWM Hz
15 #define BLIGHT_ON_LEVEL     (1)     // Active level, 0: low, 1: high
16
17 // GPIO pins for display
18 #define LCD_GPIO_RST        (41)    // LCD Blight GPIO
19
20 // panel parameters
21 #define V_size               (600)  // Vertical resolution (Y-axis)
22 #define H_size               (1024) // Horizontal resolution (X-axis)
23 #define LCD_CLK_MHZ          (51)
24 #define LCD_HPW              (70)
25 #define LCD_HBP              (160)
26 #define LCD_HFP              (160)
27 #define LCD_VPW              (10)
28 #define LCD_VBP              (23)
29 #define LCD_VFP              (21)
30
31
32 /* SPI BUS */
33 #define PIN_SPI_SCK          ( 8)
34 #define PIN_SPI_MOSI         ( 6)
35 #define PIN_SPI_MISO         ( 7)
36
37 /* LoRa Interfaces */
38 #define LORA_RESET           (54)    // RST
39 #define LORA_DIO1            (53)    // IRQ
40 #define LORA_DIO2            ( 9)    // BUSY
41 #define LORA_CS              (10)
42 #define LORA_SCK              PIN_SPI_SCK
43 #define LORA_MOSI             PIN_SPI_MOSI
44 #define LORA_MISO             PIN_SPI_MISO
45 #define LORA_DIO3_TCXO_VOLTAGE (3.3)
46 /***** Pin define *****/

```

The file begins with the "#pragma once" directive, indicating this header file will only be included once during compilation—preventing duplicate definition issues caused by multiple inclusions.

The code then categorizes pin definitions by functional module:

First, the GT911 touchscreen controller pin definitions: "Touch_GPIO_RST" is defined as 40 for touch chip reset control; "Touch_GPIO_INT" is defined as 42 for touch interrupt signal output, triggered when the screen is touched to notify the main controller.

Next, the I2C bus pin definitions: "I2C_GPIO_SCL" is 46 for the I2C clock line (SCL), and "I2C_GPIO_SDA" is 45 for the I2C data line (SDA). This I2C bus is primarily used for communication with the touch control chip GT911.

Then, LCD display backlight control configurations: including "LCD_GPIO_BLIGHT"

(GPIO31) for controlling screen backlight brightness, "BLIGHT_PWM_Hz" set to 30000 indicating a backlight PWM dimming frequency of 30 kHz, and "BLIGHT_ON_LEVEL" indicating the active level for backlight (1 meaning high level turns on backlight).

The LCD display reset pin "LCD_GPIO_RST" (GPIO41) is then defined, used for hardware reset of the display during system startup.

Following this, a set of LCD panel timing parameters and resolution parameters are defined: for example, "V_size" of 600 indicates vertical resolution of 600 pixels, "H_size" of 1024 indicates horizontal resolution of 1024 pixels. Additionally, LCD pixel clock "LCD_CLK_MHZ" of 51 MHz is defined, along with horizontal sync pulse width "LCD_HPW", horizontal back porch "LCD_HBP", horizontal front porch "LCD_HFP", and vertical sync pulse width "LCD_VPW", vertical back porch "LCD_VBP", vertical front porch "LCD_VFP" and other display timing parameters. These parameters are used to correctly generate display synchronization signals when driving RGB or parallel interface LCDs.

SPI bus pins are then defined, including "PIN_SPI_SCK" (clock), "PIN_SPI_MOSI" (Master Out Slave In), and "PIN_SPI_MISO" (Master In Slave Out). These SPI pins will be shared among other peripherals.

The final section defines the LoRa wireless communication module interface: for example, "LORA_RESET" for module reset, "LORA_DIO1" and "LORA_DIO2" for interrupt and status signals, "LORA_CS" for SPI chip select signal. Meanwhile, the LoRa module's SPI clock, MOSI, and MISO directly reuse the SPI bus pins defined earlier, with "LORA_DIO3_TCXO_VOLTAGE" set to 3.3V indicating the supply voltage for the module's internal TCXO clock.

Now that the entire project framework is clear, let's examine the "bsp_wireless" component in detail—that is, "bsp_wireless.h" and "bsp_wireless.cpp".

SX1262 LoRa Code

The SX1262 LoRa transmission and reception code consists of two files: bsp_wireless.cpp and bsp_wireless.h.

Next, we will first analyze the SX1262-related code in bsp_wireless.h.

bsp_wireless.h is the header file for the SX1262 LoRa wireless module.

Its main purposes are:

To declare the functions, macros, and variables implemented in bsp_wireless.cpp for external use.

To allow other .c files to simply #include "bsp_wireless.h" in order to call this module. In other words, it serves as the interface layer, exposing which functions and constants can be used externally while hiding the internal details of the module. Any libraries required for this component are included in both bsp_wireless.h and bsp_wireless.cpp.

```

Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h  esp_panel_board_
1  #ifndef _BSP_WIRELESS_H
2  #define _BSP_WIRELESS_H
3
4  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
5  #include <string.h>
6  #include <stdint.h>
7  #include "freertos/FreeRTOS.h"
8  #include "freertos/task.h"
9  #include "esp_log.h"
10 #include "esp_err.h"
11 #include "driver/uart.h"
12
13 /*-----Header file declaration end-----*/
14
15 /*-----Variable declaration-----*/
16 #define SX1262_TAG "SX1262"
17 #define SX1262_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(SX1262_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
18 #define SX1262_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(SX1262_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
19 #define SX1262_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(SX1262_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
20
21 #define NRF2401_TAG "NRF2401"
22 #define NRF2401_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
23 #define NRF2401_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
24 #define NRF2401_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
25
26 #define WIRELESS_UART_TAG "WIRELESS_UART"
27 #define WIRELESS_UART_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
28 #define WIRELESS_UART_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
29 #define WIRELESS_UART_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
30
31 #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32 #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33 #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34

```

```

Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h  esp_pa
1  /*-----Header file declaration-----*/
2  #include "bsp_wireless.h"
3  #include <RadioLib.h>
4  #include "EspHal.h"
5  #include <stdio.h>
6  #include <string.h>
7  /*-----Header file declaration end-----*/
8
9  /*-----Variable declaration-----*/
10 #ifndef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
11 class BSP_SX1262
12 {
13 public:
14     BSP_SX1262();
15
16     ~BSP_SX1262();
17
18     esp_err_t Sx1262_tx_init();
19
20     void Sx1262_tx_deinit();
21
22     bool Send_pack_radio();
23
24     esp_err_t Sx1262_rx_init();
25
26     void Sx1262_rx_deinit();
27
28     void Received_pack_radio(size_t len);
29
30 protected:
31 private:
32     static Module *bsp_sx_mod;
33     static SX1262 *bsp_sx_radio;
34 };
35
36 EspHal lora_hal;
37 Module *BSP_SX1262::bsp_sx_mod = nullptr;
38 SX1262 *BSP_SX1262::bsp_sx_radio = nullptr;
39

```

Since the function implementation in `bsp_wireless.cpp` uses the function encapsulation from `EspHal.h`, the reference to the header file needs to be placed in the `.cpp` file.

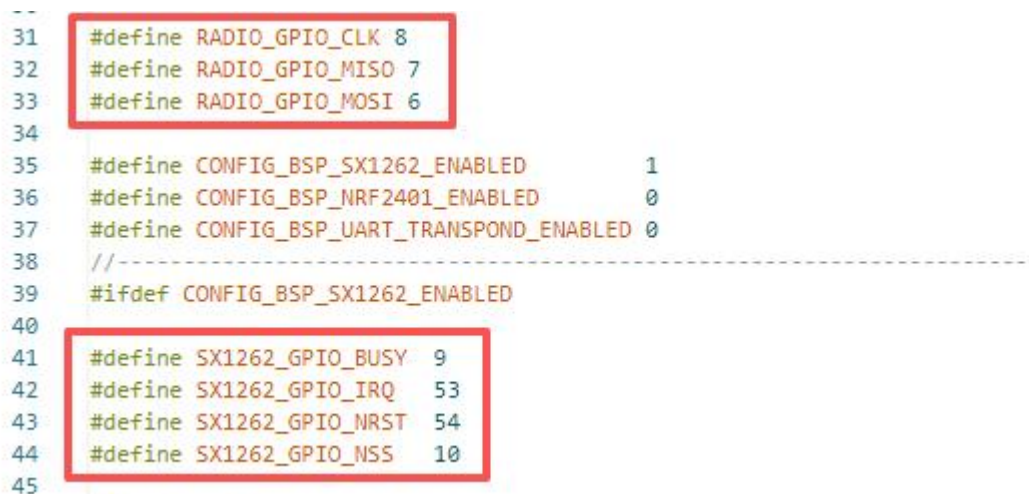
Take `#include <RadioLib.h>` as an example; this is a library under the network component.



```
Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h

1  /*----- Header file declaration-----
2  #include "bsp_wireless.h"
3  #include <RadioLib.h>
4  #include "EspHal.h"
5  #include <stdio.h>
6  #include <string.h>
7  /*----- Header file declaration end-----
8
9  /*----- Variable declaration-----
10 #ifndef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
11 class BSP_SX1262
12 {
13 public:
14     BSP_SX1262() {};
15
16     ~BSP_SX1262() {};
17
```

Returning to `bsp_wireless.h`, here we declare the pins used by the wireless module.



```
31 #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32 #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33 #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35 #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 1
36 #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 0
37 #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38 //-----
39 #ifndef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41 #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42 #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43 #define SX1262_GPIO_Nrst 54
44 #define SX1262_GPIO_NSS 10
45
```

The pin assignments should not be modified, otherwise the wireless module will not work due to incorrect connections.

Next, we declare the variables and functions that we will use. The actual implementation of these functions is in `bsp_wireless.cpp`.

By placing them all in `bsp_wireless.h`, it becomes easier to call and manage them. (We will explore their specific functionality when we look at `bsp_wireless.cpp`.)

```

30 //-----
31 #ifndef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
32 #error "CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED not defined"
33 #endif
34
35 #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
36 #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
37 #define SX1262_GPIO_N_RST 54
38 #define SX1262_GPIO_N_SS 10
39
40 #ifndef __cplusplus
41 extern "C"
42 {
43 #endif
44     esp_err_t sx1262_tx_init();
45     void sx1262_tx_deinit();
46     bool send_lora_pack_radio();
47
48     uint32_t sx1262_get_tx_counter();
49
50     esp_err_t sx1262_rx_init();
51     void sx1262_rx_deinit();
52     void received_lora_pack_radio(size_t len);
53     void sx1262_set_rx_callback(void (*callback)(const char* data, size_t len, float rssi, float snr));
54     size_t sx1262_get_received_len(void);
55     bool sx1262_is_data_received(void);
56 #ifndef __cplusplus
57 }
58 #endif
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

```

Next, let's take a look at bsp_wireless.cpp to understand the specific function of each function.

The bsp_wireless component implements LoRa data transmission and reception, communicates with the main controller via the SPI interface, and handles the sending and receiving at the wireless data link layer.

Here, we won't go into the detailed code. Instead, we will explain the purpose of each function and when to call them.

BSP_SX1262 Class:

This indicates that:

- It is a C++ wrapper class for operating the SX1262 module.
- It mainly provides functions for initialization, de-initialization, and data transmission/reception.
- All hardware operations are performed based on the RadioLib library.
- bsp_sx_mod and bsp_sx_radio are object pointers in memory for the SX1262 module (statically shared).

```

11 class BSP_SX1262
12 {
13 public:
14     BSP_SX1262() {}
15
16     ~BSP_SX1262() {}
17
18     esp_err_t Sx1262_tx_init();
19
20     void Sx1262_tx_deinit();
21
22     bool Send_pack_radio();
23
24     esp_err_t Sx1262_rx_init();
25
26     void Sx1262_rx_deinit();
27
28     void Received_pack_radio(size_t len);
29
30 protected:
31 private:
32     static Module *bsp_sx_mod;
33     static SX1262 *bsp_sx_radio;
34 };

```

Defines the **core global variables required by the SX1262 LoRa module driver**, used to manage the module instance, status, and data callbacks:

- `lora_hal` is the low-level SPI hardware abstraction layer object, responsible for SPI communication.
- `bsp_sx_mod` and `bsp_sx_radio` point to the generic RadioLib module object and the SX1262 module object, respectively. They encapsulate the specific hardware pins and transmission/reception interfaces. These objects are created during module initialization (e.g., `Sx1262_tx_init()` or `Sx1262_rx_init()`) and released or set to standby during de-initialization.
- `lora_transmissionState` records the status code of the last transmission operation for debugging and error handling.
- `lora_transmittedFlag` is the transmission completion flag, set by the transmission interrupt callback `set_sx1262_tx_flag()`, indicating that the module is ready to send a new data packet.
- `lora_receivedFlag` is the reception completion flag, set by the reception interrupt callback `set_sx1262_rx_flag()`, indicating that new data is available to read.
- `lora_received_len` stores the length of the most recently received data.
- `rx_data_callback` is a function pointer that allows the upper layer to register a callback. When the SX1262 receives data, this callback is automatically triggered, passing the received data, its length, RSSI, and SNR information to the upper-level processing.

```
36  EspHal lora_hal;
37  Module *BSP_SX1262::bsp_sx_mod = nullptr;
38  SX1262 *BSP_SX1262::bsp_sx_radio = nullptr;
39
40  static int lora_transmissionState = RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE;
41  volatile bool lora_transmittedFlag = true;
42  volatile bool lora_receivedFlag = false;
43  static size_t lora_received_len = 0;
44
45  // Pointer to the data reception callback function
46  static void (*rx_data_callback)(const char* data, size_t len, float rssi, float snr) = NULL;
47  #endif
```

Sx1262_tx_init():

The function `Sx1262_tx_init()` in the `BSP_SX1262` class is used to initialize the SX1262 module for data transmission.

- The function first uses `lora_hal` to configure the SPI pins (`RADIO_GPIO_CLK`, `RADIO_GPIO_MISO`, `RADIO_GPIO_MOSI`) and the SPI clock frequency (8 MHz), then calls `spiBegin()` to start SPI communication, providing the module with a low-level communication interface.
- Next, it creates a Module object `bsp_sx_mod` to encapsulate the SX1262 hardware pins (NSS, IRQ, NRST, BUSY) and uses this module object to create the SX1262 instance `bsp_sx_radio`. By calling `begin()`, it configures the LoRa parameters (915 MHz frequency, 125 kHz bandwidth, spreading factor 7, coding rate 4/7, sync word, 22 dBm power, pre-gain 8, LNA 1.6, etc.), completing the module initialization.
- Finally, it calls `setPacketSentAction(set_sx1262_tx_flag)` to register the

transmission completion callback, which sets `lora_transmittedFlag` whenever a data packet is sent, indicating that the module is ready to send the next packet. This function is usually called at system startup or before starting LoRa data transmission. It only needs to be initialized once to ensure the module is in a transmittable state, after which data packets can be sent periodically using `Send_pack_radio()`.

If two LoRa modules are used for transmission and reception, they must operate on the same frequency band.

```

96  esp_err_t BSP_SX1262::Sx1262_tx_init()
97  {
98      lora_hal.setSpiPins(RADIO_GPIO_CLK, RADIO_GPIO_MISO, RADIO_GPIO_MOSI);
99      lora_hal.setSpiFrequency(8000000);
100     lora_hal.spiBegin();
101
102     bsp_sx_mod = new Module(&lora_hal, SX1262_GPIO_NSS, SX1262_GPIO_IRQ, SX1262_GPIO_Nrst, SX1262_GPIO_BUSY);
103     bsp_sx_radio = new SX1262(bsp_sx_mod);
104     int state = bsp_sx_radio->begin(915.0, 125.0, 7, 7, RADIOLIB_SX126X_SYNC_WORD_PRIVATE, 22, 8, 1.6);
105     if (state != RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE)
106     {
107         SX1262_ERROR("radio tx init failed, code :%d", state);
108         lora_hal.spiEnd();
109         return ESP_FAIL;
110     }
111     // bsp_sx_radio->setCurrentLimit(60);
112     bsp_sx_radio->setPacketSentAction(set_sx1262_tx_flag);
113     return ESP_OK;
114 }

```

In `bsp_sx_radio->begin()`, the 915.0 MHz represents the operating center frequency of the SX1262. This can be changed according to the LoRa frequency regulations of different regions:

- China commonly uses 433 MHz or 470–510 MHz
- Europe uses 868 MHz
- The United States and Australia use 915 MHz
- Japan uses 923 MHz

When changing the frequency, the transmitter and receiver must match, otherwise communication will fail. Additionally, ensure that the selected frequency falls within the legally allowed ISM band for that region.

Parameters such as bandwidth and spreading factor can generally remain unchanged, although some frequency bands may have officially recommended values.

Send_pack_radio:

The function `Send_pack_radio()` in the `BSP_SX1262` class is the core function for sending LoRa data packets.

- It first checks the transmission completion flag `lora_transmittedFlag`. If it is true, it indicates that the previous packet has been sent and the module is ready to send new data.
- If so, the flag is reset to false to prevent duplicate transmissions. The function then checks `lora_transmissionState` to determine whether the previous transmission was successful and prints the corresponding log.
- Next, it calls `bsp_sx_radio->finishTransmit()` to complete any remaining

operations from the previous transmission, ensuring the module is ready for use. The transmission counter `sx1262_tx_counter` is incremented, and a text message with the counter is formatted and stored in the static buffer text.

- The function then calculates the message length and calls `bsp_sx_radio->startTransmit()` to initiate the transmission of the new data packet. It also updates `lora_transmissionState` to record the status of this transmission. If the transmission fails to start, an error message is printed.
- Finally, the function returns true if the transmission event has been handled, or false if the module is not yet ready to send.

This function is usually called periodically in the main loop or task scheduler to poll and send LoRa data packets, and it must ensure that the previous transmission is complete before sending a new packet.

`sx1262_get_tx_counter()`

This is a C-style interface used to obtain the value of the SX1262 module's transmitted packet counter `sx1262_tx_counter`. The function simply returns the global static variable `sx1262_tx_counter` and does not modify any state. It is typically used in applications to query the number of packets sent, for example, for debugging, statistics, or displaying the transmission count. It can be called at any time and does not depend on the transmission or reception status.

`sx1262_tx_init()`

This is a C-style wrapper interface for initializing the SX1262 transmission functionality. Inside the function, a `BSP_SX1262` object is created, and its method `Sx1262_tx_init()` is called to complete the LoRa module SPI configuration, module object creation, parameter initialization, and registration of the transmission completion callback. The function returns `ESP_OK` if initialization is successful, or `ESP_FAIL` if it fails. This function is typically called once at system startup or before starting data transmission to ensure that the module is in a ready-to-transmit state.

`sx1262_tx_deinit()`

This is a C-style de-initialization interface for the SX1262 transmission function. Inside the function, a `BSP_SX1262` object is created, and its method `Sx1262_tx_deinit()` is called to shut down the transmission functionality. During de-initialization, it calls `finishTransmit()` to complete any ongoing transmission, clears the transmission callback, switches the module to standby mode, and closes the SPI interface. This function is generally called when the system is shutting down, the module no longer needs to send data, or it enters low-power mode, releasing resources and ensuring the module safely stops.

`send_lora_pack_radio()`

This is a C-style interface used to trigger the SX1262 to send a data packet. Inside the function, a `BSP_SX1262` object is created, and its method `Send_pack_radio()` is called.

It polls the transmission completion flag `lora_transmittedFlag` and, when ready, generates a data packet and starts transmission. The function returns true if the transmission event has been handled, or false if the module is not yet ready. It is usually called periodically in the main loop or task scheduler to achieve continuous or scheduled data transmission.

set_sx1262_rx_flag()

This is a static internal function used as the callback for SX1262 reception completion. Inside the function, it sets the global reception flag `lora_receivedFlag` to true, notifying the system that a new data packet has been received.

It is not called directly. Instead, it is registered by calling `bsp_sx_radio->setPacketReceivedAction(set_sx1262_rx_flag)`, and the SX1262 hardware automatically triggers it each time a reception is completed, driving the data reception processing logic.

Sx1262_rx_init()

The function **Sx1262_rx_init()** in the **BSP_SX1262** class is used to initialize the SX1262 module for reception.

- The function first uses `lora_hal` to configure the SPI pins (`RADIO_GPIO_CLK`, `RADIO_GPIO_MISO`, `RADIO_GPIO_MOSI`) and the SPI clock frequency (8 MHz), then calls `spiBegin()` to start SPI communication, providing a low-level interface for the SX1262.
- Next, it creates a Module object `bsp_sx_mod` and an SX1262 object `bsp_sx_radio` to encapsulate the hardware pins and transmission/reception interfaces. It then calls `begin()` to configure the LoRa parameters (915 MHz frequency, 125 kHz bandwidth, spreading factor 7, coding rate 4/7, sync word, 22 dBm power, etc.), completing module initialization. If initialization fails, an error is printed and the function returns a failure status.
- It then registers the reception completion callback via `setPacketReceivedAction(set_sx1262_rx_flag)`, so that the module automatically sets `lora_receivedFlag` whenever a packet is received.
- The function calls `setRxBoostedGainMode(true)` to enable boosted gain mode for improved reception sensitivity, then calls `startReceive()` to start reception mode. If starting reception fails, it prints an error and returns failure.

This function is usually called once at system startup or before starting LoRa data reception to ensure the module is in a receivable state, after which received data can be processed via polling or callback.

```

189  esp_err_t BSP_SX1262::Sx1262_rx_init()
190  {
191      lora_hal.setSpiPins(RADIO_GPIO_CLK, RADIO_GPIO_MISO, RADIO_GPIO_MOSI);
192      lora_hal.setSpiFrequency(8000000);
193      lora_hal.spiBegin();
194
195      bsp_sx_mod = new Module(&lora_hal, SX1262_GPIO_NSS, SX1262_GPIO_IRQ, SX1262_GPIO_Nrst, SX1262_GPIO_BUSY);
196      bsp_sx_radio = new SX1262(bsp_sx_mod);
197      int state = bsp_sx_radio->begin(915.0, 125.0, 7, 7, RADIOLIB_SX126X_SYNC_WORD_PRIVATE, 22, 8, 1.6);
198      if (state != RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE)
199      {
200          SX1262_ERROR("radio rx init failed, code :%d", state);
201          return ESP_FAIL;
202      }
203      bsp_sx_radio->setPacketReceivedAction(set_sx1262_rx_flag);
204      bsp_sx_radio->setRxBoostedGainMode(true);
205      state = bsp_sx_radio->startReceive();
206      if (state != RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE)
207      {
208          SX1262_ERROR("radio start receive failed, code :%d", state);
209          return ESP_FAIL;
210      }
211      return ESP_OK;
212  }

```

Here, we are initializing the **receiver module**. Similarly, by keeping the frequency band at **915 MHz**, the module can successfully receive the data sent from the transmitter.

Received_pack_radio:

The function Received_pack_radio(size_t len) in the BSP_SX1262 class is the core function for handling received LoRa data packets.

- The function first checks the reception flag lora_receivedFlag. If it is true, it indicates that a new data packet has arrived. The flag is then reset to false to prevent duplicate processing.
- It then obtains the actual length of the received data via bsp_sx_radio->getPacketLength(). If a valid length is returned, it is used; otherwise, the externally provided len serves as a fallback.
- Next, a buffer data[255] is defined, and bsp_sx_radio->readData() is called to read the received data into the buffer. If reading succeeds, the function prints the received data, RSSI (Received Signal Strength), SNR (Signal-to-Noise Ratio), and frequency offset. If a callback function rx_data_callback has been registered, it passes the data, length, and signal parameters to the upper-level application for processing.

This function is usually called periodically in the main loop or tasks. It executes after the SX1262 reception interrupt sets lora_receivedFlag, allowing the upper-level application to retrieve and process received packets promptly and reliably.

```

223 void BSP_SX1262::Received_pack_radio(size_t len) // Function to process received LoRa data packets, parameter len indic
224 {
225     if (lora_receivedFlag) // Check if the receive flag is set (indicating data was received)
226     {
227         lora_receivedFlag = false; // Reset the receive flag to avoid repeated processing
228
229         // Get the actual received data length
230         size_t actual_len = bsp_sx_radio->getPacketLength(); // Get packet length from SX1262 radio module
231         if (actual_len > 0) { // If a valid packet length is returned
232             lora_received_len = actual_len; // Use the actual received length
233         } else {
234             lora_received_len = len; // Use the passed-in length as a fallback
235         }
236
237         uint8_t data[255]; // Define a buffer to store the received data
238         int state = bsp_sx_radio->readData(data, lora_received_len); // Read data from the SX1262 module into the buffer
239         if (state == RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE) // If reading succeeded
240         {
241             SX1262_INFO("Received packet!"); // Log message: packet successfully received
242             SX1262_INFO("Valid Data : %.*s", lora_received_len, (char *)data); // Print the received data as a string
243             SX1262_INFO("RSSI:%.2f dBm", bsp_sx_radio->getRSSI()); // Log the received signal strength (RSSI)
244             SX1262_INFO("SNR:%.2f dB", bsp_sx_radio->getSNR()); // Log the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR)
245             SX1262_INFO("Frequency error:%.2f", bsp_sx_radio->getFrequencyError()); // Log the frequency error information
246
247             // Call the callback function to notify the upper application
248             if (rx_data_callback != NULL) { // If the callback function has been registered
249                 rx_data_callback((const char*)data, lora_received_len, bsp_sx_radio->getRSSI(), bsp_sx_radio->getSNR()); // Pass
250             }
251         }
252         else if (state == RADIOLIB_ERR_CRC_MISMATCH) // If CRC verification failed (data corrupted)
253         {
254             SX1262_ERROR("CRC error!"); // Log an error message indicating CRC mismatch
255         }
256         else // Other unexpected errors during data reading
257         {
258             SX1262_ERROR("radio receive failed, code :%d", state); // Log the specific error code
259         }
260     }
261 }

```

sx1262_rx_init()

This is a C-style interface used to initialize the SX1262 module's reception function. Inside the function, a BSP_SX1262 object is created, and its member function Sx1262_rx_init() is called to complete SPI configuration, module initialization, parameter setup, registration of the reception callback, and starting reception mode. The function returns ESP_OK if initialization succeeds, or ESP_FAIL if it fails. This function is typically called once at system startup or before starting LoRa data reception to ensure the module is in a ready-to-receive state.

sx1262_rx_deinit()

This is a C-style de-initialization interface for the SX1262 reception function. Inside the function, a BSP_SX1262 object is created, and its method Sx1262_rx_deinit() is called to shut down the reception functionality. The de-initialization process includes clearing the reception callback, switching the module to standby mode, delaying to ensure safe shutdown, and closing the SPI interface. This function is generally called when the system is shutting down, the module no longer needs to receive data, or it enters low-power mode.

received_lora_pack_radio(size_t len)

This is a C-style interface used to handle received LoRa data packets. Inside the function, a BSP_SX1262 object is created, and its method Received_pack_radio(len) is called. The function processes the data by checking the reception flag, reading the data, printing logs, and invoking the upper-layer callback function.

This function is generally called periodically in the main loop or tasks and executes after `lora_receivedFlag` is set, ensuring that the upper-level application can timely retrieve and handle received data packets.

`sx1262_set_rx_callback(void (*callback)(const char* data, size_t len, float rssi, float snr))`

This function is used to register the upper-layer callback `rx_data_callback`. When the SX1262 module receives a data packet, this callback is automatically triggered, passing the data, length, RSSI, and SNR information to the upper-layer application. This function is typically called once after initializing the reception functionality to bind the data processing logic.

`sx1262_get_received_len()`

This is a query interface that returns the length of the most recently received data `lora_received_len`. Internally, the function simply returns the static variable without modifying any state. It is usually called when processing received data or performing debug/statistics, to obtain the actual length of the received packet.

`sx1262_is_data_received()`

This is a status query interface that returns the reception flag `lora_receivedFlag`, used to determine whether a new data packet has arrived. The function simply returns the status of the global variable without modifying it. It is typically polled in the main loop or tasks to decide whether to call `received_lora_pack_radio()` to process new data.

That concludes the introduction to the `bsp_wireless` component. You only need to know how to call these interfaces.

If you wish to use these functions, you simply need to include the library files in your functional code.

As well as the esp_timer used in the EspHal.h file.



```

Lesson13_RX_SX1262_Wireless_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h
1  #pragma once
2
3  #include <driver/gpio.h>
4  #include <driver/spi_master.h>
5  #include <driver/rtc_io.h>
6  #include <esp_timer.h>
7  #include <freertos/FreeRTOS.h>
8  #include <freertos/task.h>
9
10 class EspHal : public RadioLibHal
11 {
12 private:
13     struct
14     {
15         int8_t sck, miso, mosi;
16     } _spiPins = {-1, -1, -1};
17     spi_device_handle_t _spiHandle;
18     bool _spiInitialized = false;
19     uint32_t _spiFrequency = 8000000; // 8MHz
20

```

Sender Main Function

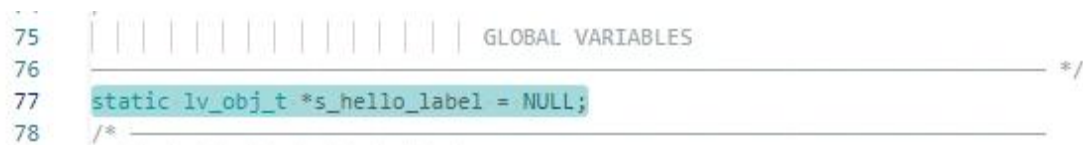
Next, let's examine how the main ".ino" code utilizes the interfaces from the above libraries to implement LoRa message transmission.

When the program runs, the general flow is as follows:

The complete workflow of this program can be summarized as follows: system startup → LDO power initialization → MIPI display and touch initialization → LVGL graphics interface startup → LoRa wireless module initialization → creation of two real-time tasks (one responsible for sending LoRa data packets every second, another responsible for updating the on-screen transmission counter every second) → real-time display of wireless transmission count on screen with serial port log output.

① Global Variables

This line of code defines a global pointer variable s_hello_label pointing to an LVGL graphic object, used to store the address of a text label (Label) object in the program—enabling access and updates to this label across different functions or tasks.



```

75  GLOBAL VARIABLES
76  /*
77  static lv_obj_t *s_hello_label = NULL;
78  */

```

Specifically, lv_obj_t is the foundational data structure type in LVGL used to represent all graphic interface objects. Whether buttons, labels, images, or containers, all exist internally within LVGL as lv_obj_t objects; while lv_obj_t * represents a pointer to such an object. Therefore, s_hello_label is essentially a pointer variable that stores the memory address of a label object.

The static keyword in the code indicates that this variable has file scope and static

storage duration—meaning it can only be accessed within the current source file, but persists throughout the entire program runtime without being released when functions terminate. This ensures the object pointer can be shared among multiple functions.

The `s_` prefix in the variable name is typically a coding convention used to denote static global variables, facilitating quick identification of variable scope for developers reading the code.

Finally, initializing this pointer to NULL indicates that no corresponding LVGL label object has been created at program startup. Only after subsequently calling `lv_label_create()` to create the interface label will the returned object address be assigned to `s_hello_label`.

The advantage of this design is that in other tasks (such as interface update tasks), this label object can be accessed through `s_hello_label`, and functions like `lv_label_set_text()` can be called to dynamically modify label content—for example, real-time updating of counter information on screen—thereby achieving sharing and interaction between tasks and the graphical interface.

② `lvgl_show_counter_label_init`

This code implements a function "`lvgl_show_counter_label_init()`" used to initialize the LVGL graphical interface and create a counter display label on screen. Its primary role is to create a text label and display initial information after system startup, preparing for subsequent real-time updates of LoRa transmission counters.

```
86 static void lvgl_show_counter_label_init(void)
87 {
88     if (lvgl_port_lock(0) != true) {
89         MAIN_ERROR("LVGL lock failed");
90         return;
91     }
92
93     lv_obj_t *screen = lv_scr_act();
94     lv_obj_set_style_bg_color(screen, LV_COLOR_WHITE, LV_PART_MAIN);
95     lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa(screen, LV_OPA_COVER, LV_PART_MAIN);
96
97     s_hello_label = lv_label_create(screen);
98     if (s_hello_label == NULL) {
99         MAIN_ERROR("Create LVGL label failed");
100         lvgl_port_unlock();
101         return;
102     }
103     static lv_style_t label_style;
104     lv_style_init(&label_style);
105     lv_style_set_text_font(&label_style, &lv_font_montserrat_42);
106     lv_style_set_text_color(&label_style, lv_color_black());
107     lv_style_set_bg_opa(&label_style, LV_OPA_TRANSP);
108     lv_obj_add_style(s_hello_label, &label_style, LV_PART_MAIN);
109
110     lv_label_set_text(s_hello_label, "TX_Hello World:0");
111     lv_obj_center(s_hello_label);
112
113     lvgl_port_unlock();
114 }
```

At the start of the function, "lvgl_port_lock(0)" is first called to lock the graphics library. This is necessary because the program runs in a FreeRTOS multi-tasking environment, and LVGL is not thread-safe. Therefore, the LVGL access lock must be acquired before modifying interface objects. If the lock fails, an error message is output via the logging macro and the function returns immediately—preventing conflicts caused by multiple tasks simultaneously operating on the graphical interface.

```
86 static void lvgl_show_counter_label_init(void)
87 {
88     if (lvgl_port_lock(0) != true) {
89         MAIN_ERROR("LVGL lock failed");
90         return;
91     }
```

After acquiring the lock, the program obtains the currently active screen object (i.e., the current display screen container) via `lv_scr_act()`, and uses `lv_obj_set_style_bg_color()` and `lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa()` to set the screen background color to white with full opacity—ensuring the entire screen displays as a pure white background.

```
93     lv_obj_t *screen = lv_scr_act();
94     lv_obj_set_style_bg_color(screen, LV_COLOR_WHITE, LV_PART_MAIN);
95     lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa(screen, LV_OPA_COVER, LV_PART_MAIN);
96
```

The program then calls `lv_label_create(screen)` to create a text label object on the current screen, saving its address to the global pointer variable `s_hello_label`. This allows subsequent tasks to access and update this label's content through this pointer. If label creation fails, an error message is output, the LVGL lock is released, and the function exits.

```
97     s_hello_label = lv_label_create(screen);
98     if (s_hello_label == NULL) {
99         MAIN_ERROR("Create LVGL label failed");
100         lvgl_port_unlock();
101         return;
102     }
```

Upon successful label creation, the program defines a static style object `label_style`, initializes it via `lv_style_init()`, and then sequentially sets the style's text font to `lv_font_montserrat_42` (42-point Montserrat font), text color to black, and background opacity to transparent—ensuring the label text displays clearly against the white background.

```
103     static lv_style_t label_style;
104     lv_style_init(&label_style);
105     lv_style_set_text_font(&label_style, &lv_font_montserrat_42);
106     lv_style_set_text_color(&label_style, lv_color_black());
107     lv_style_set_bg_opa(&label_style, LV_OPA_TRANSP);
```

After completing style configuration, the program applies this style to the `s_hello_label` label object via `lv_obj_add_style()`. It then calls `lv_label_set_text()` to set the label's initial display content to "TX_Hello World:0", indicating the current

wireless transmission count is 0, and uses `lv_obj_center()` to automatically center the label on screen for a cleaner interface layout.

```

109     lv_obj_add_style(s_hello_label, &label_style, LV_PART_MAIN);
110
111     lv_label_set_text(s_hello_label, "TX_Hello World:0");
112     lv_obj_center(s_hello_label);
113
114     lvgl_port_unlock();
115 }

```

Finally, after all interface objects are created and configured, the program calls `lvgl_port_unlock()` to release the LVGL access lock—allowing other tasks to safely access the graphical interface.

③ ui_counter_task

This code implements a FreeRTOS task function "`ui_counter_task()`", whose primary role is to periodically retrieve the LoRa module's transmission counter, update the on-screen text label in real-time, and output log information via the serial port—thereby achieving visualized display of wireless transmission status.

```

117 static void ui_counter_task(void *param)
118 {
119     char text[48];
120     TickType_t last_wake_time = xTaskGetTickCount();
121     const TickType_t frequency = pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000); // 1 second = 1000ms
122
123     for (;;) {
124         uint32_t i = sx1262_get_tx_counter();
125         int n = snprintf(text, sizeof(text), "TX_Hello World:%lu", (unsigned long)i);
126         (void)n;
127
128         if (lvgl_port_lock(0) == true) {
129             if (s_hello_label != NULL) {
130                 lv_label_set_text(s_hello_label, text);
131             }
132             lvgl_port_unlock();
133         }
134
135         MAIN_INFO("TX msg: %s", text);
136
137         // Use absolute time to ensure an exact one-second interval
138         vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency);
139     }
140 }

```

The function begins by defining a character array `text[48]` to store the string content to be displayed. It then calls `xTaskGetTickCount()` to obtain the current RTOS clock tick count, saving it to the `last_wake_time` variable—used subsequently for precise periodic task scheduling. Next, it converts 1000 milliseconds to system tick values via `pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000)` and saves it to `frequency`, indicating this task's execution period is 1 second.

```

117 static void ui_counter_task(void *param)
118 {
119     char text[48];
120     TickType_t last_wake_time = xTaskGetTickCount();
121     const TickType_t frequency = pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000); // 1 second = 1000ms
122

```

The program then enters an infinite loop for(;;)—a common execution structure for FreeRTOS tasks, where the task runs continuously without exiting.

During each loop iteration, it first calls `sx1262_get_tx_counter()` to retrieve the current LoRa module's transmission counter value, saving the result to variable `i`. It then uses `snprintf()` to format this counter value into the string "TX_Hello World:%lu" and writes it to the text buffer—for example, "TX_Hello World:15"—making the string ready for direct screen display.

```

123     for (;;) {
124         uint32_t i = sx1262_get_tx_counter();
125         int n = snprintf(text, sizeof(text), "TX_Hello World:%lu", (unsigned long)i);

```

The program then attempts to acquire the LVGL access lock via `lvgl_port_lock(0)`, as LVGL is not thread-safe in multi-tasking environments. Therefore, any task must acquire the lock before modifying interface objects. If the lock is successfully obtained, it further checks whether the global label object pointer `s_hello_label` is non-null. If non-null, it calls `lv_label_set_text()` to write the new string text to the label—thereby updating the transmission counter displayed on screen. After updating, it calls `lvgl_port_unlock()` to release the LVGL lock, allowing other tasks to continue accessing the graphical interface.

```

128         if (lvgl_port_lock(0) == true) {
129             if (s_hello_label != NULL) {
130                 lv_label_set_text(s_hello_label, text);
131             }
132             lvgl_port_unlock();
133         }

```

After completing the interface update, the program outputs the current transmission information via the logging macro `MAIN_INFO()` to the serial port—for example, "TX msg: TX_Hello World:15"—facilitating observation of system operation status through the serial monitor during debugging.

```

135         MAIN_INFO("TX msg: %s", text);
136
137         // Use absolute time to ensure an exact one-second interval
138         vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency);
139     }
140 }

```

Finally, the task calls `vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency)` to enter delay wait. This delay method differs from ordinary `vTaskDelay()` in that it uses absolute time scheduling to control task periodicity—thereby ensuring the task always executes at precise 1-second intervals, without accumulating errors even if internal execution times vary slightly.

④ lora_tx_task

This code implements a FreeRTOS task function "lora_tx_task()", whose primary role is to transmit data packets to the LoRa wireless module at fixed time intervals and detect whether transmission succeeds—thereby achieving continuous wireless data transmission functionality.

```

142 static void lora_tx_task(void *param)
143 {
144     TickType_t last_wake_time = xTaskGetTickCount();
145     const TickType_t frequency = pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000); // 1 second = 1000ms
146
147     while (1) {
148         bool lora_tx_OK = false;
149         lora_tx_OK = send_lora_pack_radio();
150         if (lora_tx_OK != true) {
151             MAIN_ERROR("LoRa TX failed");
152         }
153
154         vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency);
155     }
156 }

```

The function begins by calling xTaskGetTickCount() to obtain the current RTOS clock tick count, saving it to the variable last_wake_time—this variable records the time point when the task last woke up. It then converts 1000 milliseconds to system tick values via pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000) and stores it in the constant frequency, indicating this task's execution period is 1 second.

```

142 static void lora_tx_task(void *param)
143 {
144     TickType_t last_wake_time = xTaskGetTickCount();
145     const TickType_t frequency = pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000); // 1 second = 1000ms

```

The program then enters an infinite loop while(1)—a common task structure in FreeRTOS that ensures continuous task execution without exiting during system operation. During each loop iteration, it first defines a boolean variable lora_tx_OK initialized to false, then calls the send_lora_pack_radio() function to transmit a data packet to the LoRa wireless module. This function completes underlying operations including data encapsulation, SPI communication, and triggering wireless transmission, returning whether transmission succeeded.

```

147     while (1) {
148         bool lora_tx_OK = false;
149         lora_tx_OK = send_lora_pack_radio();

```

The program assigns this return value to the lora_tx_OK variable. If transmission fails (i.e., return value is not true), it outputs the error message "LoRa TX failed" via the logging macro MAIN_ERROR() to the serial port—alerting to wireless transmission problems and facilitating timely detection of communication anomalies during debugging. If transmission succeeds, no error message is output and the task continues to the next step.

```

150         if (lora_tx_OK != true) {
151             MAIN_ERROR("LoRa TX failed");
152         }
153
154         vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency);
155     }
156 }

```

Finally, the task calls `vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency)` to enter periodic delay. This delay method differs from ordinary `vTaskDelay()` in that it uses an absolute-time periodic scheduling mechanism—ensuring the task always runs at fixed time intervals, i.e., executing transmission operations every 1 second. Even if internal execution times vary slightly, this prevents period drift—thereby achieving stable and precise timed transmission.

⑤ ldo_init

This code implements a power initialization function "`ldo_init()`", whose primary role is to configure and enable the internal LDO (Low Dropout Regulator) channels of the ESP32-P4 chip at system startup—providing stable operating voltage for the display interface and touch/I2C circuits.

```

158 void ldo_init()
159 {
160     // --- Power Configuration (LD03 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
161     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
162     // LD03 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
163     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
164     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
165     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
166         .chan_id = 3,           // LDO Channel 3
167         .voltage_mv = 2500,     // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
168     };
169
170     Serial.println("Initializing LD03 to 2.5V...");
171     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
172     if (err != ESP_OK) {
173         Serial.printf("LD03 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
174     } else {
175         Serial.println("LD03 Power enabled successfully.");
176     }
177
178     // --- Power Configuration (LD04 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
179     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
180     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
181         .chan_id = 4,           // LDO Channel 4
182         .voltage_mv = 3300,     // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
183     };
184
185     Serial.println("Initializing LD04 to 3.3V...");
186     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
187     if (err != ESP_OK) {
188         Serial.printf("LD04 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
189     } else {
190         Serial.println("LD04 Power enabled successfully.");
191     }
192 }

```

The function begins by defining an `esp_err_t` type variable `err` to store the error status after function execution, along with an `esp_ldo_channel_handle_t` type handle variable to represent the successfully acquired LDO channel control object.

```

158 void ldo_init()
159 {
160     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
161     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
162     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
163     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
164     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;

```

The first configuration is for the LDO3 power channel. The program creates a structure `esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg`, where `chan_id = 3` selects the LDO3 channel, and `voltage_mv = 2500` sets the output voltage to 2500mV (2.5V).

```

165     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
166         .chan_id = 3,           // LDO Channel 3
167         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
168     };
169

```

This voltage is primarily used to power the MIPI D-PHY display interface circuit, as the MIPI display interface in ESP32-P4's hardware design typically requires a dedicated ~2.5V power rail for normal operation. The program then outputs debug information via `Serial.println()` indicating LDO3 initialization, and calls `esp_ldo_acquire_channel()` to request and enable this LDO channel. If the returned result `err` is not `ESP_OK`, indicating power configuration failure, the program uses `Serial.printf()` to output an error message and converts the error code to a readable string via `esp_err_to_name()`; if successful, it prints a confirmation message indicating LDO3 power has been successfully enabled.

```

170     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
171     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
172     if (err != ESP_OK) {
173         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
174     } else {
175         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
176     }
177

```

The program then continues to configure the LDO4 power channel, following essentially the same procedure as LDO3: first defining handle `ldo4_handle` and configuration structure `ldo4_cfg`, where `chan_id = 4` selects the LDO4 channel, and `voltage_mv = 3300` sets the output voltage to 3300mV (3.3V).

```

178     // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
179     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
180     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
181         .chan_id = 4,           // LDO Channel 4
182         .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
183     };
184

```

This voltage is primarily used to power the I2C bus pull-up resistors and touch controller—for example, common capacitive touch chips like GT911 typically operate in 3.3V voltage environments, requiring stable power support.

```

185     Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
186     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
187     if (err != ESP_OK) {
188         Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
189     } else {
190         Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
191     }
192 }

```

The program similarly prints initialization information via serial port and calls `esp_ldo_acquire_channel()` to enable LDO4. If configuration fails, it prints an error message; if successful, it indicates the power has been properly activated.

⑥ `display_touch_lvgl_init`

This code implements a display, touchscreen, and graphical interface system initialization function "`display_touch_lvgl_init()`", whose primary role is to complete the comprehensive initialization of display hardware, touch controller, and graphics library at system startup—enabling the screen to properly display graphical interfaces and support touch input.

```

194 void display_touch_lvgl_init()
195 {
196     // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
197     Board *board = new Board();
198     // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
199     Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
200     assert(board->init());
201     #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
202     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
203     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
204     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
205     #endif
206     assert(board->begin());
207     Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
208
209     Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
210     lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
211 }

```

The function begins by creating a Board class object via `Board *board = new Board();`. This class from `ESP_Panel_Library` primarily encapsulates hardware resources on the development board including the display panel, touchscreen, and communication buses—allowing users to complete initialization and control through a unified interface.

```

194 void display_touch_lvgl_init()
195 {
196     // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
197     Board *board = new Board();

```

The program then outputs "Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)..." via the serial port to indicate the system is initializing display and touch devices. It subsequently calls `board->init()` to complete low-level hardware initialization—typically configuring the MIPI-DSI display bus, GPIOs, I2C touch bus, and related drivers, while loading specific hardware drivers such as the display control chip EK79007 and capacitive touch control chip GT911.

```
198 // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
199 Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
200 assert(board->init());
```

The function uses `assert()` for verification; if initialization fails, the program halts immediately to prevent subsequent execution with improperly initialized hardware.

The code then includes a conditional compilation section `#if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE`. When tear-free (anti-tearing) mode is enabled, the program obtains the LCD display object via `board->getLCD()` and calls `configFrameBufferNumber()` to set the number of frame buffers used by LVGL. This multi-buffering mechanism reduces display tearing artifacts during refresh—thereby improving screen display stability and visual quality.

```
201 #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
202     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
203     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
204     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
205 #endif
```

The program then calls `board->begin()` to complete the final device startup process. This function typically actually starts the display driver, initializes the touch controller, and brings the hardware into operational state—again using `assert()` to ensure successful execution.

Upon completion, the program outputs "Display and Touch system online." via the serial port, indicating the display and touch system is functioning normally.

```
206 assert(board->begin());
207 Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
```

Finally, the program begins initializing the graphical interface system. It prints "Initializing LVGL" to indicate the graphics library is about to start, then calls `lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch())` to initialize the LVGL porting layer—registering the LCD display device and touch input device with the LVGL system. This enables LVGL to refresh the screen through the LCD driver and receive user input events through the touch driver.

```
209 Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
210 lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
211 }
```

⑦ setup

This code is the Arduino program's "setup()" initialization function, which executes only once after system power-on or reset. It is primarily responsible for completing the entire system's hardware initialization, interface initialization, and task creation—establishing a complete runtime environment for subsequent program operation.

The function first calls `Serial.begin(115200)` to initialize serial communication (UART0) with a baud rate of 115200, used for outputting debug logs and system operation information.

It then calls `ldo_init()` to configure the internal LDO regulator channels of the ESP32-P4, enabling the system to provide stable power for the display interface and touch/I2C circuits.

```
213 void setup() {
214     // put your setup code here, to run once:
215
216     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
217     Serial.begin(115200);
218
219     ldo_init();
220 }
```

Subsequently, it calls `display_touch_lvgl_init()` to complete the initialization of display and touchscreen hardware, and start the LVGL graphics library—thereby endowing the screen with the capability to display graphical interfaces and receive touch input.

```
221     display_touch_lvgl_init();
222 }
```

After completing the display system initialization, the program begins initializing the wireless communication module. It calls `sx1262_tx_init()` to initialize the LoRa wireless chip. If the return value is not `ESP_OK`, indicating initialization failure, it outputs an error message via the logging macro `MAIN_ERROR()` to prompt wireless module startup failure. If initialization succeeds, the system can proceed with LoRa data transmission.

```
223     // lora tx init
224     esp_err_t err = sx1262_tx_init();
225     if (err != ESP_OK) { // Check error
226         MAIN_ERROR("Wireless Module init..."); // Handle failure
227     }
228 }
```

The program then calls `lvgl_show_counter_label_init()` to create an LVGL label control on screen for displaying the wireless transmission counter—for example, "TX_Hello World:0"—and prints a log via `MAIN_INFO()` indicating the interface has been successfully displayed.

```
229     lvgl_show_counter_label_init();
230     MAIN_INFO("----- LVGL Show OK -----");
231 }
```

The program continues outputting logs indicating successful wireless module initialization, then uses `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()` to create two FreeRTOS tasks:

The first task `ui_counter_task` is allocated 4096 bytes of stack space and pinned to CPU Core 0. Its primary role is to read the LoRa transmission counter every second and update the text label on screen.

The second task `lora_tx_task` is allocated 8192 bytes of stack space and pinned to CPU Core 1. It is responsible for sending a LoRa data packet to the wireless module every second.

```
233     MAIN_INFO("The wireless module initialization was successful."); // Print success log
234     // Create tasks and use the same priority to ensure synchronization
235     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(ui_counter_task, "ui_counter", 4096, NULL,
236         configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 0);
237
238     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(lora_tx_task, "sx1262_tx", 8192, NULL,
239         configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 1);
240
241     MAIN_INFO("Tasks created, starting synchronized transmission...");
```

Both tasks are set to priority `configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5`, ensuring they have identical scheduling priority in the system—thereby achieving relatively synchronized operation. Finally, the program outputs the log "Tasks created, starting synchronized transmission..." indicating system initialization is complete and the system is entering the multi-tasking runtime phase.

Receiver Main Function

The above is the main function code for the transmitter. Next, let's take a look at the main function code for the receiver.

① Global Variables

This section of code defines several static global variables that are crucial in the LoRa reception program:

- Then, **static lv_obj_t *s_rx_label = NULL;** defines a pointer to an LVGL label object, which is used to display the received LoRa data content on the screen.
- **static lv_obj_t *s_rssi_label = NULL;** is an interface label used to display the RSSI (signal strength) value, allowing users to know the strength of the received signal.
- **static lv_obj_t *s_snr_label = NULL;** defines another LVGL label, which is used to display the SNR (signal-to-noise ratio) value to help determine the quality of the received signal.
- Finally, **static uint32_t rx_packet_count = 0;** is a counting variable used to record the number of received LoRa data packets. It increments by 1 each time data is received, enabling real-time display of the reception count and system working status on the interface.

```

74  /* _____
75  | | | | | | | | | | GLOBAL VARIABLES
76  | | | | | | | | | | _____ */
77  static lv_obj_t *s_rx_label = NULL;           // LVGL label object to display received data
78  static lv_obj_t *s_rssi_label = NULL;         // LVGL label object to display RSSI value
79  static lv_obj_t *s_snr_label = NULL;          // LVGL label object to display SNR value
80  static uint32_t rx_packet_count = 0;          // Counter for the number of received LoRa packets
81  /* _____

```

② rx data callback:

The function **rx_data_callback()** is the core callback function of the entire LoRa receiving program. It is automatically triggered and executed when the wireless module successfully receives a frame of LoRa data, and is used to process the reception event and update the interface display in real time.

- First, the function increments the reception count by `rx_packet_count++` to record the arrival of a new data packet.
- Then, it calls `lvgl_port_lock(0)` to acquire a lock, ensuring safe operation of the LVGL graphical interface in a multi-tasking environment.
- If the lock is successfully acquired, it updates three interface elements in sequence: first, it checks whether `s_rx_label` exists; if it does, it uses `snprintf()` to format the string "RX_Hello World:<Number>", and updates the reception count displayed on the screen via `lv_label_set_text()`.
- Next, it updates the signal strength label `s_rssi_label` to display the current RSSI value (Received Signal Strength Indicator, in dBm) on the interface.
- Then, it updates the signal-to-noise ratio label `s_snr_label` to display the SNR value (Signal-to-Noise Ratio, in dB) of the current received signal, reflecting the signal quality.
- After the interface update is completed, the function calls `lvgl_port_unlock()` to release the lock.
- Finally, it prints a log via `MAIN_INFO()`, outputting the serial number of the data received this time, the RSSI, and the SNR value to the console, facilitating debugging and system status monitoring.

Overall, the function's role is to synchronously update the screen and logs each time a LoRa data packet arrives, intuitively reflecting the system's real-time reception status and signal quality. It is a key link for data visualization and operation monitoring in the application.

③ **lvgl_show_rx_interface_init:**

The function **lvgl_show_rx_interface_init()** is the initialization function for the LoRa receiver interface. It is responsible for creating and beautifying the graphical interface used to display LoRa reception status before system startup or the beginning of the reception task.

The function first acquires the LVGL graphics lock via **lvgl_port_lock(0)**, ensuring safe operation of interface objects in a multi-threaded environment.

Then it calls **lv_scr_act()** to obtain the currently active screen object and sets the screen background to white with full opacity, providing a clear display background. Next, it defines and initializes a general style **info_style**, uniformly setting the font size, text color (black), and transparent background, which is shared by the RSSI and SNR labels.

Subsequently, it creates four main interface elements in sequence:

- 1 Title label `title_label` — displays the title "LoRa RX Receiver", using a large font style and centered at the top of the screen to identify the interface function.
- 2 Received content label `s_rx_label` — shows the currently received LoRa message content, initially set to "RX_Hello World:0", positioned slightly above the center of the screen.
- 3 Signal strength label `s_rssi_label` — displays the RSSI (Received Signal Strength), initially "RSSI: -- dBm", placed at the lower left of the interface.

- 4 Signal-to-noise ratio label `s_snr_label` — displays the SNR (Signal-to-Noise Ratio), initially "SNR: -- dB", positioned at the lower right, symmetrical to the RSSI label.

All labels use predefined styles to ensure consistent fonts and colors. After creating the interface, the function calls `lvgl_port_unlock()` to release the lock, allowing other tasks to access the LVGL system.

Overall, the function initializes the visual interface for the LoRa receiver, providing a clear UI layout for real-time display of received data (such as message content, signal strength, and SNR). It serves as the core initialization function for the graphical display in the program.

④ **lora_rx_task:**

The function **`lora_rx_task()`** is the **LoRa reception task**, responsible for continuously detecting and processing data packets received from the **SX1262 module** during system operation.

- The function runs in a dedicated FreeRTOS task, using an infinite loop to continuously listen for LoRa signals.
- Inside the loop, it first calls `sx1262_is_data_received()` to check whether a new data packet has arrived.
- If a reception event is detected, it calls `sx1262_get_received_len()` to obtain the length of the received data, then passes this length as a parameter to `received_lora_pack_radio(len)`, which handles data parsing and display logic (e.g., updating the received content, RSSI, and SNR on the interface).
- If no data is currently received, the program delays 10 ms using `vTaskDelay(10 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS)`, reducing CPU usage and maintaining balanced task execution.

Overall, this function maintains the real-time listening mechanism for the LoRa receiver, ensuring that any incoming wireless data is captured and processed promptly. It is the core background task responsible for data reception and event handling in the LoRa communication system.

⑤ **setup**

This code is the Arduino program's "setup()" initialization function, whose role is to complete the initialization of the entire LoRa receiving system, display interface, and multi-tasking environment after system power-on or reset—thereby building an embedded system capable of receiving wireless data and displaying it on screen.

The program begins by calling `Serial.begin(115200)` to initialize the serial port (UART0) with a baud rate of 115200, used for outputting system debug information and runtime logs. It then calls `ldo_init()` to configure the internal LDO power channels of the ESP32-P4 chip, providing stable operating voltage for the display interface, touch

controller, and I2C pull-up circuits.

```

264 void setup() {
265     // put your setup code here, to run once:
266
267     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
268     Serial.begin(115200);
269
270     ldo_init();

```

Next, the program calls `display_touch_lvgl_init()` to complete the initialization of display and touchscreen hardware, while simultaneously starting the LVGL graphics library porting layer—endowing the system with graphical display and touch input capabilities.

```

272     display_touch_lvgl_init();
273

```

After the graphics system is ready, the program calls `lvgl_show_rx_interface_init()` to create and initialize an LVGL receiving interface (RX Interface). This interface typically contains text labels or other controls used to display received wireless data or reception status on screen. It outputs the prompt message "----- LVGL RX Interface OK -----" via the logging macro `MAIN_INFO()` to indicate the interface has been successfully created.

```

274     lvgl_show_rx_interface_init(); // Initialize LVGL user interface
275     MAIN_INFO("----- LVGL RX Interface OK -----"); // Log successful UI init
276

```

The program then begins initializing the LoRa wireless receiving module. It calls `sx1262_rx_init()` to initialize the SX1262 LoRa chip in receive mode—including configuring wireless frequency, communication parameters, and receive state machine.

If the function return value is not `ESP_OK`, indicating initialization failure, the program outputs an error log via `MAIN_ERROR()` to prompt wireless module startup failure. If initialization succeeds, it prints "The wireless module RX initialization was successful." via `MAIN_INFO()` to indicate the LoRa receiving module is functioning normally.

```

277     // Wireless RX init (LoRa receiver initialization)
278     esp_err_t err = sx1262_rx_init(); // Initialize SX1262 LoRa receiver
279     if (err != ESP_OK) {
280         MAIN_ERROR("Wireless Module RX init..."); // Halt if failed
281     }
282     MAIN_INFO("The wireless module RX initialization was successful."); // Log success
283

```

The program then calls `sx1262_set_rx_callback(rx_data_callback)` to register a receive callback function `rx_data_callback`.

When the wireless module receives a new LoRa data packet, the underlying driver automatically invokes this callback function—triggering data processing logic in the program such as parsing data, updating the interface, or recording reception information. It outputs the log "RX callback registered" to indicate successful callback function registration.

```

284 // (Set callback function for received data)
285 sx1262_set_rx_callback(rx_data_callback); // Register LoRa RX callback function
286 MAIN_INFO("RX callback registered"); // Log callback registration success
287

```

Finally, the program creates a FreeRTOS task `lora_rx_task` via `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()`, allocating 4096 bytes of task stack space and pinning this task to CPU Core 1, with task priority set to `configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5`. This task's primary role is to continuously monitor LoRa reception status and process received data—thereby ensuring stable operation of the wireless receiving function.

```

288 // (Create LoRa receiving task)
289 xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(lora_rx_task, "sx1262_rx", 4096, NULL,
290                        configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 1); // Create FreeRTOS task pinned to core 1
291
292 MAIN_INFO("LoRa RX receiver started, waiting for data.."); // Log start message
293

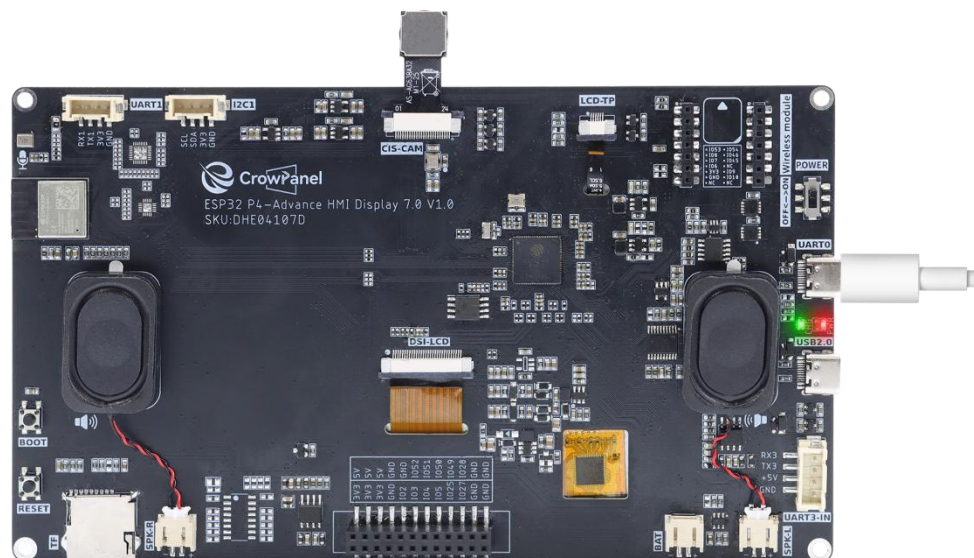
```

After task creation, the program outputs the log "LoRa RX receiver started, waiting for data..." via the logging macro, indicating the system has entered LoRa receive mode and is beginning to wait for wireless data.

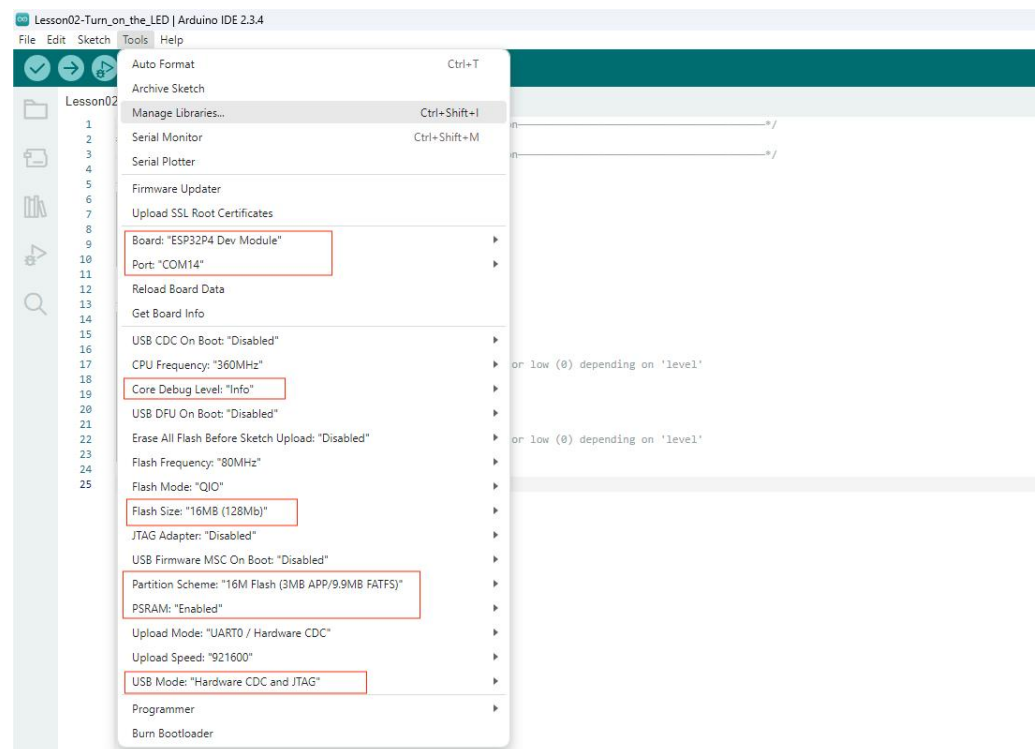
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

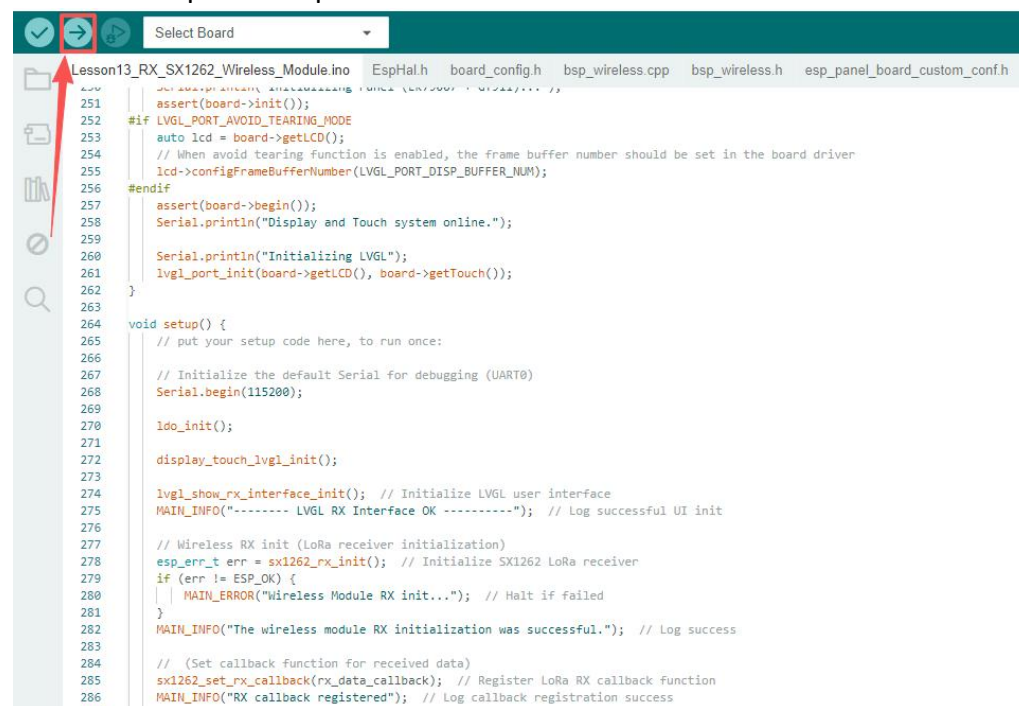
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.



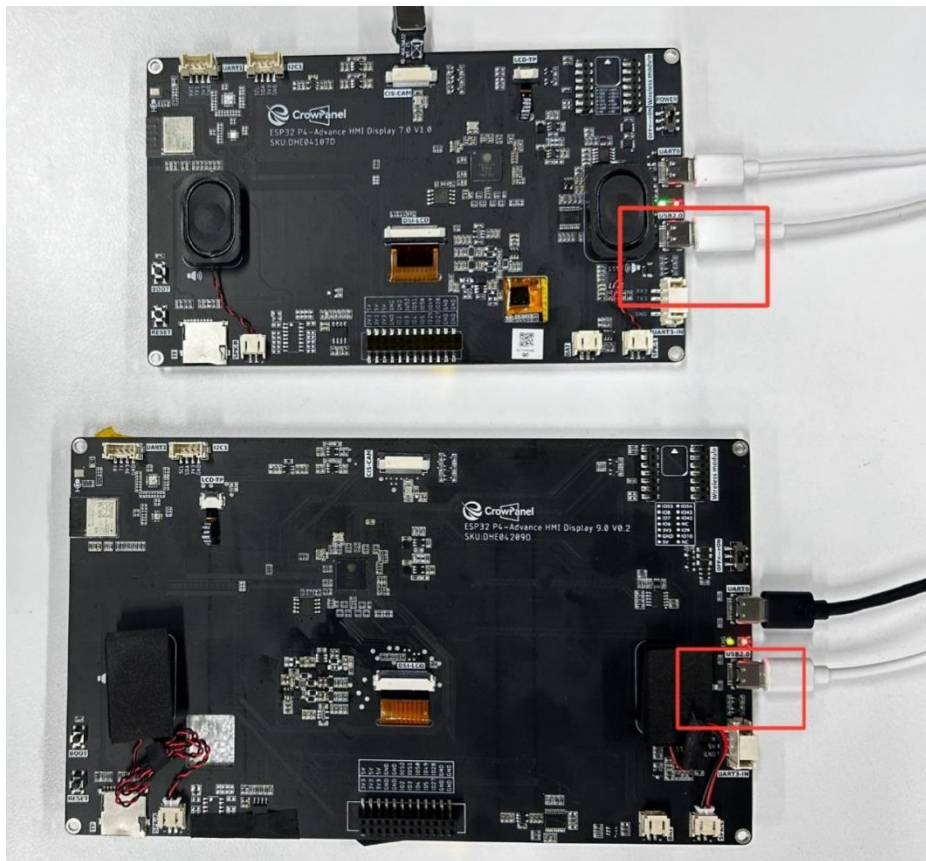
Then we compile and upload the code.



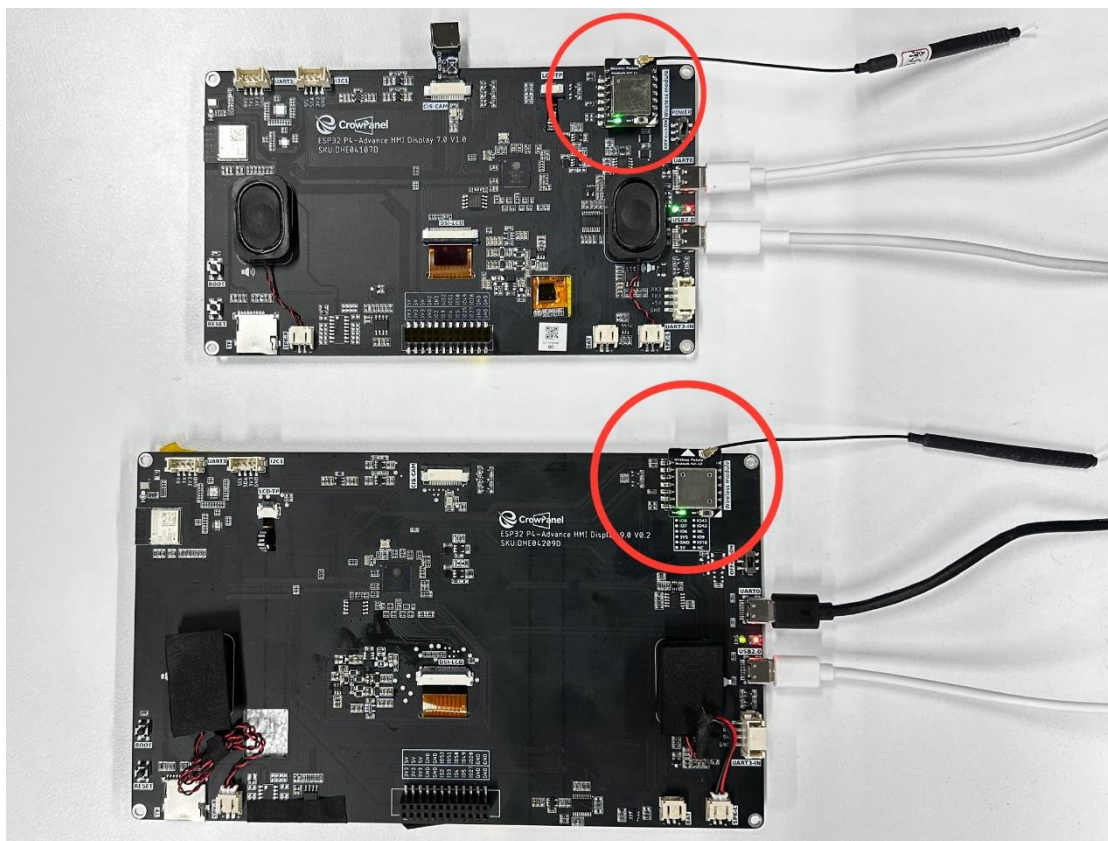
Wait for the code upload to complete.

At this point, remember to connect your Advance-P4 using an additional Type-C cable via the **USB 2.0 interface**.

This is because the maximum current provided by a computer's USB-A port is generally 500mA, while the Advance-P4 requires a sufficient power supply when using multiple peripherals—especially a display. (Using a dedicated charger is recommended.)

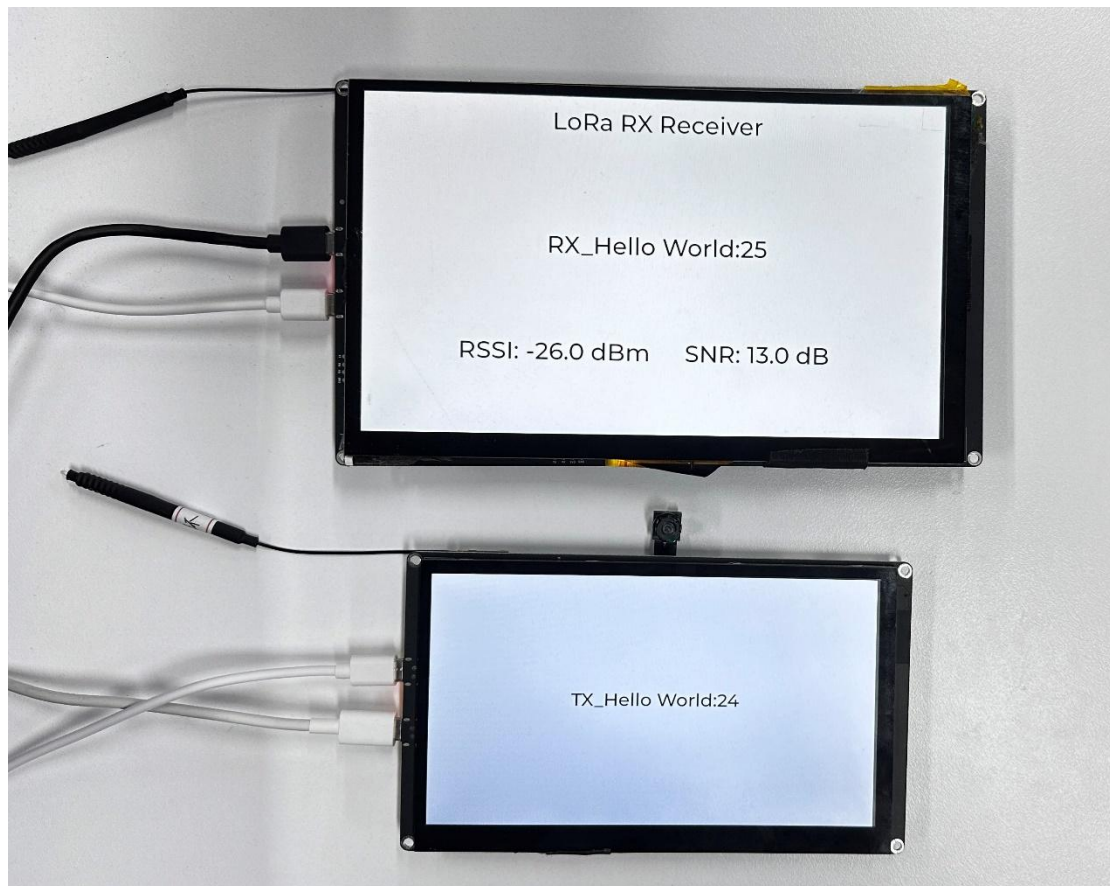


Insert the LoRa module SX1262 into the two Advance-P4 development boards respectively.



After inserting the modules and running the code on each board respectively, you will be able to see the LoRa module transmitting "TX_Hello World:i" on the screen of the transmitter-side Advance-P4, with the value of "i" increasing by 1 every second. Similarly, on the screen of the receiver-side Advance-P4, you can see the LoRa module receiving "RX_Hello World:i". When a message is received, "i" also increases by 1 every second. At the same time, you can also view the relevant received signal status: RSSI and SNR.

- **RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator)** indicates the strength of the received signal, with the unit of **dBm (decibel-milliwatts)**. A larger value (closer to 0) means a stronger signal; a smaller value (e.g., -120 dBm) means a weaker signal. It can reflect the distance between the receiver and the transmitter, as well as the stability of the communication link.
- **SNR (Signal-to-Noise Ratio)** represents the ratio of the signal to noise, also with the unit of **dB (decibels)**. A higher SNR indicates better signal quality and lower noise; an excessively low SNR (even negative values) means the signal is severely interfered with by noise.



Lesson14--- nRF2401 Wireless RF Module

Introduction

In this lesson, we will start using another wireless module. Since we will implement the transmission and reception functions of the nRF2401 module, two Advance-P4 development boards and two nRF2401 wireless RF (Radio Frequency) communication modules are required.

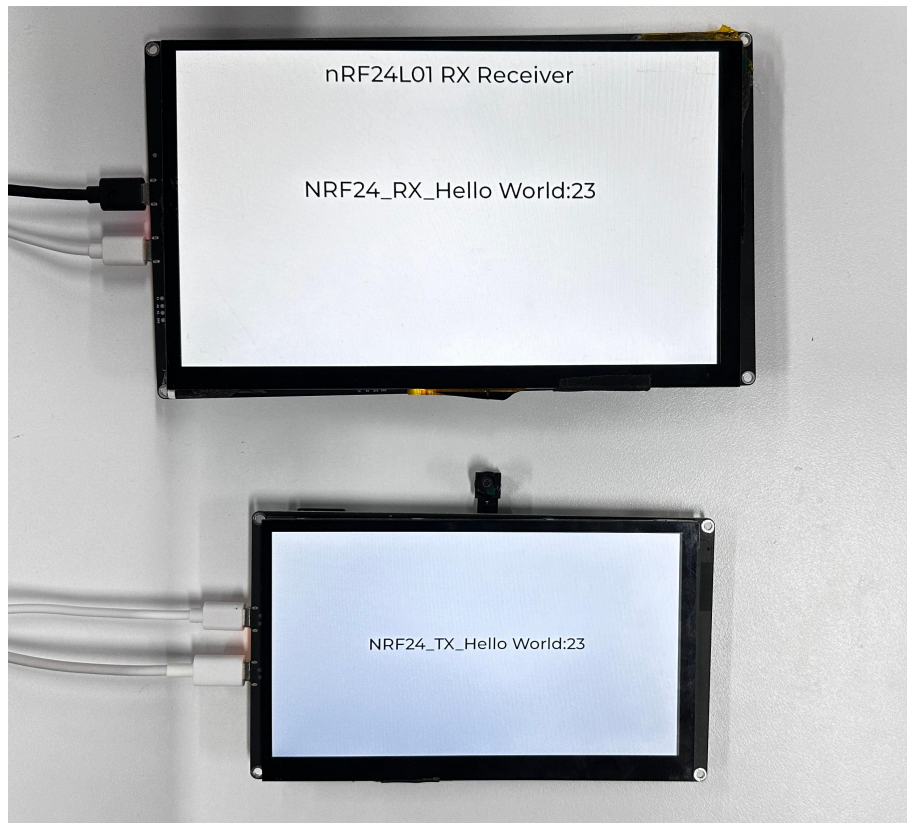
The project to be completed in this lesson is as follows: When the nRF2401 module is connected to the wireless module slot of the Advance-P4, the transmitter-side Advance-P4 screen will display **"NRF24_TX_Hello World:i"**, and the corresponding receiver-side Advance-P4 screen will display **"NRF24_RX_Hello World:i"**. The value of "i" on the receiver will only increment by 1 when it receives the signal from the transmitter.

Learning Goals

1. Understand the working principles of the nRF24L01 2.4GHz wireless module (SPI communication, transceiver pipe address matching, 2.4G band parameter configuration), as well as the hardware pin adaptation rules between ESP32-P4 and nRF24L01 (CS chip select, IRQ interrupt, CE enable, etc.).
2. Master the core implementation methods for nRF24L01 module initialization configuration (2.4GHz frequency, 250kbps data rate, communication channel, transceiver pipe addresses), data transmission (timed packet sending, transmission counter updates), and reception (interrupt callbacks, data reading).
3. Master the design of nRF24L01 transceiver logic based on FreeRTOS multi-tasking (separation of transmission task, reception task, and UI update task), as well as thread-safe implementation of dynamic LVGL interface updates (transmission/reception counter display).

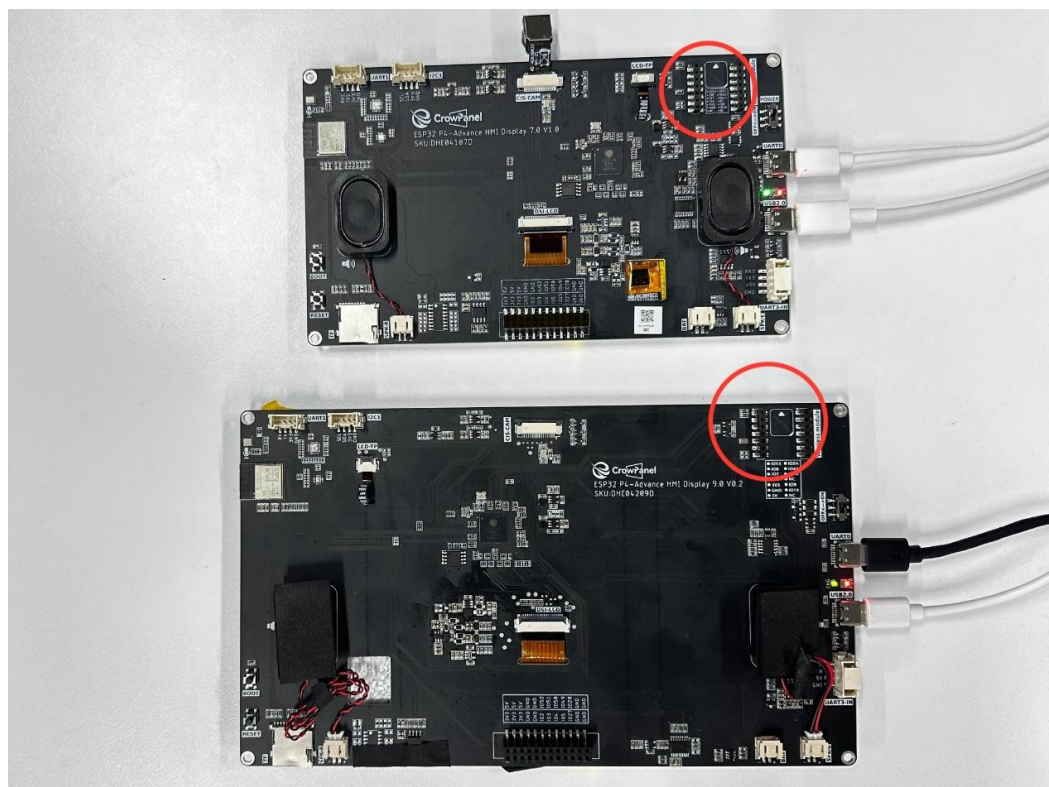
Preview of the Result

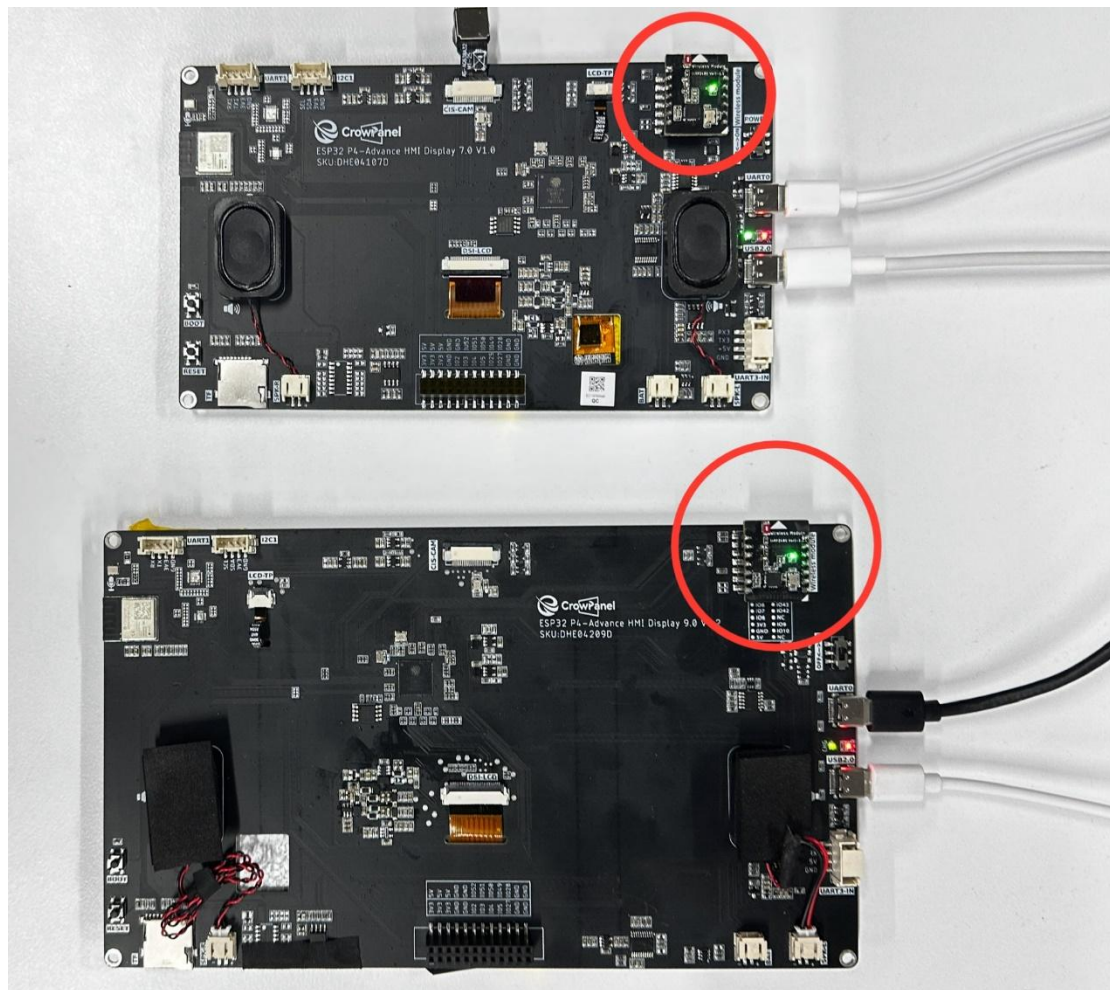
After inserting the nRF2401 wireless RF modules into the two Advance-P4 development boards and running the code on each respectively, you will be able to see the nRF2401 module transmitting **"NRF24_TX_Hello World:i"** on the screen of the transmitter-side Advance-P4, with the value of "i" increasing by 1 every second. Similarly, on the screen of the receiver-side Advance-P4, you can see the nRF2401 module receiving **"NRF24_RX_Hello World:i"**. When a message is received, "i" also increases by 1 every second.



Hardware Used in This Lesson

nRF2401 Wireless Module on Advance-P4





Complete Code

First, click the GitHub link below to download the code for this lesson.

(Friendly reminder: The 7-inch, 9-inch, and 10.1-inch displays share the same code from the link below, as these three sizes differ only in dimensions for your selection—the hardware schematics and wiring remain identical.)

Kindly click the link below to view the full code implementation.

Transmitting end code:

[https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino Code/Lesson14 TX_nRF2401_Wireless RF Module](https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino%20Code/Lesson14_TX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module)

Receiving end code:

[https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino Code/Lesson14 RX_nRF2401_Wireless RF Module](https://github.com/Elecrow-RD/CrowPanel-Advanced-7inch-ESP32-P4-HMI-AI-Display-1024x600-IPS-Touch-Screen/tree/master/example/V1.1/Arduino%20Code/Lesson14_RX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module)

Key Explanations

The focus of this lesson is on how to use the wireless module, including initializing the nRF2401 module and sending or receiving information.

Double-click to open the code for this lesson (the .ino file).

The code for this lesson includes a transmitter side and a receiver side:

Transmitter side:

libraries	2026/3/11 15:55	File folder	
board_config.h	2026/3/5 20:52	C Header 源文件	2 KB
bsp_wireless.cpp	2026/3/6 10:11	C++ 源文件	17 KB
bsp_wireless.h	2026/3/12 10:32	C Header 源文件	5 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
EspHal.h	2026/2/24 16:58	C Header 源文件	5 KB
Lesson14_TX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module.ino	2026/3/6 9:39	INO File	11 KB
lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

Receiver side:

libraries	2026/3/11 15:55	File folder	
board_config.h	2026/3/6 10:09	C Header 源文件	2 KB
bsp_wireless.cpp	2026/3/6 9:44	C++ 源文件	17 KB
bsp_wireless.h	2026/3/12 10:32	C Header 源文件	5 KB
esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h	2026/3/5 11:20	C Header 源文件	34 KB
esp_panel_drivers_conf.h	2026/2/27 14:52	C Header 源文件	14 KB
esp_utils_conf.h	2026/2/27 11:51	C Header 源文件	6 KB
EspHal.h	2026/2/24 16:58	C Header 源文件	5 KB
Lesson14_RX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Mod...	2026/3/6 9:26	INO File	13 KB
lv_conf.h	2026/2/28 15:32	C Header 源文件	26 KB
lvgl_v8_port.cpp	2026/2/28 15:10	C++ 源文件	31 KB
lvgl_v8_port.h	2026/2/28 16:01	C Header 源文件	7 KB

Here, we will still use the bsp_wireless component from the previous lesson.

The main functions of this component are as follows:

- It is responsible for encoding and modulating data sent by the main controller (such as strings, sensor information, etc.) before transmitting it.

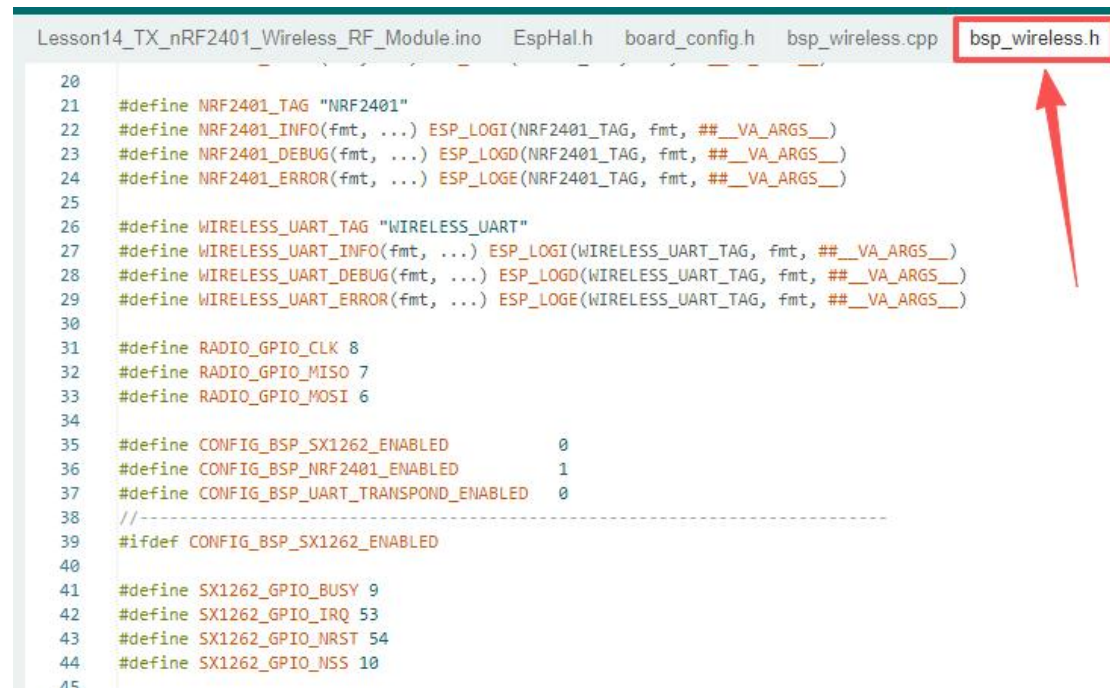
- It also handles the reception of wireless data packets sent by other devices via the nRF2401.
- It returns the received data to the upper-layer application through a callback mechanism.

In addition to the aforementioned functions, we have also encapsulated the relevant experimental functions of the remaining three wireless modules - nRF2401, LoRa module, ESP32-C6, and ESP32-H2 - into this component.

Since in the code, the function usage of each wireless module is wrapped with `ifdef` and `endif`, and we are using the nRF2401 wireless module in this lesson, we only need to enable the configurations related to nRF2401.

How to enable it:

Open the `bsp_wireless.h` file.



```
Lesson14_TX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h
20
21 #define NRF2401_TAG "NRF2401"
22 #define NRF2401_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
23 #define NRF2401_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
24 #define NRF2401_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
25
26 #define WIRELESS_UART_TAG "WIRELESS_UART"
27 #define WIRELESS_UART_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
28 #define WIRELESS_UART_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
29 #define WIRELESS_UART_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
30
31 #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32 #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33 #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35 #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 0
36 #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 1
37 #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38 //-----
39 #ifndef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41 #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42 #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43 #define SX1262_GPIO_Nrst 54
44 #define SX1262_GPIO_MSS 10
45
```

Here, enable the macro definition of the nRF2401 wireless module by setting the macro definition to 1. From now on, you will use the code related to nRF2401, while the macro definitions for other wireless modules will be commented out by default—that is, we set the macro definitions for other wireless modules to 0.

```

Lesson14_TX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h
20
21 #define NRF2401_TAG "NRF2401"
22 #define NRF2401_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
23 #define NRF2401_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
24 #define NRF2401_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
25
26 #define WIRELESS_UART_TAG "WIRELESS_UART"
27 #define WIRELESS_UART_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
28 #define WIRELESS_UART_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
29 #define WIRELESS_UART_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
30
31 #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32 #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33 #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35 #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 0
36 #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 1
37 #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38
39 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41 #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42 #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43 #define SX1262_GPIO_Nrst 54
44 #define SX1262_GPIO_MSS 10
45

```

(Enable the one that corresponds to the wireless module you are using.)

```

67 //-----
68
69 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
70
71 #define NRF24_GPIO_IRQ 9
72 #define NRF24_GPIO_CE 53
73 #define NRF24_GPIO_CS 54
74
75 #ifdef __cplusplus
76 extern "C"
77 {
78 #endif
79     esp_err_t nrf24_tx_init();
80     void nrf24_tx_deinit();
81     bool send_nrf24_pack_radio();
82     uint32_t nrf24_get_tx_counter();
83     void nrf24_inc_tx_counter();
84
85     esp_err_t nrf24_rx_init();
86     void nrf24_rx_deinit();
87     void received_nrf24_pack_radio(size_t len);
88     void nrf24_set_rx_callback(void (*callback)(const char* data, size_t len));
89 #ifdef __cplusplus
90 }
91 #endif
92 #endif
93 //-----
94
95 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED
96
97 #define UART_GPIO_TXD 53
98 #define UART_GPIO_RXD 54
99 #ifdef __cplusplus
100 extern "C"
101 {
102 #endif
103     esp_err_t uart_transpond_init();
104     void uart_transpond_deinit();
105 #ifdef __cplusplus
106 }
107 #endif
108 #endif

```

As shown in the figure, we have enabled the nRF2401 configuration, so the other modules are temporarily disabled and not applicable.
In the bsp_wireless component, you only need to call the prepared interfaces when needed.

Next, let's focus on understanding the bsp_wireless component.

The following section shows the transmitter (TX) side of the project:

```

20
21 #define NRF2401_TAG "NRF2401"
22 #define NRF2401_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
23 #define NRF2401_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
24 #define NRF2401_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(NRF2401_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
25
26 #define WIRELESS_UART_TAG "WIRELESS_UART"
27 #define WIRELESS_UART_INFO(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGI(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
28 #define WIRELESS_UART_DEBUG(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGD(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
29 #define WIRELESS_UART_ERROR(fmt, ...) ESP_LOGE(WIRELESS_UART_TAG, fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__)
30
31 #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32 #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33 #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
35 #define CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED 0
36 #define CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED 1
37 #define CONFIG_BSP_UART_TRANSPOND_ENABLED 0
38 //-----
39 #ifndef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
40
41 #define SX1262_GPIO_BUSY 9
42 #define SX1262_GPIO_IRQ 53
43 #define SX1262_GPIO_NRST 54
44 #define SX1262_GPIO_NSS 10
45
46

```

The following section shows the receiver (RX) side of the project:

```

10
11 /*
12 |-----| INCLUDES
13 |-----| */
14 #include "board_config.h" // board pin define
15 #include <Arduino.h> // Arduino core library. Must be placed at the very top to ensure recognition of Arduino APIs
16
17 #include <string.h> // C string lib
18 #include <esp_log.h> // ESP-IDF logging library
19 #include <esp_err.h> // ESP-IDF error codes
20 #include <esp_ldo_regulator.h> // ESP32-P4 specific LDO management
21
22 /* panel driver */
23 #include "esp_panel_drivers_conf.h"
24 #include "esp_panel_board_custom_conf.h"
25 #include "ESP_Panel_Library.h"
26
27 /* LVGL and driver */
28 #include <lvgl.h>
29 #include "lvgl_v8_port.h"
30
31 /* LoRa */
32 #include "bsp_wireless.h"
33
34 using namespace esp_panel::drivers;
35 using namespace esp_panel::board;
36
37 |-----| DEFINITIONS
38 |-----| */
39 #define PRINTF_ORIGINAL(fmt, ...) Serial.printf(fmt, ##__VA_ARGS__);
40 #define PRINTF_PRINT(fmt, ...) Serial.print(fmt);
41 #define PRINTF_LN(fmt, ...) Serial.println(fmt);
42
43

```

In these two projects, the only difference lies in the main functions:

[Lesson14_TX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module.ino](#) for the transmitter and
[Lesson14_RX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module.ino](#) for the receiver.

All other code files are identical. (For convenience, we have prepared both main functions for you to use separately.)

Other library files under this project have been explained in detail in the previous lesson, so they will not be elaborated on here.

nRF2401 Communication Code

The code for nRF2401 transmission and reception consists of two files:

"bsp_wireless.cpp" and "bsp_wireless.h".

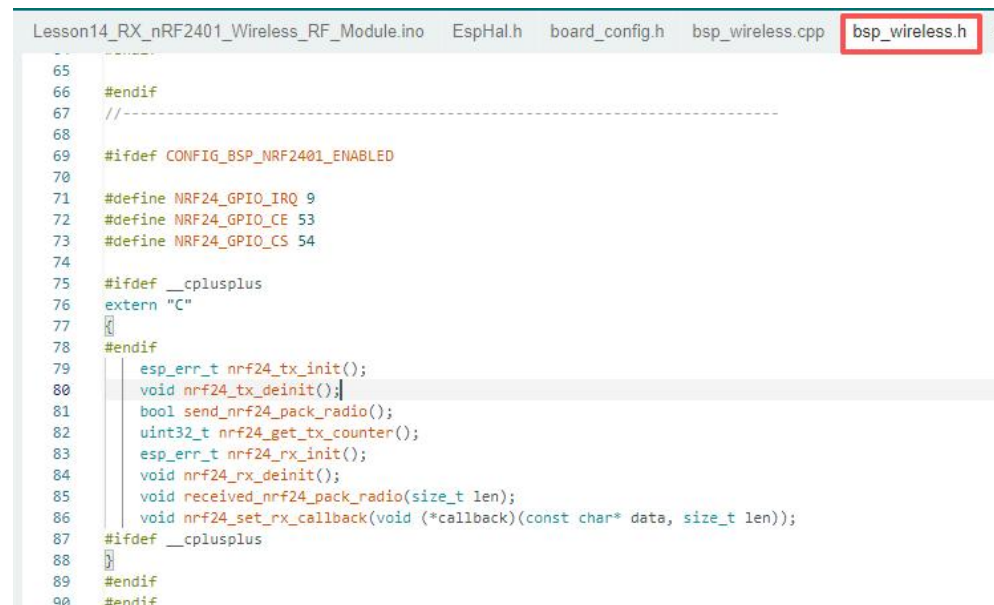
Next, we will first analyze the nRF2401-related code in the "bsp_wireless.h" program.

"bsp_wireless.h" is the header file for the nRF2401 wireless module, primarily used to:

- Declare functions, macros, and variables implemented in "bsp_wireless.cpp" for use by external programs.
- Allow other .c files to call this module simply by adding #include "bsp_wireless.h".

In other words, it acts as an interface layer that exposes which functions and constants are available to the outside, while hiding the internal details of the module.

In this component, the libraries we need to use are placed in the "bsp_wireless.h" and "bsp_wireless.cpp" files.



```

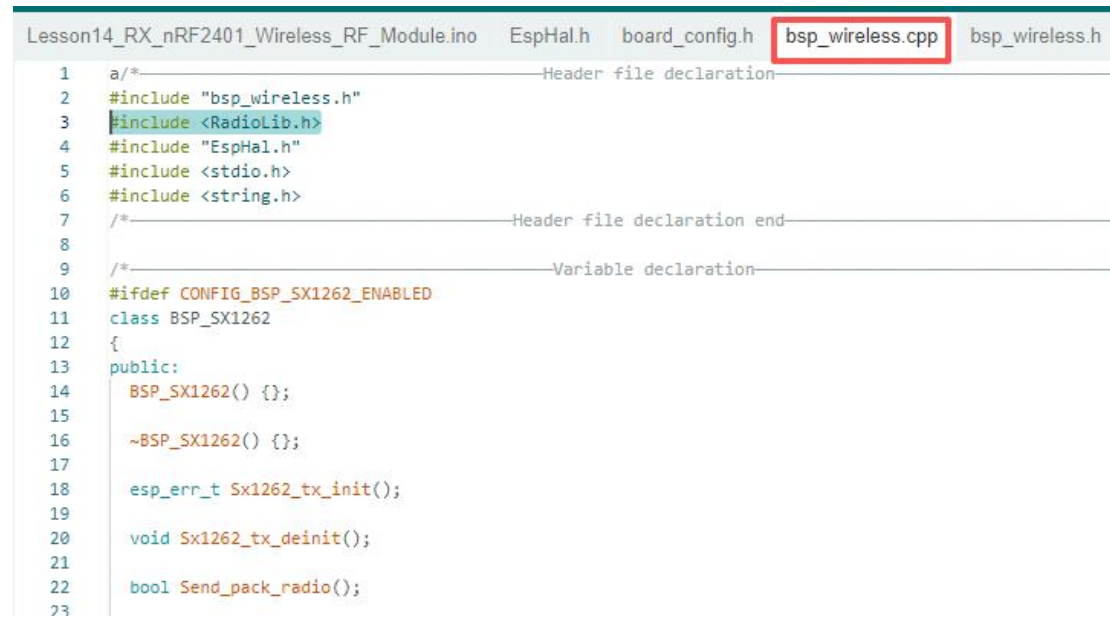
65
66 #endif
67 //-----
68
69 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
70
71 #define NRF24_GPIO_IRQ 9
72 #define NRF24_GPIO_CE 53
73 #define NRF24_GPIO_CS 54
74
75 #ifdef __cplusplus
76 extern "C"
77 {
78 #endif
79     esp_err_t nrf24_tx_init();
80     void nrf24_tx_deinit();
81     bool send_nrf24_pack_radio();
82     uint32_t nrf24_get_tx_counter();
83     esp_err_t nrf24_rx_init();
84     void nrf24_rx_deinit();
85     void received_nrf24_pack_radio(size_t len);
86     void nrf24_set_rx_callback(void (*callback)(const char* data, size_t len));
87 #ifdef __cplusplus
88 }
89 #endif
90 #endif
    
```



```

48
49 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
50 class BSP_NRF2401
51 {
52 public:
53     BSP_NRF2401() {};
54
55     ~BSP_NRF2401() {};
56
57     esp_err_t NRF24_tx_init();
58
59     void NRF24_tx_deinit();
60
61     bool Send_pack_radio();
62
63     esp_err_t NRF24_rx_init();
64
65     void NRF24_rx_deinit();
66
67     void Received_pack_radio(size_t len);
68
69 protected:
    
```

Since the function implementations in `bsp_wireless.cpp` use the function wrappers provided in `EspHal.h`, the header file needs to be included in the `.cpp` file. For example, `#include <RadioLib.h>` (this is a library under the networking components)



```
Lesson14_RX_nRF2401_Wireless_RF_Module.ino  EspHal.h  board_config.h  bsp_wireless.cpp  bsp_wireless.h
1  a/*-----Header file declaration-----
2  #include "bsp_wireless.h"
3  #include <RadioLib.h>
4  #include "EspHal.h"
5  #include <stdio.h>
6  #include <string.h>
7  /*-----Header file declaration end-----
8
9  /*-----Variable declaration-----
10 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_SX1262_ENABLED
11 class BSP_SX1262
12 {
13 public:
14     BSP_SX1262() {};
15
16     ~BSP_SX1262() {};
17
18     esp_err_t Sx1262_tx_init();
19
20     void Sx1262_tx_deinit();
21
22     bool Send_pack_radio();
23 }
```

Returning to `bsp_wireless.h`, this is where we declare the pins used by the wireless module.

```
30
31 #define RADIO_GPIO_CLK 8
32 #define RADIO_GPIO_MISO 7
33 #define RADIO_GPIO_MOSI 6
34
68
69 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
70
71 #define NRF24_GPIO_IRQ 9
72 #define NRF24_GPIO_CE 53
73 #define NRF24_GPIO_CS 54
74
```

The pin definitions should not be modified; otherwise, the wireless module will not function correctly due to incorrect wiring.

Next, we declare the variables we need to use, as well as the functions. The actual implementations of these functions are in `bsp_wireless.cpp`. Placing all declarations in `bsp_wireless.h` is intended to make them easier to call and manage. (We will examine their specific functionality when they are used in `bsp_wireless.cpp`.)

```

67 //-----
68
69 #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
70
71 #define NRF24_GPIO_IRQ 9
72 #define NRF24_GPIO_CE 53
73 #define NRF24_GPIO_CS 54
74
75 #ifdef __cplusplus
76 extern "C"
77 {
78 #endif
79     esp_err_t nrf24_tx_init();
80     void nrf24_tx_deinit();
81     bool send_nrf24_pack_radio();
82     uint32_t nrf24_get_tx_counter();
83     void nrf24_inc_tx_counter();
84
85     esp_err_t nrf24_rx_init();
86     void nrf24_rx_deinit();
87     void received_nrf24_pack_radio(size_t len);
88     void nrf24_set_rx_callback(void (*callback)(const char* data, size_t len));
89 #ifdef __cplusplus
90 }
91 #endif
92 #endif
93 //-----

```

Next, let's take a look at the specific functionality of each function in `bsp_wireless.cpp`.

In the `bsp_wireless` component, `BSP_NRF2401` is a BSP driver wrapper class for the nRF24L01 wireless transceiver module. It provides initialization, execution, de-initialization, and callback mechanisms for sending and receiving.

This allows the application layer to complete wireless communication simply by calling straightforward C interface functions (such as `nrf24_tx_init()` or `send_nrf24_pack_radio()`), without needing to directly manipulate the underlying SPI registers or the RadioLib interface.

Here, we won't go into a detailed code walkthrough; we will only explain the purpose of each function and the situations in which it should be called.

BSP_NRF2401 Class:

This means:

This code defines a class named `BSP_NRF2401` to encapsulate the driver logic for the nRF2401 wireless transceiver module, implementing initialization, sending, and receiving functionalities for wireless communication.

- The class declares initialization and de-initialization functions for both the transmitter and receiver (such as `NRF24_tx_init`, `NRF24_rx_init`), as well as data sending and receiving handling functions (`Send_pack_radio`, `Received_pack_radio`).
- Two static pointers, `bsp_nrf_mod` and `bsp_nrf_radio`, are defined to point to the underlying hardware module object and the radio object, respectively, allowing global sharing.
- `nrf_hal` is the hardware abstraction layer object, used to manage hardware communication with the chip.

- Two volatile variables are defined: radio24_transmittedFlag indicates whether transmission is complete, and radio24_receivedFlag indicates whether reception is complete.
- nrf24_tx_counter is used to record the number of transmissions.
- Finally, a function pointer nrf24_rx_data_callback is defined to trigger an upper-layer callback when data is received.

Overall, this code establishes the basic control framework for the nRF2401 module, providing a unified interface and state management mechanism for subsequent wireless data transmission and reception.

```

49  #ifdef CONFIG_BSP_NRF2401_ENABLED
50  class BSP_NRF2401
51  {
52  public:
53      BSP_NRF2401() {};
54
55      ~BSP_NRF2401() {};
56
57      esp_err_t NRF24_tx_init();
58
59      void NRF24_tx_deinit();
60
61      bool Send_pack_radio();
62
63      esp_err_t NRF24_rx_init();
64
65      void NRF24_rx_deinit();
66
67      void Received_pack_radio(size_t len);
68
69  protected:
70  private:
71      static Module *bsp_nrf_mod;
72      static nRF24 *bsp_nrf_radio;
73  };
74
75  EspHal nrf_hal;
76  Module *BSP_NRF2401::bsp_nrf_mod = nullptr;
77  nRF24 *BSP_NRF2401::bsp_nrf_radio = nullptr;
78
79  volatile bool radio24_transmittedFlag = true;
80  volatile bool radio24_receivedFlag = false;
81  static uint32_t nrf24_tx_counter = 0;
82
83  // Pointer to the data reception callback function for nRF2401
84  static void (*nrf24_rx_data_callback)(const char* data, size_t len) = NULL;
85  #endif

```

NRF24_tx_init:

Initializes the transmitter of the nRF2401 module by configuring the SPI interface, creating the communication object, setting the wireless parameters, and specifying the transmission channel, enabling the module to send data.

- At the beginning of the function, nrf_hal.setSpiPins(RADIO_GPIO_CLK, RADIO_GPIO_MISO, RADIO_GPIO_MOSI) sets the SPI communication pins between the nRF2401 and the main controller (Clock, Master In Slave Out, Master Out Slave In).
- setSpiFrequency(8000000) sets the SPI clock frequency to 8 MHz to improve communication speed.
- spiBegin() formally initializes the SPI bus.
- A module object bsp_nrf_mod is then created via new Module(...), binding the SPI interface along with control pins such as Chip Select (CS), Interrupt (IRQ), and

- Chip Enable (CE), providing a hardware interface for the nRF24 module.
- Next, `bsp_nrf_radio = new nRF24(bsp_nrf_mod)` creates the specific nRF24 radio object and begins the driver logic.
 - Calling `begin(2400, 250, 0, 5)` completes the core initialization of the wireless module. The parameters represent, in order: operating frequency 2400 MHz (i.e., 2.4 GHz band), data rate 250 kbps, output power level 0 (typically 0 dBm), and communication channel number 5. If initialization fails (return value is not `RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE`), the error is logged and the function exits.
 - Then, a transmit address is defined as `uint8_t addr[] = {0x01, 0x02, 0x11, 0x12, 0xFF}`, which is a 5-byte transmit pipe address (similar to a "device address" or "channel identifier" in wireless communication), ensuring that the transmitter and receiver communicate over the same address.
 - `setTransmitPipe(addr)` sets this address as the current transmit pipe, allowing the module to send data through this channel. If configured successfully, the function returns `ESP_OK`, indicating that initialization is complete.

Send_pack_radio:

This function sends a wireless data packet through the nRF2401 module and records and prints the transmission status.

- Specifically, the function first defines a static character array `text[32]` to store the message to be sent. It then uses `snprintf` to format the message as `"NRF24_TX_Hello World:<transmit_count>"`, where `<transmit_count>` comes from `nrf24_tx_counter` and represents the current number of transmissions.
- The function calculates the message length using `strlen` and stores it in `tx_len`.
- Next, it calls `bsp_nrf_radio->transmit((uint8_t *)text, tx_len, 0)` to send the message through the nRF2401 module. If the return value is `RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE`, the transmission is successful, and `NRF2401_INFO` prints the completion message along with the content sent. Otherwise, it prints a transmission failure message and the error code.
- The function finally returns `true`, indicating that the send operation has been executed.

nrf24_tx_init():

This is a C-language interface function used to initialize the nRF2401 transmitter module. Inside the function, a `BSP_NRF2401` object `obj` is instantiated, and its member function `NRF24_tx_init()` is called to complete SPI configuration, wireless parameter setup, and transmit pipe address configuration, returning the initialization result.

Purpose: Provides a unified interface for upper-layer or C code to prepare the nRF2401 module for data transmission.

nrf24_tx_deinit():

This is a C-language interface function used to release or shut down the nRF2401 transmitter resources. It creates a `BSP_NRF2401` object internally and calls its

member function `NRF24_tx_deinit()`, putting the wireless module into an idle state and closing the SPI bus.

Purpose: Called when the transmission task is finished or the module is no longer in use, safely releasing transmitter resources.

`send_nrf24_pack_radio():`

This is a C-language interface function used to send a data packet via the nRF2401. Internally, it creates a `BSP_NRF2401` object and calls its member function `Send_pack_radio()` to send the formatted message and print the transmission result.

Purpose: Provides a simple interface for the upper layer to send wireless data without needing to handle the underlying driver details.

`nrf24_get_tx_counter():`

This is a C-language interface function used to get the current value of the nRF2401 transmit counter `nrf24_tx_counter`.

Purpose: Allows upper-layer programs to obtain the number of packets sent, useful for statistics or debugging.

`nrf24_inc_tx_counter():`

This is a C-language interface function used to increment the transmit counter `nrf24_tx_counter` by 1.

Purpose: Updates the counter after each successful packet transmission, used to record the number of sends or to mark a sequence number in the message.

`set_rx_flag():`

This is a static internal function called within the receive interrupt or callback, used to set `radio24_receivedFlag` to true, indicating that the nRF2401 module has received new data.

Purpose: Serves as a receive event flag to notify the upper-layer program that new data is available for processing.

`NRF24_rx_init:`

This function, `BSP_NRF2401::NRF24_rx_init()`, initializes the receiver side of the nRF2401 module, enabling it to receive wireless data.

- Specifically, the function first sets the SPI communication pins using `nrf_hal.setSpiPins(RADIO_GPIO_CLK, RADIO_GPIO_MISO, RADIO_GPIO_MOSI)`, sets the SPI clock frequency to 8 MHz with `setSpiFrequency(8000000)`, and initializes the SPI bus using `spiBegin()`.
- A module object `bsp_nrf_mod` is then created via `new Module(...)`, binding the SPI interface and control pins. Next, `bsp_nrf_radio = new nRF24(bsp_nrf_mod)` creates the nRF24 radio object.
- Calling `bsp_nrf_radio->begin(2400, 250, 0, 5)` initializes the wireless parameters, where 2400 represents the 2.4 GHz operating frequency, 250 is the data rate in kbps, 0 is the output power level, and 5 is the communication channel. If an

error occurs, it logs the failure and returns.

- A receive pipe address is defined as `addr[] = {0x01, 0x02, 0x11, 0x12, 0xFF}`. The function then calls `setReceivePipe(0, addr)` to set pipe 0 as the receive address, ensuring the module only receives data sent to this address.
- `setPacketReceivedAction(set_rx_flag)` registers a receive callback, setting `radio24_receivedFlag` to notify the upper layer. Finally, `startReceive()` puts the module into receive mode. If successful, the function returns `ESP_OK`.

Received_pack_radio:

This function, **BSP_NRF2401::Received_pack_radio(size_t len)**, handles data packets received by the nRF2401 module.

- Specifically, the function first checks the receive flag `radio24_receivedFlag`. If it is true, it indicates that new data has arrived. The flag is then reset to false to avoid repeated processing.
- A buffer `data[len]` is defined to store the received data, and `bsp_nrf_radio->readData(data, len)` is called to read len bytes from the module.
- If the return value is `RADIOLIB_ERR_NONE`, the data is successfully read. The function uses `NRF2401_INFO` to print a success message along with the received data, and checks whether the callback function pointer `nrf24_rx_data_callback` has been registered. If it is registered, the callback is called to notify the upper-layer application.
- If reading fails, `NRF2401_ERROR` prints the error code. Finally, `bsp_nrf_radio->startReceive()` is called to re-enter receive mode, waiting for the next data packet.

nrf24_rx_init()

This is a C-language interface function used to initialize the receiver side of the nRF2401 module. Internally, a `BSP_NRF2401` object `obj` is instantiated, and its member function `NRF24_rx_init()` is called to complete SPI configuration, wireless parameter initialization, receive pipe address setup, and callback registration, returning the initialization result.

Purpose: Provides a unified interface for upper-layer or C-language programs to prepare the nRF2401 module for data reception.

nrf24_rx_deinit()

This is a C-language interface function used to release the nRF2401 receiver resources. Internally, a `BSP_NRF2401` object is created, and its member function `NRF24_rx_deinit()` is called to put the module into an idle state, clear callbacks, and close the SPI bus.

Purpose: Called when the reception task is finished or the module is no longer in use, safely releasing receiver resources.

received_nrf24_pack_radio(size_t len)

This is a C-language interface function used to handle received data packets.

The overall workflow can be summarized as follows: system power-on → initialize the serial port → configure the power supply LDO → initialize the display screen, touch screen and LVGL graphics system → initialize the nRF24L01 wireless module → create interface labels → create two parallel tasks (one responsible for wireless transmission and the other for interface update) → send wireless data once per second and display the number of transmissions in real time on the screen. This constitutes an embedded demonstration system with wireless transmission + real-time status display on a graphical interface.

lvgl_show_counter_label_init:

The function `lvgl_show_counter_label_init()` initializes the counter label on the LVGL display, used to show the nRF24L01 transmit count. Its workflow and purpose of each step can be summarized as follows:

- First, `lvgl_port_lock(0)` is called to lock LVGL resources, preventing concurrent access.
- The current active screen is obtained via `lv_scr_act()`, and the background is set to white and fully covering.
- A label is created using `lv_label_create(screen)` and checked for successful creation; if creation fails, the lock is released and the function returns.
- The label style is initialized with `lv_style_init`, setting the font size, text color to black, and background to transparent, and the style is applied to the label.
- `lv_label_set_text` sets the initial text to "NRF24_TX_Hello World:0", and `lv_obj_center` centers the label on the screen.
- Finally, `lvgl_port_unlock()` releases the LVGL resource lock.

Overall, this function creates and initializes a styled, dynamically updatable label to display the transmit count.

```

86 static void lvgl_show_counter_label_init(void)
87 {
88     if (lvgl_port_lock(0) != true) {
89         MAIN_ERROR("LVGL lock failed");
90         return;
91     }
92
93     lv_obj_t *screen = lv_scr_act();
94     lv_obj_set_style_bg_color(screen, LV_COLOR_WHITE, LV_PART_MAIN);
95     lv_obj_set_style_bg_opa(screen, LV_OPA_COVER, LV_PART_MAIN);
96
97     s_hello_label = lv_label_create(screen);
98     if (s_hello_label == NULL) {
99         MAIN_ERROR("Create LVGL label failed");
100         lvgl_port_unlock();
101         return;
102     }
103     static lv_style_t label_style;
104     lv_style_init(&label_style);
105     lv_style_set_text_font(&label_style, &lv_font_montserrat_42);
106     lv_style_set_text_color(&label_style, lv_color_black());
107     lv_style_set_bg_opa(&label_style, LV_OPA_TRANSP);
108     lv_obj_add_style(s_hello_label, &label_style, LV_PART_MAIN);
109
110     lv_label_set_text(s_hello_label, "NRF24_TX_Hello World:0");
111     lv_obj_center(s_hello_label);
112
113     lvgl_port_unlock();
114 }
115

```

ui_counter_task:

The function `ui_counter_task()` is responsible for refreshing the nRF24L01 transmission count information displayed on the LCD every second.

Its workflow and the role of each part can be summarized as follows:

- First, define a character array `text[48]` to store the display text.
- Record the system tick count `last_wake_time` when the task starts, and set the loop interval to 1000ms (1 second).
- Enter an infinite loop. In each loop, first read the current transmission count using `nrf24_get_tx_counter()`, and format it into the string "NRF24_TX_Hello World:<count value>" using `snprintf`.
- Attempt to lock the LVGL resource with `lvgl_port_lock(0)`. If successful and the label exists, call `lv_label_set_text` to update the display text and release the lock.
- Finally, use `vTaskDelayUntil` to delay according to absolute time to ensure an accurate one-second cycle, realizing the function of updating the display every second.

Overall, its role is to continuously refresh the transmission count on the interface to achieve real-time display.

```

116 static void ui_counter_task(void *param)
117 {
118     char text[48];
119     TickType_t last_wake_time = xTaskGetTickCount();
120     const TickType_t frequency = pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000); // 1 second = 1000ms
121
122     for (;;) {
123         uint32_t i = nrf24_get_tx_counter();
124         int n = snprintf(text, sizeof(text), "NRF24_TX_Hello World:%lu", (unsigned long)i);
125         (void)n;
126
127         if (lvgl_port_lock(0) == true) {
128             if (s_hello_label != NULL) {
129                 lv_label_set_text(s_hello_label, text);
130             }
131             lvgl_port_unlock();
132         }
133
134         // MAIN_INFO("NRF24 TX msg: %s", text);
135
136         // Use absolute time to ensure an exact one-second interval
137         vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency);
138     }
139 }

```

nrf24_tx_task:

The function `nrf24_tx_task()` is responsible for transmitting nRF24L01 wireless data packets once per second and maintaining the transmission counter.

Its workflow and the role of each part can be summarized as follows:

- First, it records the system tick count `last_wake_time` when the task starts and sets the loop interval to 1000ms (1 second).
- It enters an infinite loop. In each iteration, it first calls `nrf24_inc_tx_counter()` to increment the transmission counter.
- Then, it calls `send_nrf24_pack_radio()` to transmit a data packet containing the current count. It uses `nrf24_tx_OK` to check if the transmission is successful; if

failed, it prints an error log.

- Finally, it uses `vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency)` to delay by 1 second based on absolute time, ensuring precise transmission intervals.

Overall, its role is to automatically send count data every second, update the counter, and implement the timed wireless transmission function of the nRF24L01.

```

141 static void nrf24_tx_task(void *param)
142 {
143     TickType_t last_wake_time = xTaskGetTickCount();
144     const TickType_t frequency = pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000); // 1 second = 1000ms
145
146     while (1) {
147         // Increment the TX counter exactly once per second
148         nrf24_inc_tx_counter();
149         bool nrf24_tx_OK = false;
150         nrf24_tx_OK = send_nrf24_pack_radio();
151         if (nrf24_tx_OK != true) {
152             MAIN_ERROR("nRF24L01 TX failed");
153         }
154
155         vTaskDelayUntil(&last_wake_time, frequency);
156     }
157 }

```

ldo_init

This code implements a power supply initialization function "ldo_init()", whose main role is to configure and enable the LDO (Low Dropout Regulator) channels inside the ESP32-P4 chip when the system starts up, providing stable operating voltages for the display interface and touch/I2C circuits.

```

158 void ldo_init()
159 {
160     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
161     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
162     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
163     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
164     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
165     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
166         .chan_id = 3,          // LDO Channel 3
167         .voltage_mv = 2500,    // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
168     };
169
170     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
171     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
172     if (err != ESP_OK) {
173         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
174     } else {
175         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
176     }
177
178     // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
179     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
180     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
181         .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
182         .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
183     };
184
185     Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
186     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
187     if (err != ESP_OK) {
188         Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
189     } else {
190         Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
191     }
192 }
193

```

At the start of the function, a variable "err" of type "esp_err_t" is defined to store the error status after function execution, and a handle variable of type "esp_ldo_channel_handle_t" is also defined to represent the successfully acquired LDO channel control object.

```
158 void ldo_init()
159 {
160     // --- Power Configuration (LDO3 for MIPI D-PHY) ---
161     // ESP32-P4's MIPI D-PHY requires specific voltage to function.
162     // LDO3 is typically routed to the MIPI power rail on P4 hardware.
163     esp_err_t err = ESP_OK;
164     esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo3_handle = NULL;
```

First, the LDO3 power channel is configured. The program creates a structure "esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg", where "chan_id = 3" indicates selecting the LDO3 channel, and "voltage_mv = 2500" means setting the output voltage to 2500mV (2.5V).

```
165     esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo3_cfg = {
166         .chan_id = 3,           // LDO Channel 3
167         .voltage_mv = 2500,     // Set to 2500mV (2.5V)
168     };
169
```

This voltage is mainly used to power the MIPI D-PHY display interface circuit, because in the hardware design of ESP32-P4, the MIPI display interface usually requires a dedicated power rail of approximately 2.5V to work properly. The program then outputs debugging information via "Serial.println()" to indicate that LDO3 is being initialized, and subsequently calls the "esp_ldo_acquire_channel()" function to apply for and enable the LDO channel. If the returned result "err" is not equal to "ESP_OK", it means the power supply configuration has failed. In this case, the program will output an error message using "Serial.printf()", and convert the error code into a human-readable string through "esp_err_to_name()". If successful, a prompt message is printed to indicate that the LDO3 power supply has been enabled successfully.

```
170     Serial.println("Initializing LDO3 to 2.5V...");
171     err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo3_cfg, &ldo3_handle);
172     if (err != ESP_OK) {
173         Serial.printf("LDO3 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
174     } else {
175         Serial.println("LDO3 Power enabled successfully.");
176     }
---
```

Next, the program proceeds to configure the LDO4 power channel, following a process essentially identical to that of LDO3: first, it defines a handle "ldo4_handle" and a configuration structure "ldo4_cfg", where "chan_id = 4" indicates the selection of the LDO4 channel, and "voltage_mv = 3300" means setting the output voltage to 3300mV (3.3V).

```

178 // --- Power Configuration (LDO4 for I2C/touch pull up) ---
179 esp_ldo_channel_handle_t ldo4_handle = NULL;
180 esp_ldo_channel_config_t ldo4_cfg = {
181     .chan_id = 4,          // LDO Channel 4
182     .voltage_mv = 3300,    // Set to 3300mV (3.3V)
183 };
184

```

This voltage is mainly used to power the I2C bus and the pull-up resistors of the touch controller. For example, the common capacitive touch chip GT911 typically operates in a 3.3V voltage environment, so stable power supply support is required.

```

185 Serial.println("Initializing LDO4 to 3.3V...");
186 err = esp_ldo_acquire_channel(&ldo4_cfg, &ldo4_handle);
187 if (err != ESP_OK) {
188     Serial.printf("LDO4 Power Error: %s\n", esp_err_to_name(err));
189 } else {
190     Serial.println("LDO4 Power enabled successfully.");
191 }
192 }

```

The program also prints initialization information via the serial port and calls "esp_ldo_acquire_channel()" to enable LDO4. If the configuration fails, an error message is printed; if successful, a prompt is given to indicate that the power supply has been turned on normally.

display_touch_lvgl_init

This code implements an initialization function display_touch_lvgl_init() for the display screen, touch screen, and graphical interface system. Its main role is to complete the overall initialization of the display hardware, touch controller, and graphical interface library when the system starts up, enabling the screen to normally display a graphical interface and support touch input.

```

194 void display_touch_lvgl_init()
195 {
196     // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
197     Board *board = new Board();
198     // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
199     Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
200     assert(board->init());
201     #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
202     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
203     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
204     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
205     #endif
206     assert(board->begin());
207     Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
208
209     Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
210     lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
211 }

```

At the start of the function, a Board class object is created via Board *board = new Board();. This class is derived from ESP_Panel_Library and is mainly used to encapsulate hardware resources such as the display screen, touch screen, and communication bus on the development board, allowing users to complete initialization and control through a unified interface.

```

194 void display_touch_lvgl_init()
195 {
196     // --- Initialize Display and Touch Panel ---
197     Board *board = new Board();

```

The program then outputs "Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)..." via the serial port to indicate that the system is initializing the display and touch devices, and subsequently calls board->init() to complete the underlying hardware initialization. This step typically configures the MIPI-DSI display bus, GPIO, I2C touch bus, and related drivers, and loads specific hardware drivers such as the display control chip EK79007 and the capacitive touch control chip GT911.

```

198     // Initialize the bus (MIPI-DSI) and the devices (EK79007 & GT911)
199     Serial.println("Initializing Panel (EK79007 + GT911)...");
200     assert(board->init());

```

The function uses assert() for detection; if the initialization fails, the program will stop running directly to prevent subsequent program execution when the hardware has not been properly initialized.

Subsequently, the code includes a conditional compilation section #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE. When the Tearing Prevention mode is enabled, the program obtains the LCD display object via board->getLCD() and calls configFrameBufferNumber() to set the number of frame buffers used by LVGL. This multi-buffering mechanism can reduce display tearing during refresh, thereby improving the stability and visual effect of screen display.

```

201 #if LVGL_PORT_AVOID_TEARING_MODE
202     auto lcd = board->getLCD();
203     // When avoid tearing function is enabled, the frame buffer number should be set in the board driver
204     lcd->configFrameBufferNumber(LVGL_PORT_DISP_BUFFER_NUM);
205 #endif

```

Next, the program calls board->begin() to complete the final startup process of the device. This function usually truly starts the display driver, initializes the touch controller, and puts the hardware into working state, with assert() also used to ensure successful execution.

After the initialization is completed, the program outputs "Display and Touch system online." via the serial port, indicating that the display and touch system is working normally.

```

206     assert(board->begin());
207     Serial.println("Display and Touch system online.");
208

```

Finally, the program starts initializing the graphical interface system, prints "Initializing LVGL" to indicate that the graphics library is about to be started, and then calls lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch()) to initialize the LVGL porting layer. This registers the LCD display device and touch input device with the LVGL system, enabling LVGL to refresh the screen through the LCD driver and receive user input events through the touch driver.

```

209     Serial.println("Initializing LVGL");
210     lvgl_port_init(board->getLCD(), board->getTouch());
211 }

```

setup

This code is the system initialization entry function `setup()` of the entire program, which is executed only once after the device is powered on or reset. Its main role is to sequentially complete serial port debugging, power supply configuration, display and touch system initialization, wireless module initialization, and multi-task creation, preparing the system to enter a normal operating state.

The program first calls `Serial.begin(115200)` to initialize serial communication (UART0) and sets the baud rate to 115200, which is used to output debugging information and system running logs, making it convenient for developers to observe the program execution status through the serial monitor. Next, it calls the `ldo_init()` function to configure the LDO voltage regulation module inside the ESP32-P4 chip, providing stable operating voltages for the display interface, touch circuits, and related peripherals.

```
214 void setup() {  
215     // put your setup code here, to run once:  
216  
217     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)  
218     Serial.begin(115200);  
219  
220     ldo_init();
```

Subsequently, the program calls `display_touch_lvgl_init()` to initialize the display and touch system. This function starts the display driver and touch controller, and registers the display device with the graphical interface library LVGL, enabling the system to have graphical interface display capabilities.

```
222     display_touch_lvgl_init();  
223 }
```

After completing the initialization of the display system, the program starts initializing the wireless communication module by calling `nrf24_tx_init()` to enable the transmission function of the wireless chip nRF24L01. If the return value of the function is not equal to `ESP_OK`, it indicates that the wireless module initialization has failed, and an error log is output through `MAIN_ERROR()` at this time; if the initialization is successful, a prompt message is printed through `MAIN_INFO()`, indicating that the wireless communication module is ready.

```
224     // nRF24L01 wireless init  
225     esp_err_t err = nrf24_tx_init();  
226     if (err != ESP_OK) { // Check error  
227         MAIN_ERROR("nRF24L01 Wireless Module init..."); // Handle failure  
228     }  
229     MAIN_INFO("The nRF24L01 wireless module initialization was successful.");  
230 }
```

Then the program calls `lvgl_show_counter_label_init()` to create an LVGL label control and display it in the center of the screen, which is used to show the current number of wireless transmissions, such as "NRF24_TX_Hello World:0", and outputs a prompt through the log indicating that the interface has been loaded successfully.

```

231     lvgl_show_counter_label_init();
232     MAIN_INFO("----- LVGL Show OK -----");
233

```

After completing all initializations, the program creates two FreeRTOS tasks through `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()` and pins them to run on different CPU cores respectively:

`ui_counter_task` is allocated 4096 bytes of stack space and runs on Core 0, responsible for reading the transmission count every second and updating the text label on the screen;

`nrf24_tx_task` is allocated 8192 bytes of stack space and runs on Core 1, responsible for sending a data packet to the wireless module every second and updating the transmission count. The priority of both tasks is set to `configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5`, ensuring they have the same priority in system scheduling, thus maintaining a relatively synchronized execution rhythm.

```

234     // Create tasks and use the same priority to ensure synchronization
235     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(ui_counter_task, "ui_counter", 4096, NULL,
236                             configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 0);
237
238     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(nrf24_tx_task, "nrf24_tx", 8192, NULL,
239                             configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 1);
240
241     MAIN_INFO("Tasks created, starting synchronized transmission...");
242

```

Finally, the program outputs the log information "Tasks created, starting synchronized transmission...", indicating that all system initializations are completed and the system starts to enter the multi-task operation phase.

Receiver Main Function

The above is the main function code for the transmitter. Next, let's take a look at the main function code for the receiver.

Open your receiver code in the same way as you did for the transmitter.

rx_data_callback:

`rx_data_callback()` is the callback function triggered when the nRF24L01 receives data. Its role is to count received data packets, update the interface display, and print logs.

The specific workflow is as follows:

- First, `rx_packet_count++` increments the receive counter by 1.
- Then, it attempts to acquire the LVGL lock with `lvgl_port_lock(0)` to ensure thread safety. If successful and `s_rx_label` has been created, it formats the current receive count into the string "NRF24_RX_Hello World:i" using `snprintf`

and calls `lv_label_set_text` to update the display label.

- After updating the interface, it releases the lock with `lvgl_port_unlock()`.
- Finally, it formats the receive count using the local buffer `rx_display_text` and prints a log via `MAIN_INFO`, facilitating debugging and monitoring of reception status.

Overall, its role is to promptly update the interface and logs whenever the nRF24L01 receives data, enabling real-time feedback.

```

87  /**
88   * @brief Callback function triggered when nRF24L01 data is received
89   */
90  static void rx_data_callback(const char* data, size_t len)
91  {
92      rx_packet_count++; // Increment the received packet count each time data is received
93
94      // (Update LVGL screen display)
95      if (lvgl_port_lock(0) == true) { // Acquire LVGL lock before updating the UI to ensure thread safety
96          // (Format received data as NRF24_RX_Hello World:i)
97          if (s_rx_label != NULL) {
98              char rx_text[64]; // Buffer to store formatted text
99              snprintf(rx_text, sizeof(rx_text), "NRF24_RX_Hello World:%lu", (unsigned long)rx_packet_count);
100              lv_label_set_text(s_rx_label, rx_text); // Update the text of the RX label
101          }
102
103          lvgl_port_unlock(); // Release LVGL lock after updating the UI
104      }
105
106      char rx_display_text[64]; // Local buffer for logging display
107      snprintf(rx_display_text, sizeof(rx_display_text), "NRF24_RX_Hello World:%lu", (unsigned long)rx_packet_count);
108      MAIN_INFO("NRF24 RX: %s", rx_display_text); // Log received data info to console
109  }
110  
```

lvgl_show_rx_interface_init:

`lvgl_show_rx_interface_init()` is a function used to initialize the LVGL display interface for the nRF24L01 receiver. Its role is to create and layout interface elements for displaying received data.

The specific workflow is as follows:

- First, it attempts to acquire the LVGL lock with `lvgl_port_lock(0)` to ensure thread safety. If it fails, it prints an error and returns.
- It retrieves the screen object with `lv_scr_act()` and sets the background color to white with full opacity.
- It creates a title label `title_label` and sets its text to "nRF24L01 RX Receiver". It initializes the style `title_style` (large font, black text, transparent background), applies this style, and positions the title at the top center of the screen.
- Next, it creates a receive information label `s_rx_label` with initial text "NRF24_RX_Hello World:0". It defines the style `rx_style` (large font, black text, transparent background), applies this style, and positions the label slightly above the center of the screen.
- Finally, it releases the LVGL lock with `lvgl_port_unlock()`.

Overall, its role is to provide an LVGL interface for the receiver to display received data in real time.

nrf24_rx_task:

`nrf24_rx_task()` is a FreeRTOS task function for the nRF2401 receiver, responsible for

continuously polling and receiving wireless data.

- The function enters an infinite loop while(1) to ensure continuous operation.
- In each loop iteration, it calls received_nrf24_pack_radio(32) to check for and process received data packets. The parameter 32 represents the maximum packet length supported by the nRF24L01.
- It then delays for 10 milliseconds using vTaskDelay(10 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) to reduce CPU usage.

Overall, its role is to periodically poll the nRF2401 receive buffer and trigger processing/callbacks when data is available, enabling real-time data reception.

```

157 static void nrf24_rx_task(void *param)
158 {
159     while (1) { // Infinite loop for continuous checking
160         // (Check if data has been received)
161         // Note: nRF24L01 doesn't have the same data received flag as SX1262
162         // We'll use a reasonable maximum packet size for nRF24L01 (32 bytes)
163         received_nrf24_pack_radio(32); // Handle received packet data with maximum size
164         vTaskDelay(10 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS); // Check every 10ms to reduce CPU usage
165     }
166 }

```

setup:

This code is the system initialization function setup() of the program, which is executed only once after the device is powered on or reset. Its main role is to sequentially complete serial port debugging, power supply configuration, display and touch system initialization, wireless receiving module initialization, graphical interface creation, and reception task startup, thereby building an embedded system that can receive wireless data and display it on the screen interface.

```

223 void setup() {
224     // put your setup code here, to run once:
225
226     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
227     Serial.begin(115200);
228
229     ldo_init();
230
231     display_touch_lvgl_init();
232
233     // nRF24L01 Wireless RX init (nRF24L01 receiver initialization)
234     esp_err_t err = nrf24_rx_init(); // Initialize nRF24L01 receiver
235     if (err != ESP_OK) {
236         MAIN_ERROR("nRF24L01 Wireless Module RX init..."); // Halt if failed
237     }
238     MAIN_INFO("The nRF24L01 wireless module RX initialization was successful."); // Log success
239
240     lvgl_show_rx_interface_init(); // Initialize LVGL user interface
241     MAIN_INFO("----- LVGL RX Interface OK -----"); // Log successful UI init
242
243     // (Set callback function for received data)
244     nrf24_set_rx_callback(rx_data_callback); // Register nRF24L01 RX callback function
245     MAIN_INFO("RX callback registered"); // Log callback registration success
246
247     // (Create nRF24L01 receiving task)
248     xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(nrf24_rx_task, "nrf24_rx", 4096, NULL,
249                             configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 1); // Create FreeRTOS task pinned to core 1
250
251     MAIN_INFO("nRF24L01 RX receiver started, waiting for data..."); // Log start message
252 }

```

The program first calls Serial.begin(115200) to initialize serial communication (UART0) and sets the baud rate to 115200, which is used to output system logs and debugging

information, making it convenient for developers to observe the system operation status through the serial monitor. Subsequently, it calls the `ldo_init()` function to configure the LDO voltage regulation module inside the ESP32-P4 chip, providing stable voltages for the display interface, capacitive touch circuits, and I2C pull-up power supply, thus ensuring the normal operation of display and touch hardware.

```
223 void setup() {
224     // put your setup code here, to run once:
225
226     // Initialize the default Serial for debugging (UART0)
227     Serial.begin(115200);
228
229     ldo_init();
230 }
```

Next, the program calls `display_touch_lvgl_init()` to initialize the display screen and touch system. This function starts the display driver chip EK79007 and touch control chip GT911, and registers the display device and touch input with the graphical interface library LVGL, enabling the system to have complete graphical display and touch interaction capabilities.

```
231     display_touch_lvgl_init();
232 }
```

After completing the initialization of the display system, the program starts initializing the wireless communication module by calling `nrf24_rx_init()` to enable the reception mode of the wireless chip nRF24L01. This function usually configures parameters such as wireless frequency, communication channel, data rate, and receive buffer. If the return value is not equal to `ESP_OK`, it indicates that the wireless module initialization has failed, and the program will output an error log through `MAIN_ERROR()` at this time; if the initialization is successful, a prompt message is printed through `MAIN_INFO()`, indicating that the wireless receiving module is working normally.

```
233 // nRF24L01 Wireless RX init (nRF24L01 receiver initialization)
234 esp_err_t err = nrf24_rx_init(); // Initialize nRF24L01 receiver
235 if (err != ESP_OK) {
236     MAIN_ERROR("nRF24L01 Wireless Module RX init..."); // Halt if failed
237 }
238 MAIN_INFO("The nRF24L01 wireless module RX initialization was successful."); // Log success
```

Next, the program calls `lvgl_show_rx_interface_init()` to create an LVGL graphical interface (RX reception interface). This interface usually includes text labels or information areas for displaying received wireless data or reception status, and outputs the log "----- LVGL RX Interface OK -----" to indicate that the interface initialization is successful.

```
240 lvgl_show_rx_interface_init(); // Initialize LVGL user interface
241 MAIN_INFO("----- LVGL RX Interface OK -----"); // Log successful UI init
242 }
```

Subsequently, the program calls `nrf24_set_rx_callback(rx_data_callback)` to register a wireless reception callback function `rx_data_callback`. When the wireless module receives a new data packet, the underlying driver will automatically trigger this

callback function, so that data processing logic is executed in the program, such as parsing data content, updating interface display, or recording reception information, and outputs the log "RX callback registered" to indicate successful callback registration.

```

243 // (Set callback function for received data)
244 nrf24_set_rx_callback(rx_data_callback); // Register nRF24L01 RX callback function
245 MAIN_INFO("RX callback registered"); // Log callback registration success

```

Finally, the program creates a FreeRTOS reception task nrf24_rx_task through xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(), allocates 4096 bytes of task stack space for it, and pins the task to run on CPU Core 1. The task priority is set to configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, which ensures the task has a high scheduling priority, so it can continuously monitor the reception status of the wireless module and process the received data.

```

246 // (Create nRF24L01 receiving task)
247 xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(nrf24_rx_task, "nrf24_rx", 4096, NULL,
248 configMAX_PRIORITIES - 5, NULL, 1); // Create FreeRTOS task pinned to core 1
249
250 MAIN_INFO("nRF24L01 RX receiver started, waiting for data..."); // Log start message
251
252

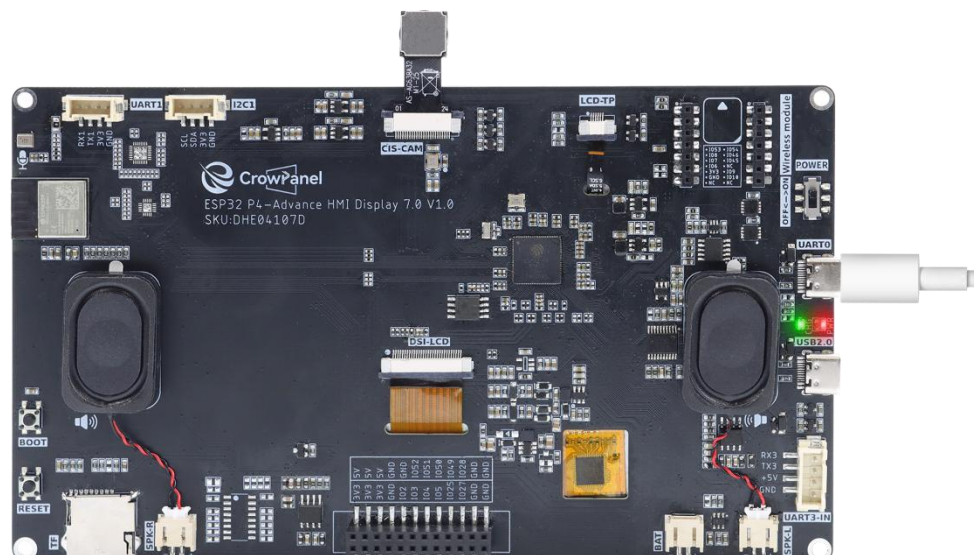
```

After the task is created, the program outputs the log "nRF24L01 RX receiver started, waiting for data..." to indicate that the system has entered the wireless reception mode and started waiting for data to arrive.

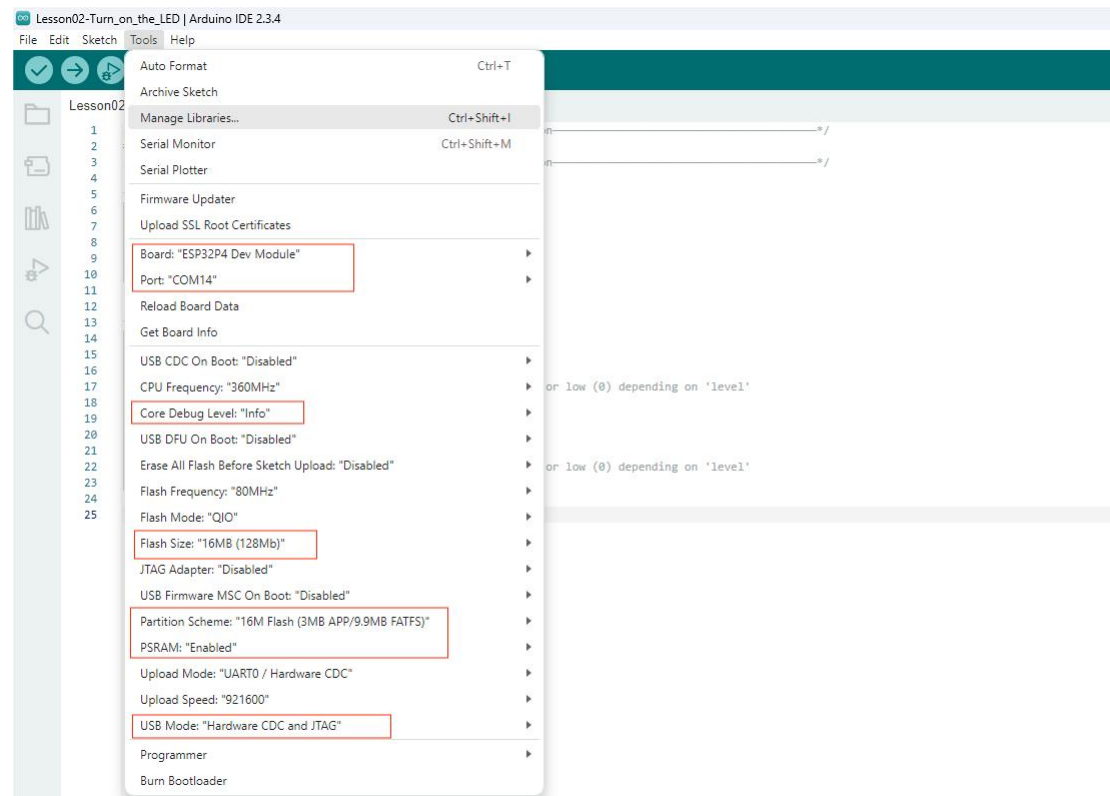
Programming Steps

Now the code is ready. Next, we need to flash the ESP32-P4 so that we can observe the results.

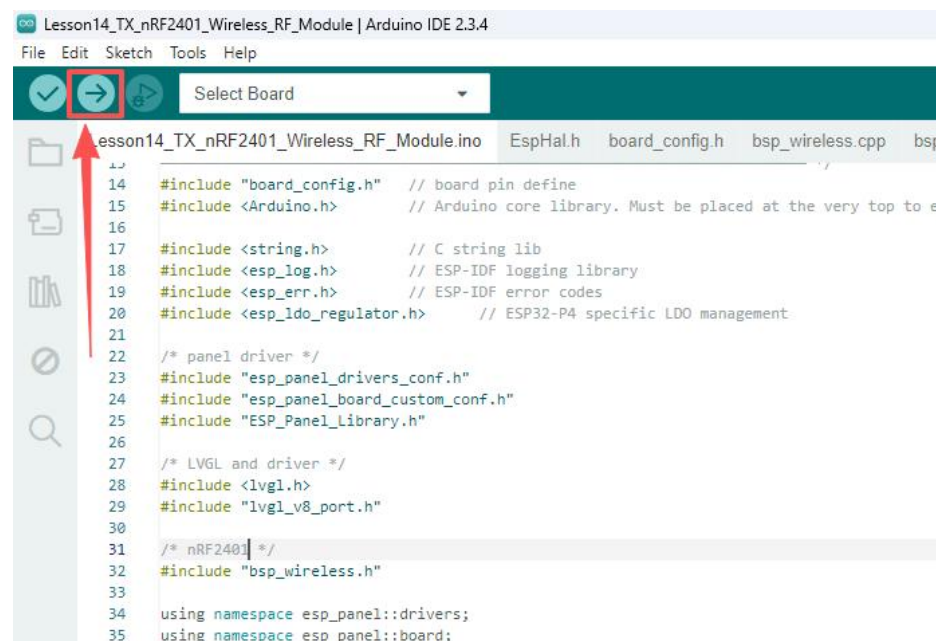
First, we connect the Advance-P4 device to our computer host via the USB cable.



Here, follow the steps from [Lesson 1](#) to first select the development board, COM port, Flash Size, Partition Scheme, PSRAM, and other options.

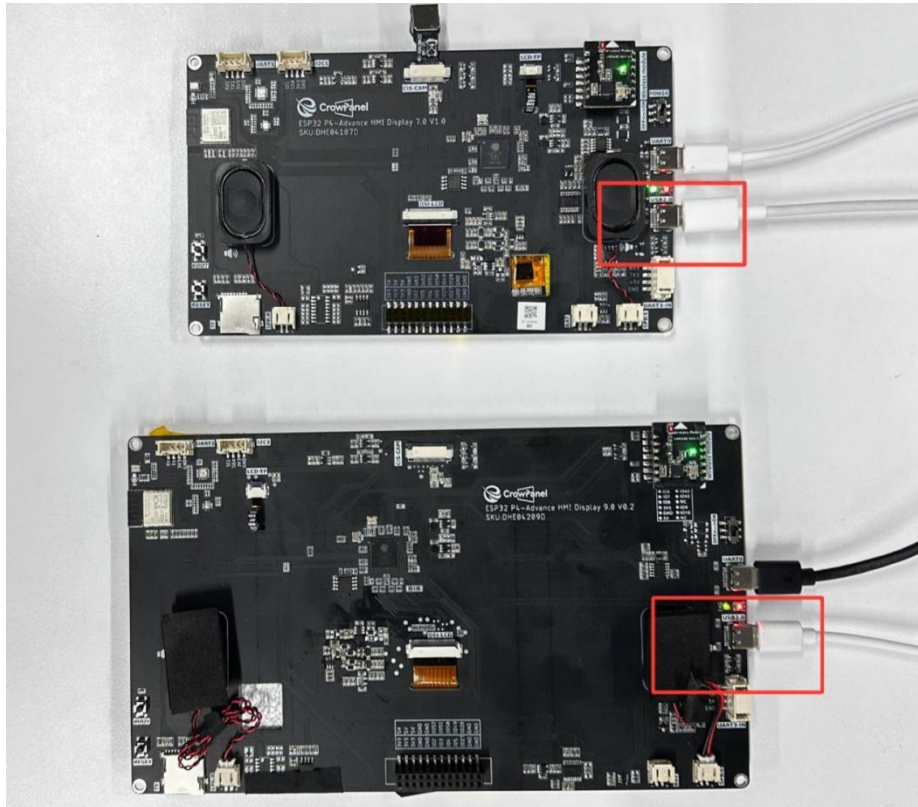


Then we compile and upload the code.

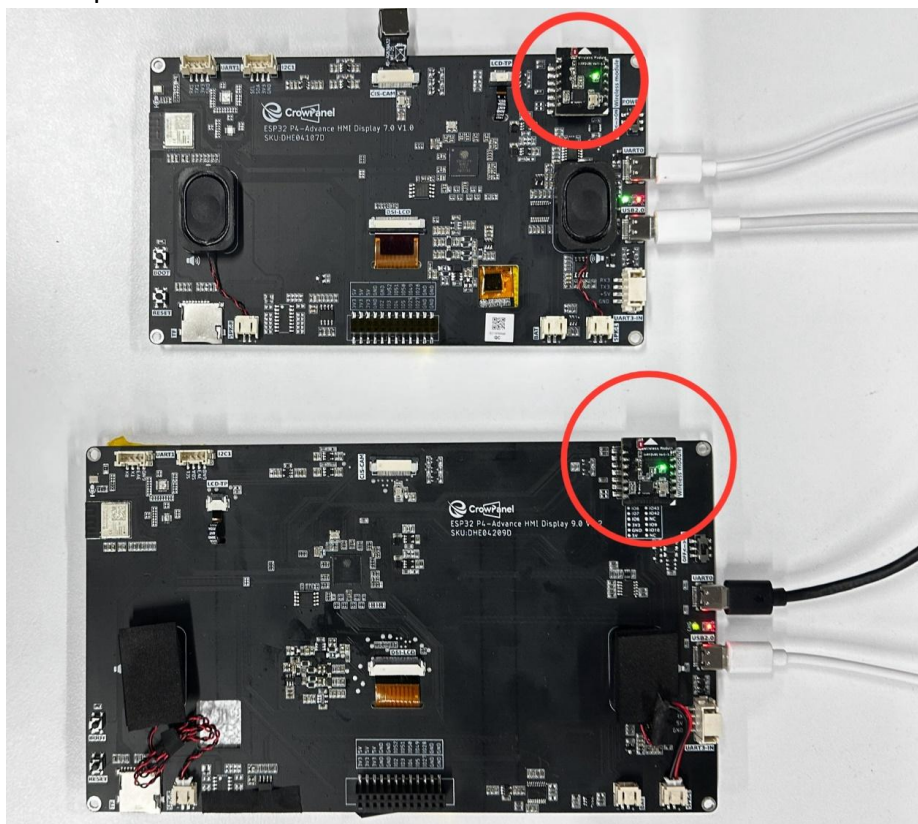


Wait for the code upload to complete.

At this point, remember to connect your Advance-P4 using an additional Type-C cable via the USB 2.0 interface. This is because the maximum current provided by a computer's USB-A port is generally 500mA, and the Advance-P4 requires a sufficient power supply when using multiple peripherals—especially the screen. (It is recommended to connect it to a charger.)



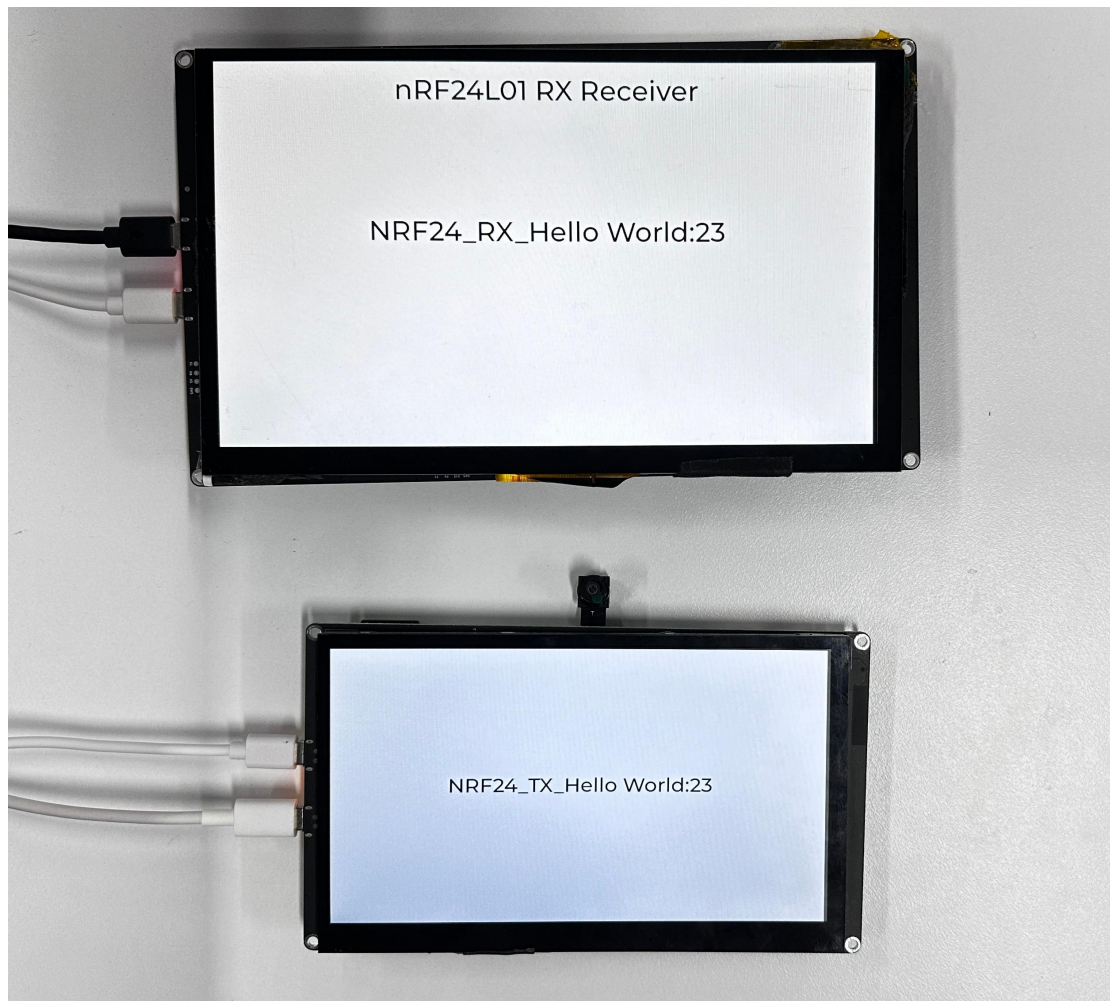
Insert the nRF2401 wireless RF module into each of the two Advance-P4 development boards.



After running the code on both boards respectively, you will be able to see on the transmitter's Advance-P4 screen that the nRF2401 module is sending data labeled

"NRF24_TX_Hello World:i", where "i" increases by 1 every second.

Similarly, on the receiver's Advance-P4 screen, you will see that the nRF2401 module is receiving data labeled "NRF24_RX_Hello World:i"; after receiving the message, "i" will also increase by 1 every second.





MAKE YOUR MAKING EASIER